

ANNUAL REPORT
OF THE
AMERICAN HISTORICAL
ASSOCIATION

FOR THE YEAR

1944

IN THREE VOLUMES

VOLUME 1

PART I: PROCEEDINGS

PART II: GUIDE TO THE AMERICAN HISTORICAL
REVIEW, 1895-1945



UNITED STATES
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
WASHINGTON : 1945

THE JOURNAL OF
THE AMERICAN HISTORICAL
ASSOCIATION

NU

Grad. PR⁴
List
Hon. E. C. Michener
3-1-46
3 vols.

LETTER OF SUBMITTAL

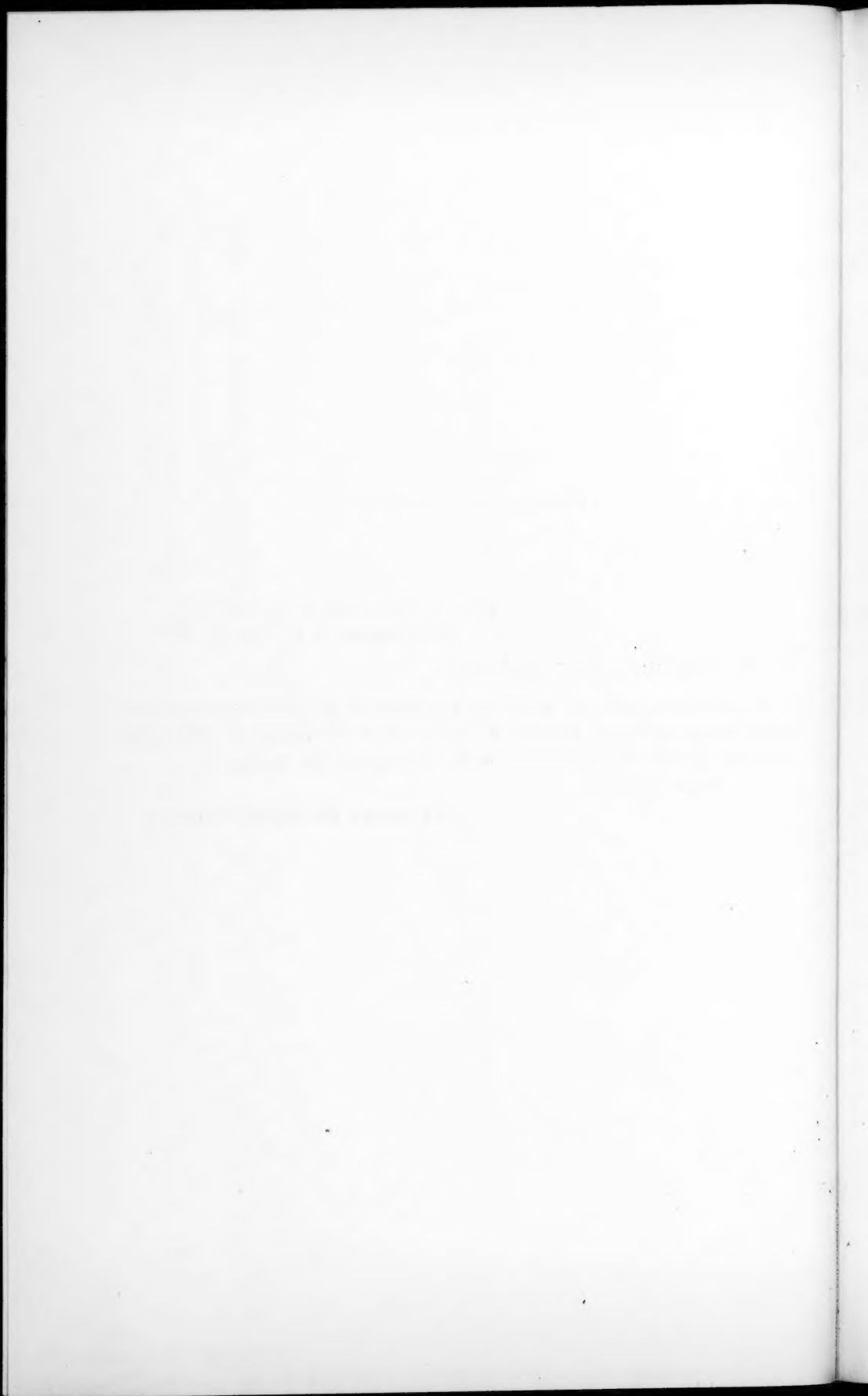
THE SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION,
Washington, D. C., July 12, 1945.

To the Congress of the United States:

In accordance with the act of incorporation of the American Historical Association, approved January 4, 1889, I have the honor of submitting to Congress the *Annual Report* of the Association for the year 1944.

Respectfully,

ALEXANDER WETMORE, *Secretary.*



LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL

THE AMERICAN HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION,
Washington, D. C., June 8, 1945.

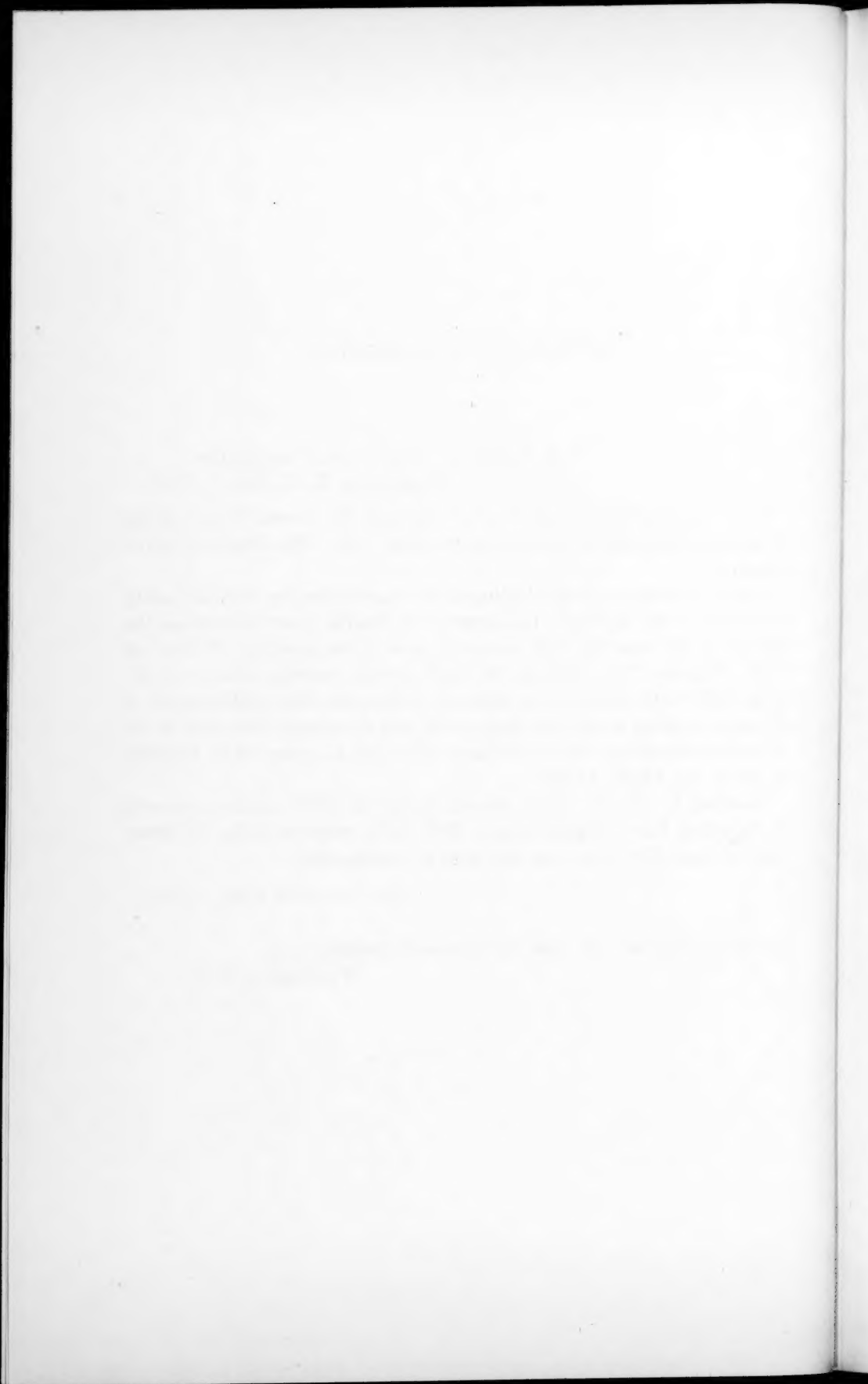
SIR: As provided by law, I submit herewith the *Annual Report* of the American Historical Association for the year 1944. This consists of three volumes.

Volume I contains the proceedings of the Association for 1944, including the report of the Secretary-Treasurer of the Pacific Coast Branch and the minutes of the meeting of the Conference on Latin American History for 1944. Volume I also contains the Guide to the *American Historical Review*, 1895-1945, which is an abstract, subject-classified bibliography of all major articles, notes and suggestions, and documents published in the *American Historical Review*, Volumes I through L, compiled by Franklin D. Scott and Elaine Tiegler.

Volumes II and III of the *Annual Report* for 1944 contain a calendar of American Fur Company papers, 1831-1849, prepared under the direction of Grace Lee Nute, together with an introduction.

GUY STANTON FORD, *Editor.*

TO THE SECRETARY OF THE SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION,
Washington, D. C.



CONTENTS

	Page
Organization and activities of the American Historical Association	IX
Act of incorporation	XIII
Constitution	XV
Officers for 1945	XIX
Committees and delegates for 1945	XXIII
Pacific Coast Branch officers for 1945	XXV

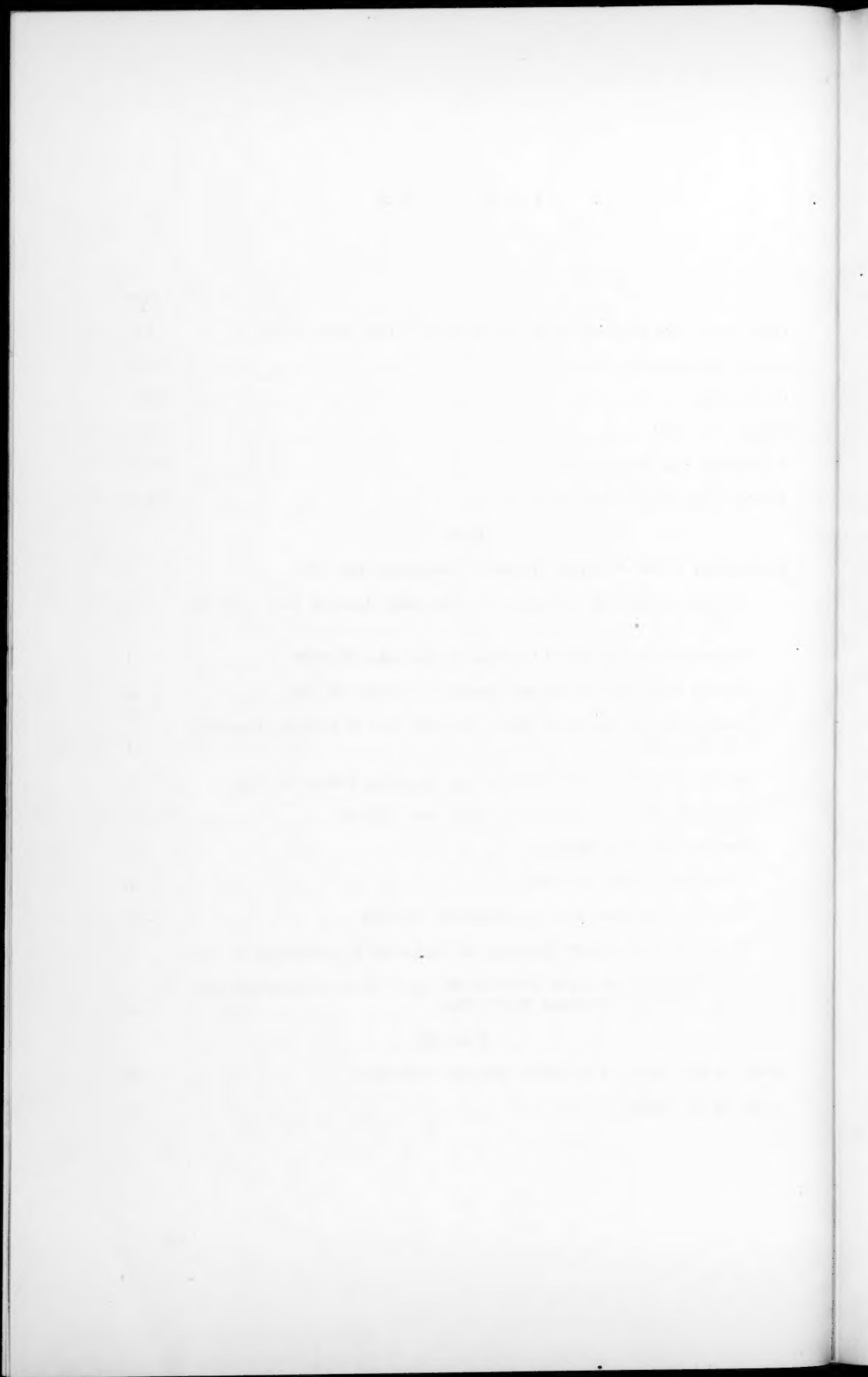
PART I

Proceedings of the American Historical Association for 1944:

Abstract of minutes of Executive Committee meeting held June 24, 1944	3
Minutes of the meetings of the Council, December 27, 1944	4
Minutes of the annual business meeting, December 28, 1944	8
Program of the fifty-ninth annual meeting, held in Chicago, December 28-29, 1944	11
Report of the Executive Secretary and Managing Editor for 1944	21
Report of the Treasurer for the fiscal year 1943-44	24
Statistics on membership	37
Committee reports for 1944	39
Reports of delegates and representatives for 1944	54
Report of the Secretary-Treasurer of the Pacific Coast Branch for 1944	61
The Conference on Latin American History: Eighteenth annual meeting, Chicago, December 28-29, 1944	64

PART II

Guide to the <i>American Historical Review</i> , 1895-1945	65
Index to the <i>Guide</i>	286



ORGANIZATION AND ACTIVITIES OF THE AMERICAN HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION

THE ASSOCIATION

The American Historical Association, incorporated by Act of Congress in 1889, is defined by its charter to be: *A body corporate and politic . . . for the promotion of historical studies, the collection and preservation of historical manuscripts, and for kindred purposes in the interest of American history, and of history in America.* There are at present more than 3,500 members.

It is a society not only for scholars, though it has for the last half century included in its membership all the outstanding historical scholars in America, not only for educators, though it has included all the great American teachers of history, but also for every man and woman who is interested in the study of history in America. Its most generous benefactors have been nonprofessionals who loved history for its own sake and who wished to spread that love of history to a wider and wider circle.

LEADERSHIP

Among those who have labored as members and later served it also as President, the American Historical Association can list such distinguished names as George Bancroft, Justin Winsor, Henry Adams, James Ford Rhodes, Alfred Thayer Mahan, Henry C. Lea, John Bach McMaster, Frederick Jackson Turner, Theodore Roosevelt, Edward Channing, Woodrow Wilson, Charles M. Andrews, James H. Breasted, James Harvey Robinson, and Charles Beard.

ANNUAL MEETING

It meets in the Christmas week in a different city each year to accommodate in turn members living in different parts of the country. The attendance at these meetings increased steadily until the outbreak of war. In 1940 it exceeded 1,100. The formal programs of these meetings include important contributions to every field of historical scholarship, many of which are subsequently printed. The meetings also afford an excellent opportunity for maintaining contacts with professional friends and for exchanging ideas with others working in the same field.

PUBLICATIONS

The publications of the Association are many and their scope is wide. The *Annual Report*, usually in two volumes, is printed for the Association by the United States Government. It contains *Proceedings* and valuable collections of documents, generally in the field of American history. The *American Historical Review*, published quarterly and distributed free to all members of the Association, is the recognized organ of the historical profession in America. It prints authoritative articles and critical reviews of new books in all fields of history. The Association also co-operates with the National Council for the Social Studies in the publication of *Social Education*, one of the most important journals in America dealing with the problems of history teaching in the schools.

Besides these regular publications, the Association controls a revolving fund donated by the Carnegie Corporation out of which it publishes from time to time historical monographs selected from the whole field of history. It has as well two separate endowment funds, the income from which is devoted to the publication of historical source material. The Albert J. Beveridge Fund was established as a memorial to the late Senator Beveridge by his wife, Catherine Beveridge, and a large group of his friends in Indiana. The income from this fund, the principal of which amounts to about \$90,000, is applied to the publication of material relative to the history of the United States, with preference given to the period from 1800 to 1865. The Littleton-Griswold Fund was established by Alice Griswold in memory of her father, William E. Littleton, and of her husband, Frank T. Griswold. The income from this fund, the principal of which amounts to \$25,000, is applied to the publication of material relative to the legal history of the United States.

OTHER ACTIVITIES

The Association from time to time, through special committees, interests itself actively in promoting the sound teaching of sound history in the schools. It has done much and is doing more to collect and preserve historical manuscripts in public and private repositories. It has interested itself in developing the potentialities of the radio as an instrument of education, and it plans and directs historical radio broadcasts in which it seeks to combine the skill and popular appeal of the professional broadcaster with the learning of the professional scholar.

The Association maintains close relations with state and local historical societies. It has also organized a Pacific Coast Branch for members living in the Far West.

The Association participates in the support of the *International Bibliography of Historical Sciences* by contributing the income from the

Andrew D. White Fund. This fund was established by the National Board for Historical Service at the close of the first World War.

SOURCES OF SUPPORT

The American Historical Association is in a position to do significant and useful work not only in the advancement of learning but also in the dissemination of sound knowledge. It commands the resources of the learned world, but it also recognizes the necessity of bringing the fruits of learning to the average American. It needs to be supported. Its endowment fund, amounting to about \$240,000, are carefully managed by a Board of Trustees composed of men prominent in the world of finance. Most of the income from this endowment is, however, earmarked for special publications. For its broader educational purposes it has to depend chiefly upon its membership dues. It has over 3,500 members, but needs many more.

MEMBERSHIP

The American Historical Association welcomes to its membership any individual subscribing to its purposes. The annual membership, including subscription to the *American Historical Review*, is five dollars. The life membership is one hundred dollars. Membership application blanks may be secured by addressing the Executive Secretary, Study Room 274, Library of Congress Annex, Washington 25, D. C.

PRIZES

The Association offers the following prizes:

The Herbert Baxter Adams Prize, without stipend, is awarded biennially in the even-numbered years for a monograph, in manuscript or in print, in the field of European history.

The George Louis Beer Prize of about \$200 (being the annual income from an endowment of \$6,000) is awarded annually for the best work on any phase of European international history since 1895. Competition is limited to citizens of the United States and to works in the English language actually submitted. A work may be submitted either in manuscript or in print.

The Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Prize of \$200 is awarded biennially in the odd-numbered years for a monograph, in manuscript or in print, in the field of the history of the Western Hemisphere. The committee on the Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Fund, which finances this prize, will publish such of these prize essays as may fall within the scope of the Beveridge Memorial Monograph Series.¹

¹ For information on this series, see the *Annual Report* for 1938, p. 58.

The John H. Dunning Prize of about \$100 is awarded biennially in the even-numbered years for a monograph, either in print or in manuscript, on any subject relating to American history. In accordance with the terms of the bequest, competition is limited to members of the Association.

All works submitted in competition for these prizes must be in the hands of the proper committee by June 1 of the year in which the award is made. The date of publication of printed monographs submitted in competition must fall within a period of two and one-half years prior to June 1 of the year in which the prize is awarded.

The Watumull Prize of \$500, established at the annual meeting in 1944, is to be awarded triennially, beginning with 1945, for the best book originally published in the United States on any phase of the history of India. All works submitted in competition for this prize must be in the hands of the committee by June 15 of the year in which the award is made. The date of publication of the books submitted must fall within the three-year period ending December 31 of the year preceding the award. (Since the 1945 award is the first, for that award only the committee is considering books published during the period 1940-44 inclusive.)

ACT OF INCORPORATION

Be it enacted by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, That Andrew D. White, of Ithaca, in the State of New York; George Bancroft, of Washington, in the District of Columbia; Justin Winsor, of Cambridge, in the State of Massachusetts; William F. Poole, of Chicago, in the State of Illinois; Herbert B. Adams, of Baltimore, in the State of Maryland; Clarence W. Bowen, of Brooklyn, in the State of New York, their associates and successors, are hereby created, in the District of Columbia, a body corporate and politic by the name of the American Historical Association, for the promotion of historical studies, the collection and preservation of historical manuscripts, and for kindred purposes in the interest of American history, and of history in America. Said Association is authorized to hold real and personal estate in the District of Columbia so far as may be necessary to its lawful ends to an amount not exceeding \$500,000, to adopt a constitution, and make bylaws not inconsistent with law. Said Association shall have its principal office at Washington, in the District of Columbia, and may hold its annual meetings in such places as the said incorporators shall determine. Said Association shall report annually to the Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution concerning its proceedings and the condition of historical study in America. Said Secretary shall communicate to Congress the whole of such report, or such portions thereof as he shall see fit. The Regents of the Smithsonian Institution are authorized to permit said Association to deposit its collections, manuscripts, books, pamphlets, and other material for history in the Smithsonian Institution or in the National Museum, at their discretion, upon such conditions and under such rules as they shall prescribe.

[Approved, January 4, 1889.]

CONSTITUTION

ARTICLE I

SECTION 1. The name of this society shall be the American Historical Association.

ARTICLE II

SECTION 1. Its object shall be the promotion of historical studies.

ARTICLE III

SECTION 1. Any person approved by the Council may become an active member of the Association. Active membership shall date from the receipt by the Treasurer of the first payment of dues, which shall be \$5 a year or a single payment of \$100 for life. Annual dues shall be payable at the beginning of the year to which they apply and any member whose dues are in arrears for one year may, one month after the mailing of a notice of such delinquency to his last known address, be dropped from the rolls by vote of the Council or the Executive Committee. Members who have been so dropped may be reinstated at any time by the payment of one year's dues in advance. Only active members shall have the right to vote or to hold office in the Association. Persons not resident in the United States may be elected by the Council as honorary or corresponding members, and such members shall be exempt from payment of dues.

ARTICLE IV

SECTION 1. The officers shall be a President, a Vice President, a Treasurer, an Executive Secretary, a Managing Editor of *The American Historical Review*, and, at the discretion of the Council, an Editor and an Assistant Secretary-Treasurer.

SEC. 2. It shall be the duty of the Executive Secretary, under the direction of the Council, to promote historical scholarship in America through the agencies of the Association. He shall exercise general oversight over the affairs of the Association, supervise the work of its committees, formulate policies for presentation to the Council, execute its policies and perform such other duties as the Council may from time to time direct.

SEC. 3. The other officers of the Association shall have such duties and perform such functions as are customarily attached to their respective offices or as may from time to time be prescribed by the Council.

SEC. 4. The President, Vice President, and Treasurer shall be elected in the following manner. The Nominating Committee at such convenient time prior to the 1st of September as it may determine shall invite each member of the Association to indicate his or her nominee for each of these offices. With these suggestions in mind, it shall draw up a ballot of nominations which it shall mail to each member of the Association on or before the 1st of December, and which it shall distribute as

the official ballot at the Annual Business Meeting. It shall present to this meeting orally any other nominations for these offices petitioned for to the Chairman of the Committee at least one day before the Business Meeting and supported by the names of twenty voting members of the Association. The election shall be made from these nominations at the Business Meeting.

SEC. 5. The Executive Secretary, the Assistant Secretary-Treasurer, the Managing Editor of *The American Historical Review*, and the Editor shall be appointed by the Council for specified terms of office not to exceed three years, and shall be eligible for reappointment. For the purpose of new appointments, the terms of all these officers shall be deemed to have expired on December 31, 1940. They shall receive such compensation as the Council may determine.

SEC. 6. If the office of President shall, through any cause, become vacant, the Vice President shall thereupon become President.

ARTICLE V

SECTION 1. There shall be a Council, constituted as follows:

(a) The President, the Vice President, the Executive Secretary, the Treasurer, and the Managing Editor of *The American Historical Review*.

(b) Elected members, eight in number, chosen by ballot in the manner provided in Article VI, Section 2. At the election of 1931 the persons so elected shall be assigned to four equal classes, the members of which shall be elected to serve respectively for 1, 2, 3, and 4 years. Subsequent elections in each class shall be for 4 years, except in the case of elections to complete unexpired terms.

(c) The former Presidents, but a former President shall be entitled to vote for the 3 years succeeding the expiration of his term as President, and no longer.

SEC. 2. The Council shall conduct the business, manage the property, and care for the general interests of the Association. In the exercise of its proper functions, the Council may appoint such committees, commissions, and boards as it may deem necessary. The Council shall make a full report of its activities to the Annual Meeting of the Association. The Association may by vote at any Annual Meeting instruct the Council to discontinue or enter upon any activity, and may take such other action directing the affairs of the Association as it may deem necessary and proper.

SEC. 3. For the transaction of necessary business when the Council is not in session, the Council shall elect annually from its membership an Executive Committee of not more than six members which shall include the Executive Secretary and the Treasurer. Subject always to the general direction of the Council the Executive Committee shall be responsible for the management of Association interests and the carrying out of Association policies.

ARTICLE VI

SECTION 1. There shall be a Nominating Committee to consist of five members, each of whom shall serve a term of two years. In the 1939 election, two new members shall be elected; in 1940, three; and this alternation shall continue thereafter, except in the case of elections to complete unexpired terms. If vacancies on the Nominating Committee occur between the time of the annual elections, the Nominating Committee shall fill them by direct *ad interim* appointments.

SEC. 2. Elective members of the Council and members of the Nominating Committee shall be chosen as follows: The Nominating Committee shall present for each vacant membership on the Council and on the Nominating Committee two or more names, including the names of any persons who may be nominated by a petition

carrying the signatures of twenty or more voting members of the Association. Nominations by petition must be in the hands of the Chairman of the Nominating Committee by November 1st. The Nominating Committee shall present these nominations to the members of the Association in the ballot distributed by mail as described above. The members of the Association shall make their choice from among these nominations and return their ballots for counting not later than the 20th of December at 6 p. m. No vote received after that time shall be valid. The votes shall be counted and checked in such manner as the Nominating Committee shall prescribe and shall then be sealed in a box and deposited in the Washington office of the Association where they shall be kept for at least a year. The results of the election shall be announced at the Annual Business Meeting. In case of a tie, choice shall be made at the Annual Business Meeting from among the candidates receiving the highest equal vote.

ARTICLE VII

SECTION 1. There shall be a Board of Trustees, five in number, consisting of a chairman and four other members, nominated by the Council and elected at the Annual Meeting of the Association. The Trustees elected in 1931 shall serve, respectively, as determined by lot, for 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 years. Subsequent elections shall be in all cases for 5 years except in the case of election to complete unexpired terms. The Board of Trustees, acting by a majority thereof, shall have the power to invest and reinvest the permanent funds of the Association with authority to employ such agents, investment counsel, and banks or trust companies as it may deem wise in carrying out its duties, and with further authority to delegate and transfer to any bank or trust company all its power to invest or reinvest; neither the Board of Trustees nor any bank or trust company to whom it may so transfer its power shall be controlled in its discretion by any statute or other law applicable to fiduciaries and the liability of the individual members of the board and of any such bank or trust company shall be limited to good faith and lack of actual fraud or wilful misconduct in the discharge of the duties resting upon them.

ARTICLE VIII

SECTION 1. Amendments to this Constitution may be proposed by a majority vote of any regular business session of the Association or by a majority vote of the Council and may be adopted by a majority vote of the next regular business session, provided always that the proposed amendment and an explanation thereof shall have been circulated to the membership of the Association not less than twenty days preceding the date of the business session at which the final vote is to be taken. It shall be the duty of the Executive Secretary to arrange for the distribution of all such proposed amendments among the members of the Association.



OFFICERS AND MEMBERS OF THE COUNCIL FOR 1945

OFFICERS

PRESIDENT

CARLTON J. H. HAYES
Columbia University, New York, N. Y.

VICE PRESIDENT

SIDNEY B. FAY
Harvard University, Cambridge, Mass.

TREASURER

SOLON J. BUCK
The National Archives, Washington, D. C.

EXECUTIVE SECRETARY AND MANAGING EDITOR

GUY STANTON FORD
Study Room 274, Library of Congress Annex, Washington 25, D. C.

ASSISTANT SECRETARY-TREASURER

PATTY W. WASHINGTON
Study Room 274, Library of Congress Annex, Washington 25, D. C.

COUNCIL

EX OFFICIO

THE PRESIDENT, VICE PRESIDENT, TREASURER, EXECUTIVE SECRETARY, AND
MANAGING EDITOR

Former Presidents

ANDREW C. McLAUGHLIN
University of Chicago, Chicago, Ill.

EDWARD P. CHEYNEY
R. F. D. No. 3, Media, Pa.

EVARTS B. GREENE
P. O. Box No. 285, Croton-on-Hudson, N. Y.

CHARLES A. BEARD
New Milford, Conn.

MICHAEL I. ROSTOVITZ
Yale University, New Haven, Conn.

CHARLES H. McILWAIN

Harvard University, Cambridge, Mass.

GUY STANTON FORD

Study Room 274, Library of Congress Annex, Washington 25, D. C.

FREDERIC L. PAXSON

University of California, Berkeley, Calif.

WILLIAM SCOTT FERGUSON

Harvard University, Cambridge, Mass.

MAX FARRAND¹

Reef Point, Bar Harbor, Maine

ARTHUR M. SCHLESINGER

Harvard University, Cambridge, Mass.

NELLIE NEILSON

Mount Holyoke College, South Hadley, Mass.

WILLIAM L. WESTERMANN

Columbia University, New York, N. Y.

Elected Members

ARTHUR S. AITON

University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Mich. (term expires 1945)

CARL STEPHENSON

Cornell University, Ithaca, N. Y. (term expires 1945)

RALPH H. GABRIEL

Yale University, New Haven, Conn. (term expires 1946)

J. SALWYN SCHAPIRO

College of the City of New York, New York, N. Y. (term expires 1946)

ROY F. NICHOLS

University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, Pa. (term expires 1947)

ROBERT L. SCHUYLER

Columbia University, New York, N. Y. (term expires 1947)

LAURA A. WHITE

University of Wyoming, Laramie, Wyo. (term expires 1948)

RALPH H. LUTZ

Stanford University, Calif. (term expires 1948)

EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE

CHAIRMAN

ARTHUR M. SCHLESINGER

Harvard University, Cambridge, Mass.

¹ Died June 17, 1945.

SOLON J. BUCK

The National Archives, Washington, D. C.

GUY STANTON FORD

Study Room 274, Library of Congress Annex, Washington 25, D. C.

RALPH H. GABRIEL

Yale University, New Haven, Conn.

CARL STEPHENSON

Cornell University, Ithaca, N. Y.

J. SALWYN SCHAPIRO

College of the City of New York, New York, N. Y.



COMMITTEES AND DELEGATES FOR 1945

Board of Trustees.—W. Randolph Burgess, 55 Wall Street, New York City, *Chairman*; Stanton Griffis, Hemphill, Noyes and Company, 15 Broad Street, New York City; Thomas I. Parkinson, 393 Seventh Avenue, New York City; Leon Fraser, 2 Wall Street, New York City¹; A. W. Page, 195 Broadway, New York City.

Board of Editors of the American Historical Review.—Guy Stanton Ford, Library of Congress Annex, Managing Editor; J. G. Randall, University of Illinois—term expires December 1945; William E. Lunt, Haverford College—term expires December 1946; A. C. Krey, University of Minnesota—term expires December 1947; M. L. W. Laistner, Cornell University—term expires December 1947; Thad W. Riker, University of Texas—term expires December 1948; Curtis P. Nettels, Cornell University—term expires December 1949.

Committee on Committees.—Arthur S. Aiton, University of Michigan, *Chairman*; Guy Stanton Ford, Library of Congress Annex (ex officio); Robert L. Schuyler, Columbia University.

Committee on Honorary Members.—Waldo G. Leland, American Council of Learned Societies, *Chairman*; Guy Stanton Ford, Library of Congress Annex (ex officio); Bernadotte Schmitt, University of Chicago.

Committee on the Herbert Baxter Adams Prize.—J. Duane Squires, Colby Junior College, *Chairman*; V. J. Puryear, 647 D Street, Davis, Calif.; Ross J. S. Hoffman, Fordham University.

Committee on the George Louis Beer Prize.—M. B. Garrett, University of North Carolina, *Chairman*; F. Lee Benms, Indiana University; Leona C. Gabel, Smith College.

Committee on the Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Prize.—Earle D. Ross, Iowa State College, *Chairman*; Merrill Jensen, University of Wisconsin; Oscar Handlin, Harvard University.

Committee on the John H. Dunning Prize.—Reginald C. McGrane, University of Cincinnati, *Chairman*; Dan E. Clark, University of Oregon; Lawrence Harper, University of California.

Committee on the Watumull Prize.—Taraknath Das, College of the City of New York, *Chairman*—term expires December 1947; Harry Carman, Columbia University—term expires December 1946; Robert L. Schuyler, Columbia University—term expires December 1945.

Committee on the Publication of the Annual Report.—Lowell J. Ragatz, George Washington University, *Chairman*; Solon J. Buck, The National Archives (ex officio); Louis C. Hunter, American University; St. George L. Sioussat, Library of Congress; Guy Stanton Ford, Library of Congress Annex (ex officio); Bernard J. Holm, 535 Kentucky Avenue, S.E., Washington, D. C.

Committee on the Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Fund.—A. P. Whitaker, University of Pennsylvania, *Chairman*; Dorothy B. Goebel, Hunter College; Philip G. Davidson, Jr., Vanderbilt University.

¹ Died April 8, 1945.

Committee on the Carnegie Revolving Fund for Publications.—Ray A. Billington, Northwestern University, *Chairman*; Samuel H. Brockunier, Jr., Wesleyan University; Raymond P. Stearns, 202 Vermont Avenue, Urbana, Ill.; Paul W. Gates, Cornell University; Grace A. Cockroft, Skidmore College; Lawrence F. Hill, Ohio State University.

Committee on the Littleton-Griswold Fund.—Francis S. Philbrick, University of Pennsylvania, *Chairman*; John Dickinson, University of Pennsylvania; Leonard W. Labaree, Yale University; Richard B. Morris, College of the City of New York; Mark D. Howe, University of Buffalo; Arthur T. Vanderbilt, 744 Broad Street, Newark, N. J.; Zechariah Chafee, Jr., Harvard University; Richard L. Morton, College of William and Mary.

Committee on Government Publications.—Jeannette Nichols, 438 Riverview Road, Swarthmore, Pa., *Chairman*; Richard J. Purcell, Catholic University; Bernard Mayo, University of Virginia.

Committee on Historical Source Materials.—Herbert A. Kellar, McCormick Historical Association, *Chairman*. *Special Committee on Archives:* Emmett J. Leahy, Navy Department, *Chairman*; Edwin A. Davis, Louisiana State University; Solon J. Buck, The National Archives; Sargent B. Child, Office of Price Administration; Charles M. Gates, University of Washington; Margaret C. Norton, Illinois State Library; Randolph W. Church, Virginia State Library. *Special Committee on Manuscripts:* Lester J. Cappon, University of Virginia, *Chairman*; Wendell H. Stephenson, Louisiana State University; Theodore C. Blegen, University of Minnesota; John C. L. Andreassen, W.P.A., New Orleans, La.; St. George L. Sioussat, Library of Congress; Roger Shugg, University of Indiana; Whitney R. Cross, Cornell University. *Special Committee on Newspapers:* Culver H. Smith, University of Chattanooga, *Chairman*; Allan Nevins, Columbia University; Edgar E. Robinson, Stanford University; E. Malcolm Carroll, Duke University; Adeline Barry, The National Archives. *Special Committee on Business Records:* Ralph M. Hower, Harvard University, *Chairman*; William D. Overman, Ohio State Archaeological and Historical Society; Oliver W. Holmes, The National Archives; Lewis Atherton, University of Missouri; Thomas D. Clark, University of Kentucky; Oliver M. Dickerson, Colorado State Teachers College; Guy Lee, The National Archives. *Special Committee on Library Holdings:* Douglas C. McMurtrie, *Chairman* (deceased); Luther H. Evans, Library of Congress; Gilbert H. Doane, University of Wisconsin; A. G. Kuhlman, Vanderbilt University; James A. Barnes, Temple University; George A. Schwegmann, Jr., Library of Congress. *Special Committee on Preservation and Restoration of Historical Objects:* H. E. Kahler, National Park Service, Department of Interior, Chicago, *Chairman*; Ronald Lee, 17th Serv. Sq., 1st Serv. Group, Fort Dix Air Base, Fort Dix, N. J.; Russell H. Anderson, Museum of Science and Industry, Chicago; Hunter D. Farish (deceased); C. C. Crittenden, North Carolina Historical Commission; Lucille O'Connor Kellar, McCormick Historical Association. *Special Committee on British Sessional Papers:* Edgar L. Erickson, Chemical Warfare Division, Camp Aberdeen, Md., *Chairman*; Milton R. Gutsch, University of Texas; Warner F. Woodring, Ohio State University; Frank J. Klingberg, University of California at Los Angeles. *Research Associate:* Everett E. Edwards, Department of Agriculture.

Committee on the W.P.A. Annotated Bibliography of American History.—Lester J. Cappon, University of Virginia, *Chairman*; C. C. Crittenden, North Carolina State Department of Archives and History; Dan Lacy, The National Archives.

Delegates of the American Historical Association.—*American Academy of Classical and Medieval Studies in Rome:* Austin P. Evans, Columbia University—term expires December, 1947; T. Robert S. Broughton, Bryn Mawr College—term ex-

pires December, 1947. *American Council of Learned Societies*: Wallace Notestein, Yale University—term expires December, 1946; C. W. de Kiewiet, Cornell University—term expires December, 1948. *Representative on American Year Book Supervisory Board*: Thomas C. Cochran, Washington Square College, New York University. *International Committee of Historical Sciences*: James T. Shotwell, Columbia University; Waldo G. Leland, American Council of Learned Societies. *Representative on National Parks Association Board*: B. Floyd Flickinger, Bear Garden Farm, Star Route, Hanover, Va.—term expires December, 1946. *Representatives on Social Education*: Guy Stanton Ford, Library of Congress Annex (ex officio); Chester McA. Destler, Connecticut College. *Social Science Research Council*: Shepard B. Clough, Columbia University—term expires December, 1945; Merle E. Curti, University of Wisconsin—term expires December, 1946; Roy F. Nichols, University of Pennsylvania—term expires December, 1947.

PACIFIC COAST BRANCH OFFICERS FOR 1945

PRESIDENT

ANDREW FISH

University of Oregon, Eugene, Oreg.

VICE PRESIDENT

FRANK H. GARVER

University of Southern California, Los Angeles, Calif.

SECRETARY-TREASURER

HARDIN CRAIG, Jr.

California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, Calif.

COUNCIL

The above officers and—

JOHN W. CAUGHEY

University of California at Los Angeles, Calif.

HERMAN J. DEUTSCH

Washington State College, Pullman, Wash.

JOHN D. HICKS

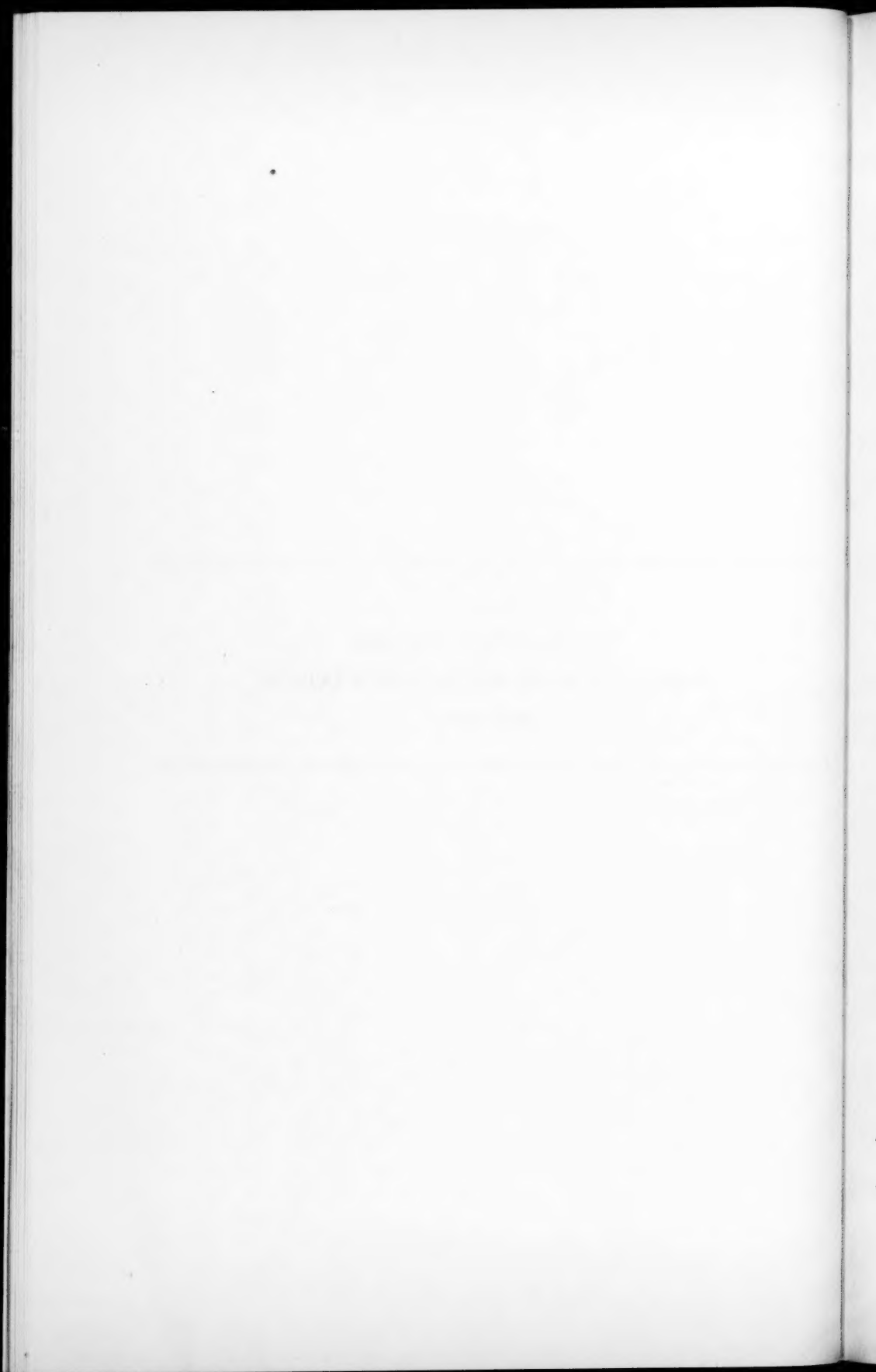
University of California, Berkeley, Calif.

ANATOLE G. MAZOUR

University of Nevada, Reno, Nevada



PART I
PROCEEDINGS OF THE
AMERICAN HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION
FOR 1944



ABSTRACT OF MINUTES OF EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE MEETING

*Meeting of Saturday, June 24, 1944, 2:00 P. M., Conference Room,
National Archives, Washington, D. C.*

Present: Messrs. Ralph H. Gabriel, Carl Stephenson, Solon J. Buck, Guy Stanton Ford, members of the Executive Committee; Mr. Waldo G. Leland of the American Council of Learned Societies; Messrs. Theodore C. Blegen and Thomas K. Ford of the Historical Service Board; and Major General Frederick H. Osborn, Director of the Morale Services Division, Army Service Forces, War Department.

In the absence of Professor Arthur M. Schlesinger, chairman of the Executive Committee, Mr. Ford acted as temporary chairman. Mr. Ford opened the meeting with a reference to the letter from Major Haycraft stating that the War Department desired to renew the contract of the Historical Service Board. The conference was called primarily to consider the renewal as the present contract expires June 30, 1944. Mr. Ford then introduced General Osborn, for whose division the Historical Service Board prepares its manuscripts.

General Osborn explained the part that the work of the Board plays in the whole educational and morale-building program of the Army, the purpose of which is to increase the effectiveness of the soldiers and officers as fighters during the war and as citizens after the war. The difficulties and delays met with by the Board, General Osborn continued, were part of the difficulties and delays of getting the whole immense program set up and functioning properly. He felt that great progress was now being made, however, in moving toward publication the manuscripts prepared by the Board. He also expressed in most cordial terms his appreciation of the material prepared by the Board.

Mr. Blegen then made his report as Director of the Historical Service Board. He told how the Board has planned and maintained a production schedule averaging three manuscripts a month for the War Department since December 1943 and listed the tentative manuscripts planned to keep up this schedule through September 1944. He described some of the problems that the Board has met, largely those concerned with the lapse of time between the completion of a manuscript and its publication by the War Department. He added, however, that many of these problems seem to have been ironed out by the War Department in the past month. In planning a future budget, Mr. Blegen pointed out that a larger sum would be needed than before because of the fact that the cost of illustrations, originally thought to be covered by the War Department, is being paid from the Board's allotment. Mr. Blegen announced his own resignation from the Directorship, effective August 31, 1944.

Mr. Buck then moved that the Executive Committee authorize the Executive Secretary to renew the contract and to enter into negotiations for the continued administration of the Historical Service Board, reporting back his recommendations to the Executive Committee. Professor Stephenson seconded the motion. The motion was approved unanimously.

The Executive Secretary then took the opportunity to present other matters requiring the attention of the Executive Committee.

1. Mr. Ford reported that the Managing Committee of the School of Classical Studies of the American Academy in Rome desired our continued participation in their joint meetings with delegates from various societies interested in the School and requested that we appoint delegates for a new three-year term. The Executive Secretary was authorized by the Executive Committee to appoint the delegates.

2. The Executive Secretary was also authorized to appoint an official American Historical Association delegate to the American Catholic Historical Association anniversary luncheon held at the time of the American Historical Association annual meeting in December 1944.

3. The exact status of the Association archives deposited with the Library of Congress was then discussed by the Executive Committee. The Committee decided that the Association archives should be considered as a gift to the Library of Congress, freely open to scholars unless parts of the material were restricted by a special directive from the Executive Secretary. It was also decided that destruction of any or all of this material could be done only with the consent of the Executive Secretary.

4. The memorandum of the Office of Defense Transportation, requesting cancellation of conventions and similar meetings this year, was then discussed and the Executive Secretary was authorized to inform the Director of our compliance with his request in that our annual meeting this year, as in the past two years, would be brief and would draw its attendance chiefly from members in that particular locality in which the meeting is to be held.

The meeting then adjourned.

GUY STANTON FORD, *Executive Secretary*.

**MINUTES OF THE MEETING OF THE COUNCIL OF THE
AMERICAN HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION, PRIVATE ROOM
NO. 3, STEVENS HOTEL, CHICAGO, ILLINOIS,
DECEMBER 27, 1944, 2:30 P. M.**

Present: William L. Westermann, *President*; Arthus S. Aiton, Arthur M. Schlesinger, Ralph H. Gabriel, Roy F. Nichols, *Councilors*; Guy Stanton Ford, *Executive Secretary*.

President Westermann called the meeting to order.

Upon motion the minutes of the 1943 meeting of the Council and of the annual business meeting (which had been published) and the minutes of the Executive Committee meeting on June 24, 1944 (which had been circulated), were approved without being read.

Mr. Ford summarized his report as Executive Secretary and Managing Editor and commented at some length on the work of the Historical Service Board. (For his report see pp. 21-22.)

The following matters in the report of the Executive Secretary were made the subject of special discussion and action:

1. It was moved and seconded that a new committee on the WPA bibliography of United States history be appointed to continue an investigation of the feasibility of publishing this material when edited and to submit a budget estimate. Professor Lester J. Cappon of the University of Virginia, chairman, Mr. C. C. Crittenden of North Carolina, and a third to be named by the chairman, were constituted the new committee.

2. It was voted to discontinue the representation of the American Historical Association on the American Documentation Institute and to continue our repre-

sentation on the Supervisory Board of the *American Year Book*. Professor Thomas C. Cochran of New York University was reappointed representative to the *Year Book*.

Professor Aiton then presented the report of the Committee on Committees. He explained that under present conditions the committee had thought it advisable not to make too many changes and in the cases of inactive committees to limit new appointments to vacancies caused by resignation. The list of committees and delegates presented was thereupon approved by the Council. (For list see pp. xxiii-xxv.)

The Executive Secretary then presented the following proposal of the Watumull Foundation:

The Watumull Foundation proposes to establish a Prize of \$500 to be awarded triennially by the American Historical Association for the best book originally published in the United States on any phase of the history of India, the first award to be announced at the Annual Meeting of the Association in December 1945. The Foundation suggests that in making the first award the Committee in Charge of the Prize take into consideration books published during the five year period 1940 to 1944 inclusive. Each subsequent award, beginning with that of 1948, would be limited to books published during the period of three years preceding the year in which the award is made; that is, 1945 to 1947 inclusive for the award of 1948. No award would be made if, in the opinion of the Committee, no eligible book possessed sufficient merit to justify it. The Committee of three or five members to be appointed by the Association would contain one member to be appointed by the Association from a list of three members of the Association which the Watumull Foundation will nominate.

On motion the proposal of the Watumull Foundation was accepted and the appointment of a committee of three referred to the Executive Committee.¹

The following ad interim appointments of delegates were made during 1944: Mrs. Helen Taft Manning of Bryn Mawr College and Professor Thomas E. Drake of Haverford College were the representatives at the meeting of the American Academy of Political and Social Science on April 14 and 15, 1944. Professor Harry G. Plum of the University of Iowa was the delegate to the inauguration of Dr. Russell David Cole as president of Cornell College on April 25, 1944. Professor A. C. Krey of the University of Minnesota was the delegate to the inauguration of Father Flynn as president of St. Thomas College on April 27, 1944. Dr. James A. James of Northwestern University was the delegate to the inauguration of Dr. Ernest A. Johnson as president of Lake Forest College on May 20, 1944. Dr. Merrill E. Gaddis of Central College was the delegate to the inauguration of Dr. Harry S. DeVore as president of Central College on May 25, 1944. Miss Shirley Farr of Brandon, Vermont, was the delegate to the inauguration of Dr. Homer L. Dodge as president of Norwich University on October 9, 1944. Professor Aileen Dunham of Wooster College was the delegate to the inauguration of Dr. Howard F. Lowry as president of Wooster College on October 21, 1944. Professor Arthur C. Bining of the University of Pennsylvania was the delegate to the inauguration of Dr. Edwin Ewart Aubrey as president of Crozer Theological Seminary on October 31, 1944. Professor Donald C. Babcock of the University of New Hampshire was the delegate to the inauguration of Dr. Harold Walter Stoke as president of the University of New Hampshire on December 17, 1944.

Reporting for the Committee on Honorary Members, of which Dr. Waldo G. Leland is chairman and Professor Bernadotte Schmitt the other member, Mr. Ford presented a list of ten foreign scholars as candidates for election to honorary mem-

¹ The Council of the Association appointed the committee by a mail vote. For names of members and their terms of office see list of committees and delegates for 1945, p. xxiii.

bership in the American Historical Association. The committee had canvassed the field thoroughly and in some cases the chairman had held conferences of groups familiar with the scholars of special areas.

On motion the following list of honorary members was elected and the Executive Secretary instructed to inform them and in due time to send them some suitable certificate:

Rafael Altamira y Crevea. Historian and jurist; born 1866; has been professor of history of Spanish law in University of Oviedo, professor in the Diplomatic and Consular Institute at Madrid, president of the Ibero-American Institute of Comparative Law, judge of the Permanent Court of International Justice at The Hague; regarded as one of the most distinguished historians of Spain; was special guest of American Historical Association at twenty-fifth anniversary meeting, 1909; author or editor of *History of Law*, *Compilation of American Constitutions*, *History of Spanish Colonial Institutions*, and *History of Spanish Civilization*.

Domingo Amunátegui y Solar. Professor, historian, publicist; corresponding member of the Real Academia de la Historia of Madrid; born 1860; has been professor and dean of the Faculty of Philosophy of the University of Chile, rector of the University, and Minister of Justice and Public Instruction and of the Interior; author and editor of many historical works, including *Las encomiendas de indígenas en Chile*, *Historia social de Chile*, *Historia de Chile*, and *El progreso intelectual y política de Chile*.

Pierre Caron. Archiviste paléographe; emeritus director general of the Archives of France; born 1875; has been member of the Comité des Travaux Historiques, secretary of the Commission de l'Histoire Economique de la Révolution; an international leader in historical bibliography; editor of *International Bibliography of Historical Sciences*, *World List of Historical Periodicals and Bibliographies*, and *Repertoire bibliographique de l'histoire de France*.

Aage Friis, Ph.D. Emeritus professor of history, University of Copenhagen; born 1870; has been rector of the University of Copenhagen, president of the Danish Historical Society, counsellor of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs; one of the most distinguished of Scandinavian historians, author and editor of numerous works on Danish history, including *The Question of North Schleswig, 1864-1879* and *Europe, Denmark and North Schleswig*.

Hu Shih, B.A. (Cornell), Ph.D., LL.D. Historian and philosopher; visiting lecturer, Harvard University; member of Academia Sinica; born 1891; has been professor of philosophy and dean of department of English literature, dean of College of Arts and Letters, in Peking National University; president of China Institute, Woosung; ambassador to United States; works include *Development of the Logical Method in Ancient China*, *Outline of Chinese Philosophy*, *Ancient History of China*, and *History of Chinese Thought* (in progress).

Johan Huizinga, D.Litt.¹ Professor of history, University of Leiden; president of the Section of Letters, Royal Academy of Sciences; born 1872; member of the International Committee for Intellectual Cooperation of the League of Nations; leading Dutch historian; works include *Waning of the Middle Ages* (1924), *Erasmus* (1924), *America As It Lives and Thinks* (1927), *Wege der Kulturgeschichte* (1930), *In the Shadow of Tomorrow* (1936), and *Homo Ludens* (1938).

¹ Since his country was still occupied by Germany at the time of his election, it was considered inadvisable to attempt to communicate with him at least not for the time being. On March 23, 1945, news of his death was received. He died at the age of seventy-two, before the liberation of his country was effected, without knowledge of his election.

Albert Frederick Pollard, M.A., Litt.D. Emeritus director of the Institute of Historical Research, University of London; born 1869; has been professor of constitutional history, University of London; fellow of All Souls, Oxford; founder and president of the Historical Association; founder of the Institute of Historical Research; Goldwin Smith Lecturer in Cornell University; assistant editor, *Dictionary of National Biography*; originator and organizer of the Anglo-American Historical Conferences, leader in development of professional relations between American and British historians; author and editor of many works and articles, including *Life of Thomas Cranmer* (1904), *Factors in Modern History* (1907), *Political History of England, Vol. V* (1910), *Evolution of Parliament* (1920), and *Factors in American History* (1925).

Afonso de Escragno Taunay. Director of the Paulista Museum, São Paulo; born 1876; member of the Brazilian Academy of Letters and the Brazilian Historical and Geographical Institute; author and editor of many historical works, including *Historia geral das bandeiras*, *Historia seiscentista da villa de São Paulo*, and *Collectanea de documentos da antiga cartographia paulista*.

George Macaulay Trevelyan, D.C.L., LL.D., Litt.D. Master of Trinity College, Cambridge; born 1876; has been Regius Professor of Modern History, Cambridge; author of many historical works, including *England under the Stuarts*, *Garibaldi and the Thousand* (1909), *Garibaldi and the Making of Italy* (1911), *Life of John Bright* (1913), *British History in the Nineteenth Century* (1922), *History of England* (1926), *England under Queen Anne* (1930-35), *Grey of Falloden* (1936) and *The English Revolution, 1688-1689* (1938).

George Mackinnon Wrong, M.A., LL.D. Fellow of the Royal Society of Canada; emeritus professor of history, University of Toronto; born 1860; author of *The British Nation: A History* (1903), *The Earl of Elgin* (1905), *A Canadian Manor of Its Seigneurs* (1908), *The Fall of Canada* (1914), *The Conquest of New France* (1918), *Washington and His Comrades in Arms* (1920), *The Rise and Fall of New France* (1928), *Canada and the American Revolution* (1934), and *The Canadians: The Story of a People* (1938).

As the term of membership of the Committee on Honorary Members had not been set at the time when the committee was constituted in 1943, a motion was made and carried that the term of the committee be for the period of three years, present members serving from December 1943, to December 1946.

On motion the present members of the Executive Committee were re-elected for one year. The membership is as follows: Arthur M. Schlesinger, chairman; Ralph H. Gabriel, J. Salwyn Schapiro, Carl Stephenson, Solon J. Buck, Treasurer, and Guy Stanton Ford, Executive Secretary, ex officio.

In the absence of Dr. Solon J. Buck, his report as Treasurer was briefly summarized by Mr. Ford. (For the Treasurer's complete report see pp. 24-37.) In substance it indicated that the finances of the Association were in a healthy condition.

The last matter before the Council was the consideration of the annual meeting for 1945. It was determined to follow the cycle, which would bring the meeting in 1945 to Washington, D. C. Professor Sidney Painter of Johns Hopkins University was named chairman of the Program Committee and Dean E. L. Kayser of George Washington University, chairman of the Local Arrangements Committee. Authority was given to the Executive Committee to modify all arrangements to fit any contingency that might arise during the year.

GUY STANTON FORD, *Executive Secretary*.

**MINUTES OF THE BUSINESS MEETING OF THE AMERICAN
HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION, SOUTH BALLROOM,
STEVENS HOTEL, CHICAGO, ILLINOIS,
DECEMBER 28, 1944, 3:45 P. M.**

The annual business meeting of the American Historical Association, held in the South Ballroom of the Stevens Hotel in Chicago, was called to order by President Westermann.

The motion was made to approve without reading the minutes of the meeting in 1943, as they had already been printed and circulated.

Mr. Ford then read his report as Executive Secretary (see pp. 21-24) and summarized the reports from the chairmen of the various committees and the delegates and representatives of the Association to other meetings.

In the absence of the Treasurer, the essential parts of his report were presented by the Executive Secretary. The motion was made to accept the report and place it on file. Approved. (The report is presented in full in this volume, pp. 24-37.)

The nomination of A. W. Page to continue his membership on the Board of Trustees for another term was presented, and he was re-elected by the Association.

For the information of the Association the Executive Secretary reported on the following interesting actions taken by the Council:

The choice of ten additional honorary members; the approval of the proposal of the Watumull Foundation to support a prize for the best work on the history of India, to be awarded by a committee of the American Historical Association; the discontinuance of representation on the American Documentation Institute; the continuance of representation on the Supervisory Board of the *American Year Book*; the re-election for the coming year of the present Executive Committee; the roster of committees, delegates, and representatives chosen by the Council; and the selection by the Council of Washington as the place for the next meeting, Professor Sidney Painter of Johns Hopkins University as chairman of the Program Committee and Dean E. L. Kayser of George Washington University as chairman of the Local Arrangements Committee, and the empowering by Council of the Executive Committee to modify all arrangements to fit any contingency that might arise during the year. (These matters are given in full in the minutes of the Council, pp. 4-7.)

In the absence of Professor Julius Pratt, chairman of the Nominating Committee, its report was presented by Professor James C. Malin of the University of Kansas. The committee had received 332 mail ballots by the final date, December 20. A tabulation showed the election of the following from names submitted by the committee:

Members of the Council (two to be chosen)—Miss Laura A. White of the University of Wyoming and Professor Ralph H. Lutz of Stanford University.

Members of the Nominating Committee (three to be chosen) Professors Edward M. Earle of Princeton University and Max H. Savelle of Stanford University.

For the third place on the Nominating Committee there was a tie with 165 votes for each of two nominees. This necessitated a written ballot at this meeting. The results, believe it or not, were 71 votes for one nominee and 69 for the other. A change of one vote would have produced a second tie. Professor Frank J. Klingberg was elected. The other members of the Nominating Committee are Professor Loren C. MacKinney of the University of North Carolina, chairman, and Professor James C. Malin of the University of Kansas.

The president, vice president, and treasurer are elected at the business meeting. The committee nominated for these offices Professor Carlton J. H. Hayes, Pro-

fessor Sidney B. Fay, and Dr. Solon J. Buck, respectively. Professor Malin stated that the chairman had received within the prescribed time limit a written petition from more than the required twenty members submitting the name of Professor Fay for the office of president. Professor Arthur Schlesinger then read a letter from Professor Fay, dated December 23, strongly deprecating the grounds on which the petitioners had acted and declining to accept if he were nominated for the presidency. Professor W. M. Gewehr made an extended statement in explanation of the position of the petitioners. The presiding officer, Professor Westermann, although stating that in his view, under a correct interpretation of Professor Fay's letter, there was only one candidate for the presidency, that presented by the Nominating Committee, assented to the call for a written ballot. Professor Hayes was elected president for the ensuing year by a vote of 110 to 66. Professor Gewehr closed the incident by a statement for his group that they accepted the result with undiminished loyalty to the Association.

In the absence of any representative from the Pacific Coast Branch, Mr. Ford read an excerpt from the report of the Secretary-Treasurer, Professor Hardin Craig, Jr.

At the call for new business, Mrs. Jeanette Nichols, chairman of the Committee on Government Publications, presented the following resolutions:

Whereas, the ever-increasing significance of the foreign relations of the United States makes it of more and more importance that adequate material on our foreign policies be made available to the American public in general and to the historical profession in particular:

Therefore, be it Resolved, that the American Historical Association reaffirm its continued interest in the publications of the Department of State and urge that that Department make its documentation of past policy more nearly up to date, and its documentation of current policy and of the great international events of the year as full and revealing as the public interest permits.

Whereas, in times such as these our people need a more complete understanding of the democratic bases upon which the United States was founded and whereas such understanding is made possible in larger degree by publication of the records of our territorial development and whereas it would be highly undesirable to leave so valuable a record incomplete:

Therefore, be it Resolved, that the American Historical Association urge prompt passage by Congress of the bill authorizing the completion of the publication of the Territorial Papers.

They were unanimously approved.

The meeting was one of the best-attended of any held in recent years.

On motion the meeting adjourned.

GUY STANTON FORD, *Executive Secretary*.

**PROGRAM OF THE FIFTY-NINTH ANNUAL MEETING, HELD AT
THE STEVENS HOTEL, CHICAGO, ILLINOIS,
DECEMBER 28-29, 1944**

WEDNESDAY, DECEMBER 27

2:30 P. M. PRIVATE DINING-ROOM NO. 3

Meeting of the Council

THURSDAY, DECEMBER 28

MORNING SESSIONS

I

10 A. M. PRIVATE DINING-ROOM NO. 12

ANCIENT HISTORY

Chairman: J. A. O. Larsen, University of Chicago

Bureaucracy and Law in the Roman Principate

A. Arthur Schiller, Columbia University

The Relation between the Attalids and the Greek City-States

Esther V. Hansen, Elmira College

The Common Soldier in the Roman Army: Notes on Military Papyri

Robert O. Fink, Beloit College

II

10 A. M. PRIVATE DINING-ROOM NO. 1

THE LAND IN CRITICAL PERIODS

Joint Session of the American Historical Association and the
Agricultural History Society

*Chairman: Russell H. Anderson, Museum of Science and Industry,
Chicago*

The Pattern of Migration and Settlement in the Old South

Frank L. Owsley, Vanderbilt University

The Ex-Soldier and the Land Question: Some Historical Remarks

Rudolph Freund, University of Virginia

Federal Aid to Agriculture Since World War I

*Donald C. Horton and E. Fenton Shepard, Bureau of Agricultural
Economics, U. S. Department of Agriculture*

The paper will be read by Dr. Horton

III

10 A. M. NORTH ASSEMBLY

NATIONAL VARIATIONS IN THE EFFECTS OF SPECIFIC ECONOMIC INNOVATIONS

Joint Session of the American Historical Association and the
Economic History Association

Chairman: Chester W. Wright, University of Chicago

Ancillary Business Institutions in Europe and America

Arthur H. Cole, Harvard University

Laissez Faire in Relation to Transportation, the Tariff, and Labor
in England and France, 1814-46

Arthur L. Dunham, University of Michigan

Trends in National Taxation in the United Kingdom and the United
States in the Twentieth Century

Edmund A. Nightingale, University of Minnesota

LUNCHEON CONFERENCES

I

12:15 P. M. NORTH BALLROOM

MODERN EUROPEAN HISTORY

Luncheon Conference of the Modern European History Group

Chairman: Eugene N. Anderson, The American University

Central Europe and Russia

Oscar Jászi, Oberlin College

II

12:30 P. M. NORTH ASSEMBLY

WAR RECORDS IN THEIR RELATION TO STATE AND LOCAL ARCHIVES

Joint Luncheon Conference of the American Historical Association
and The Society of American Archivists

Chairman: Theodore C. Pease, University of Illinois

Round-Table Discussion:

*C. C. Crittenden, North Carolina State Department of Archives and
History*

Stanley Erikson, Rockford College

*Hermann F. Robinton, New York State Division of Archives and
History*

AFTERNOON SESSIONS

I

2 P. M. PRIVATE DINING-ROOM NO. 13

THE MIDDLE AGES AND THE RENAISSANCE

Chairman: A. C. Krey, University of Minnesota

New Light on Bede the Historian

Charles W. Jones, Cornell University

Otto of Freising and His Histories

Charles C. Mierow, Carleton College

Leonardo Bruni and Humanistic Historiography

Berthold L. Ullman, University of North Carolina

Discussion:

William C. Bark, Lawrence College

Bernard J. Holm, Washington, D.C.

Theodor E. Mommsen, The Groton School

II

2 P. M. NORTH ASSEMBLY

ENGLISH HISTORY

Chairman: Robert K. Richardson, Beloit College

Historical Bases of Britain's Social Security Program

A. L. Burt, University of Minnesota

Discussion:

Frederick C. Dietz, University of Illinois

Frances E. Gillespie, University of Chicago

III

2 P. M. PRIVATE DINING-ROOM NO. 17

LATIN-AMERICAN HISTORY

Chairman: J. Fred Rippy, University of Chicago

Steamboat Transportation on the Orinoco

William H. Gray, Pennsylvania State College

Industry and Nationalism in Latin America

George Wythe, U. S. Department of Commerce

Monetary Theory and Policy in Ibero-America Prior to the Twentieth Century

Constantine E. McGuire, Washington, D. C.

IV

2 P. M. SOUTH BALLROOM

AMERICAN PATRIOTISM

Joint Session of the American Historical Association and the National Council for the Social Studies

Chairman: Andrew W. Cordier, Manchester College

The Role of Patriotism in American Life

Merle Curti, University of Wisconsin

Discussion:

Jacob C. Meyer, Western Reserve University

Burr W. Phillips, University of Wisconsin

Harrison J. Thornton, University of Iowa

V

2 P. M. PRIVATE DINING-ROOM NO. 1

RELATIONS BETWEEN CIVIL AND MILITARY AUTHORITIES DURING THE CIVIL WAR

Joint Session of the American Historical Association and the Southern Historical Association

Chairman: Howard K. Beale, University of North Carolina

Civil and Military Relationships under Lincoln

James G. Randall, University of Illinois

General Order No. 100 and Military Government

Frank Freidel, University of Maryland

Northern Governors and the Lincoln Government

William B. Hesseltine, University of Wisconsin

VI

3:45 P. M. SOUTH BALLROOM

Business Meeting of the American Historical Association

EVENING SESSION

6:30 P. M. NORTH BALLROOM

DINNER OF THE AMERICAN HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION

Toastmaster: George C. Sellery, University of Wisconsin

Announcement of Prizes

Presidential Address:

Between Slavery and Freedom

William Linn Westermann, Columbia University

FRIDAY, DECEMBER 29

MORNING SESSIONS

I

10 A. M. PRIVATE DINING-ROOM NO. 2

MODERN EUROPEAN HISTORY

Chairman: Louis Gottschalk, University of Chicago

Prudhomme's Les Révolutions de Paris

John B. Sirich, University of Illinois

Eighteenth-Century Despots and Twentieth-Century Dictators

Geoffrey Bruun, Sarah Lawrence College

Discussion:

Dietrich Gerhard, Washington University

II

10 A. M. PRIVATE DINING-ROOM NO. 12

MILITARY HISTORY

*Joint Session of the American Historical Association and the
American Military Institute*

Chairman: Theodore C. Blegen, University of Minnesota

The Influence of Military Production and Supply on History

Troyer S. Anderson, Historical Branch, G-2, United States Army

Discussion:

William B. Hesseltine, University of Wisconsin

Brigadier General Donald Armstrong, Commandant, Army Industrial College, Washington, D. C.

III

10 A. M. WEST BALLROOM

CHRISTIAN MISSIONS IN CHINA

*Joint Session of the American Historical Association and the
American Catholic Historical Association*

Chairman: Rev. Clarence J. Ryan, S. J., Marquette University

*The Catholic Viewpoint upon American Christian Missionary Effort
in China in the Twentieth Century*

*Rev. Joseph P. Ryan, M. M., The Maryknoll Fathers, Maryknoll,
New York*

*The Protestant Attitude toward American Christian Missionary
Effort in China in the Twentieth Century*

Kenneth S. Latourette, Yale University

Discussion:

Rev. George Dunne, S. J., Saint Louis University

Harley F. MacNair, University of Chicago

IV

10 A. M. NORTH ASSEMBLY

HISTORY'S FUNCTION IN A WORLD OF FREEDOM

Joint Session of the American Historical Association and the
Mississippi Valley Historical Association

Chairman: Wendell H. Stephenson, Louisiana State University

History—Key to the Magic Door

George Fort Milton, "St. Louis Post-Dispatch"

Discussion:

George F. Howe, University of Cincinnati

LUNCHEON CONFERENCES

I

12:30 P. M. NORTH BALLROOM

LATIN-AMERICAN HISTORY

Luncheon Conference of the Latin-American Group

Chairman: Samuel F. Bemis, Yale University

The Memorabilia of Augustín de Iturbide

William S. Robertson, University of Illinois

II

12:30 P. M. PRIVATE DINING-ROOM NO. 1

CORPORATION HISTORY

Joint Conference of the American Historical Association and the
American Association for State and Local History

Chairman: LeRoy R. Hafen, State Historical Society of Colorado

The Historian and the Corporation

Stanley M. Pargellis, Newberry Library

III

12:30 P. M. SOUTH BALLROOM

Silver Jubilee Luncheon of the American Catholic Historical Association

Chairman: Paul Kiniery, Loyola University, Chicago

*Special Guest: Right Reverend Monsignor Peter Guilday, The
Catholic University of America*

*Guest Speaker: Most Reverend Samuel A. Stritch, Archbishop of
Chicago*

Greetings from the American Historical Association

Guy Stanton Ford, Executive Secretary

AFTERNOON SESSIONS

I

2 P. M. WEST BALLROOM

CANADIAN-AMERICAN RELATIONS

Chairman: Hon. Joseph M. Boyer, Acting Canadian Trade Commissioner, Chicago

A United States of North America—Shadow or Substance, 1815-1915

Joe Patterson Smith, Illinois College

The Place of Canada in the English-speaking World

Donald G. Creighton, University of Toronto

Discussion:

L. Ethan Ellis, Rutgers University

Reginald G. Trotter, Queen's University

II

2 P. M. PRIVATE DINING-ROOM NO. 2

AREA STUDIES WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO THE FAR EAST

Chairman: Harley F. MacNair, University of Chicago

The Value of Area Studies for Civilian Undergraduates and Specialists

Knight Biggerstaff, Cornell University

The Place of Languages in Area Studies

George A. Kennedy, Yale University

Area Studies Confront Curricular Problems

Philip Davidson, Vanderbilt University

III

2 P. M. NORTH ASSEMBLY

LIBERALS OF THE MIDWEST

Chairman: Dwight L. Dumond, University of Michigan

William Allen White Looks at Normalcy

Walter Johnson, University of Chicago

George W. Norris—Forty Years of Battle

James E. Lawrence, "The Lincoln Star"

Discussion:

R. Carlyle Buley, Indiana University

Harvey Wish, Smith College

IV

2 P. M. PRIVATE DINING-ROOM NO. 12

RELIGIOUS LIBERTY

Joint Session of the American Historical Association and The
American Society of Church History

*Chairman: Percy V. Norwood, Seabury-Western Theological
Seminary*

Natural Religion and Religious Liberty

William W. Sweet, University of Chicago

Discussion:

Jacob C. Meyer, Western Reserve University

Ralph H. Gabriel, Yale University

V

2 P. M. ROOM NO. 20

LEXINGTON GROUP

Chairman: Paul W. Gates, Cornell University

Informal Meeting

All persons interested in Railroad History are invited to attend.

VI

3 to 4:30 P. M. (*Meet at the Main Registration Desk*)

Joint Session of the American Historical Association and the
American Association for State and Local History

Tour of the Chicago Historical Society Building

Conducted by *Herbert A. Kellar, McCormick Historical Association*

EVENING SESSION

6:30 P. M. NORTH BALLROOM

¹ DINNER OF THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION

Chairman: William C. Binkley, Vanderbilt University

The Library of Congress and the Historians

Archibald MacLeish, Library of Congress

¹ Dinner meeting canceled and transferred to a luncheon the same day.

AFFILIATED SOCIETIES AND THEIR OFFICERS

Pacific Coast Branch

President: ANDREW FISH, University of Oregon, Eugene, Ore.

Vice-President: FRANK H. GARVER, University of Southern California, Los Angeles, Calif.

Secretary-Treasurer: HARDIN CRAIG, Jr., California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, Calif.

Council:

Ex-Officio: The President, the Vice-President, and the Secretary-Treasurer.

Elected Members: JOHN W. CAUGHEY, HERMAN J. DEUTSCH, JOHN D. HICKS, ANATOLE G. MAZOUR.

Agricultural History Society

President: ARTHUR G. PETERSON, Army Industrial College, Office of the Secretary of War, Washington, D. C.

**Secretary:* CHARLES A. BURMEISTER, War Food Administration, Washington D. C.

American Association for State and Local History

President: EDWARD P. ALEXANDER, Wisconsin State Historical Society, Madison, Wis.

**Secretary:* MRS. LORETTO C. STEVENS, Box 6101, Washington 4, D. C.

American Catholic Historical Association

President: PAUL KINIERY, Loyola University, Chicago, Ill.

Secretary: REV. JOHN TRACY ELLIS, Catholic University of America, Washington, D. C.

American Military Institute

President: ROBERT G. ALBION, Princeton University, Princeton, N. J.

**Secretary:* MAJOR HUGH M. FLICK, National Archives, Washington, D. C.

American Society of Church History

President: PERCY V. NORWOOD, Seabury-Western Theological Seminary, Evanston, Ill.

Secretary: RAYMOND W. ALBRIGHT, Evangelical School of Theology, Reading, Pa.

* Indicates that these societies have a secretary-treasurer combined.

Economic History Association

President: ARTHUR H. COLE, Harvard University, Cambridge, Mass.

**Secretary:* THOMAS C. COCHRAN, New York University, New York, N. Y.

Mississippi Valley Historical Association

President: WILLIAM C. BINKLEY, Vanderbilt University, Nashville, Tenn.

**Secretary:* MRS. CLARENCE S. PAINE, Lincoln 2, Neb.

National Council for the Social Studies

President: I. JAMES QUILLEN, Stanford University, Palo Alto, Calif.

Secretary: MERRILL F. HARTSHORN, National Council for the Social Studies, 1201 Sixteenth St., N. W., Washington, D. C.

Society of American Archivists

President: MARGARET C. NORTON, Illinois State Library, Springfield, Ill.

Secretary: LESTER J. CAPPON, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, Va.

Southern Historical Association

President: WENDELL H. STEPHENSON, Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge, La.

**Secretary:* JAMES W. PATTON, North Carolina State College, Raleigh, N. C.

COMMITTEE ON LOCAL ARRANGEMENTS

Chairman: FRANKLIN D. SCOTT, Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois

Members:

RAY A. BILLINGTON

PAUL KINIERY

LELAND H. CARLSON

PAUL LIETZ

S. WILLIAM HALPERIN

STANLEY M. PARGELLIS

W. L. KAISER

BESSIE LOUISE PIERCE

COMMITTEE ON PROGRAM

Chairman: WILLIAM T. HUTCHINSON, University of Chicago, Chicago, Illinois

Members:

A. L. BURT

JAMES L. SELLERS

ALLAN B. COLE

RAYMOND P. STEARNS

PAUL KNAPLUND

S. HARRISON THOMSON

J. FRED RIPPY

PRESCOTT W. TOWNSEND

REPORT OF THE EXECUTIVE SECRETARY AND MANAGING EDITOR FOR THE YEAR 1944

At the beginning of this annual accounting of the affairs of the American Historical Association I am happy to record a small but in these times significant gain in membership. Last year we made something of holding our own with a gain of two members. This year the gain is twenty times as great, which is a more impressive notation than to say we have forty-three more members than on the corresponding date last year. Seven new life members have enrolled and sixteen have died. (For complete membership statistics see pp. 37-39.)

The Treasurer's report shows our finances are in a healthy condition. The considerable gain in receipts over last year is in part due to an effort to make all *Review* subscriptions begin with the October issue, and is thus somewhat deceptive.

We have kept, despite losses of able assistants, a competent and conscientious staff in the central office. Miss Catharine Seybold has replaced Miss Blegen as assistant editor and Miss Joan Margo carries the office responsibilities of Miss Bohning, resigned. These young women, with Miss Washington as senior to us all, carry their special responsibilities and serve as interchangeable parts when the load becomes heavy in any other sector of the office.

Your Executive Secretary was obliged to assume added responsibilities in connection with the Historical Service Board when Dean Theodore C. Blegen, the Director, returned to his university duties on September 1. A part of the salary of the Executive Secretary is charged to the Board's budget and paid directly into the Association's treasury.

As one of the current war activities of the Association, a brief report of the work of the Historical Service Board is perhaps the first matter to report. The Board has been engaged since September, 1943, in preparing pamphlets for volunteer discussion groups in the Army in this country and abroad. It has maintained a small staff in offices in the Annex to the Library of Congress and has many collaborators both in and out of Washington. The Board members have all been active in reading and criticizing manuscripts. The difficulties and exasperating delays in connection with getting out the pamphlets would make more than one chapter in the history of civilian military co-operation. For what it has done, the Board and its Director, Mr. Blegen, and the staff, Mr. Thomas K. Ford, Miss Sarah Davidson, and Mrs. Arthur J. Larsen, deserve an "E" production pennant, and each pamphlet that has been accepted and printed deserves whole rows of combat area ribbons. Mr. Blegen and I are both candidates for the Purple Heart. Speaking before complete returns are in, I should hope that by January first some eighteen pamphlets would be available to the soldiers but none to civilians, which is a matter of regret for they are of equal importance to any citizen whether in uniform or out. Almost as many more pamphlets are in various stages of preparation. In form and substance they are a tribute to the scholarship and adaptability of the authors and the editorial skill of the staff and the artists, many of them in the Army, who have designed their covers and illustrations.

Major Edward Evans has had charge in these matters of design in co-operation with the Board's staff. The pamphlets are part of the far-flung program of the Division of Information and Education of the Army, directed by Major General Frederick H. Osborn. The liaison officer between the Historical Service Board and the War Department is Major Donald W. Goodrich. No one could have been more helpful and understanding than Major Goodrich in forwarding the whole enterprise. The editions of the pamphlets, first set at thirty-five thousand copies, have been increased to printings of two hundred thousand copies. The project,

whether or not it goes on after this year, will stand as an enterprise worthy of the approbation of the Association and a credit to it in the years to come. May I record here, as the War Department has already done, a word of unstinted praise for the intelligence, tact, and energy with which its Director, Mr. Blegen, set it on its feet and saw it on its way to success.

I should like to devote the body of my report to the *Review* rather than to any broad consideration of the state of history in the nation. I can only say on the latter point that the appearance of excellent special studies and of articles, both of which are, I hope, revealed in the *Review*, is an encouraging sign for postwar historical scholarship.¹ We can be sure that the interests of that scholarship will be broader both as to areas, eras, and fields of interest than any we have known. For the present, the indicative signs are an outpouring by the half-trained of hasty and evanescent potboilers unworthy of more than a moment's attention except as fluttering leaves that indicate the way the wind of interest will blow in the coming decade. And the time ought soon to be here when a few bold spirits will undertake works of great sweep and inclusive synthesis. The present number of such major undertakings, either co-operative or singlehanded, is lamentably few. If you doubt it, try to name them.

There is a special reason for calling your attention to the *Review*. The present volume is the fiftieth and closes a half century in the life of what has become one of the leading historical periodicals of the world, under the present adverse conditions in the rest of the scholarly world, the leading periodical.

It had been my purpose to devote part of the last issue of the semicentennial volume to a formal recognition of the anniversary. It would have been appropriate to edit and bring down to date the admirable essay by Professor Jameson on the founding and first quarter century of the *Review*. That possibility became quite uncertain. The occasion should not go unnoticed. As a substitute for the original plan, I present here a brief summary of the main points of the story as told by the first editor. Those who have access to Volume XXVI of the *Review* will have no less pleasure in reading the account told in Professor Jameson's own inimitable style.

The idea of an American historical periodical that was not local or antiquarian had found expression by 1895 in several centers where men trained in Europe were giving full time to the teaching of history. Of the one hundred (circa), half of them had come back from Europe, chiefly Germany, impressed with the service rendered by the *Historische Zeitschrift*, founded in 1859, and the *Revue Historique*, founded in 1876. The *English Historical Review* was ending its first decade. In 1894, plans for an American historical periodical were formed or forming in at least three centers—Harvard, Cornell, and the University of Pennsylvania. The plans at Cornell, under the impetus given by Professor H. Morse Stephens, had gone to the stage of approval and financial support by the trustees and a rearrange-

¹ Volume XLIX of the *Review* (Oct., 1943-July, 1944) contains 853 pages, including an annual index of 27 pages, as compared with 946 pages in Vol. XLVIII. (The index was cut from 45 pages in Vol. XLVIII.) The total number of articles, notes and suggestions, and documents was 21, as compared with 16 in Vol. XLVIII. Vol. XLIX contains 219 reviews as against 306 in Vol. XLVIII and 189 notices as against 242, a total of reviews and notices of 408 as compared with 548 in Vol. XLVIII, a decrease of approximately 25 per cent. During the period from September 1, 1943, to September 1, 1944, 82 articles, notes and suggestions, and documents were submitted. Of these, 23 were accepted, 55 declined, and 4 are under consideration. Thirteen major articles were published, including the presidential address. (The report of the Executive Secretary on the progress of the Association during the past year appears in the section on "Historical News" rather than as a major article as in Vol. XLVIII.) Of these, 5 are in the field of American history, 5 in European history, 1 in medieval history, and 1 on public records in wartime. Of the notes and suggestions, 1 deals with United States historiography in the present war, another with the future of the National Archives, a third with the introductory college course in civilization; 3 are in the field of American history and 1 in European history. There is 1 documentary contribution, a letter on Major André in Germany.

ment of the duties of Professor Stephens so that he could give time to editorial duties. Professors Burr and Moses Coit Tyler, of the Cornell staff, were to be his associates. At the same time the very considerable historical staff at Harvard, headed by Professor Emerton, was making similar plans. Neither group knew of the work of the other until in sending out feelers for support and interest each opened correspondence with other scholars. Chief among these was Professor George Burton Adams of Yale University. Through his efforts and those of others who had been asked to a conference by the Harvard group and the active co-operation of Professor Stephens there was substituted a general conference in New York, April 6, 1895, called by six representative men, Tyler of Cornell, Adams of Yale, Emerton of Harvard, Judson of Chicago, McMaster of Pennsylvania, and Sloane of Princeton. Twenty-six men attended, all of whose names have a place in the history of American historiography and only one of whom is living today.¹ Here all interests were pooled and a national periodical, not one attached to an institution, was founded. A board of six editors was chosen with power to choose a managing editor. A guarantee fund of \$2,000 a year for two years was set up, and the Macmillan Company of New York became, and has remained throughout, the efficient and co-operative publishers. As one reviews the history of the origin of the *American Historical Review*, one can only hope that if any division should arise in the future in the historical profession it will be met by the same generous waiving of institutional and personal interests that marked the beginnings of what is now our official organ.

When Professor Jameson became the first editor, he was not manager of something sponsored or initiated by this Association as such. The *Review* was the property of the editors, or perhaps the guarantors, and, to an undetermined degree, of the publishers. The editorial board was self-perpetuating and almost unchanging in membership for the first twenty years. It met frequently, and, as the earlier managing editors were also officers on the salary roll of the Carnegie Institution, the Board had funds to carry an ample staff, while paying the expenses of three or four meetings a year and rewarding contributors and reviewers rather generously.

The last step was taken in 1916 when the Board of Editors transferred to the American Historical Association whatever rights of ownership it possessed. This transfer had been preceded by a somewhat turbulent and acrimonious discussion of the Constitution of the Association. The spread of the controversy was due in part to a misunderstanding by the members of the Association of the status of the *Review* and its peculiar position in the matter of management and ownership. Some members are still living who recall those stormy days. The controversy is only faintly revealed in the minutes of the Council and the Association but quite vividly set forth in the columns of the *Nation* and in fugitive circulars. Professor Jameson was too much of a gentleman to recall in his article the unpleasantness of it all and too much of a statesman to open again a rift so recently closed twenty-five years ago. So far as the *Review* was concerned, the quiet cession by the Board of its rights was in the same spirit in which what might have been rival groups and rival periodicals were combined in one organ that had no other interest but that of all history and of all those interested either professionally or as citizens in history.

The story of the founding of the *Review*, the spirit of the founders, and the ideals and standards they set up are a heritage to be treasured. The successive managing editors and the Boards of Editors have sought to preserve these ideals and standards. It is appropriate to close this brief sketch by recalling the names

¹ Frederic Bancroft—and he has died since this was written. See the April issue of the *Review* (Volume L, p. 673).

of my predecessors, chief of whom always is J. Franklin Jameson. They are: J. Franklin Jameson, 1895-1901; Andrew C. McLaughlin, 1901-1905; J. Franklin Jameson, 1905-1928; Dana C. Munro, 1928-1929; Henry E. Bourne, 1929-1936; and Robert Livingston Schuyler, 1936-1941.

Aside from the editing of the *Review* and the business affairs of the Association, the major part of the work of the Association is carried on by its committees. The war has decreased the activities of some committees, but all, under the leadership of their chairmen, have done the duties assigned them. In the case of some of the committees, such work is no small addition to the burdens the members are carrying on their own campuses and in war activities. The Association is each year a debtor to the members who serve on these committees and this year not less than in the past.

It is a matter of regret that the funds of the Association do not at present permit allotments for meetings of some of the important committees. Conducting their business by correspondence lays an additional burden upon a committee, and especially upon the chairman.

May I at the close and in lieu of the traditional committee on resolutions express on behalf of the Council and the Association their very real appreciation of the services of the chairman of the Program Committee, Professor William T. Hutchinson of the University of Chicago, and of the chairman of the Committee on Local Arrangements, Professor Franklin D. Scott of Northwestern University. Their task has been shared by others who co-operated on their committees and recognition is given them. I need only call your attention to their names, as they are printed in the program of a very successful meeting under adverse conditions.

GUY STANTON FORD, *Executive Secretary.*

ANNUAL REPORT OF THE TREASURER FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDING AUGUST 31, 1944

The financial assets of the American Historical Association on August 31, 1944, amounted to \$299,500.17. Of that sum, \$230,058.48 constitute the capital funds of the Association, which are in the custody of the Fiduciary Trust Company of New York and are managed by it under the direction of the Board of Trustees. Of that amount \$131,215.00 are credited to various special funds, leaving only \$98,843.48 the income from which is unrestricted. The cash on hand in checking and savings accounts amounts to \$69,441.69 of which sum \$57,355.92 is restricted, leaving only \$12,085.77 available for general purposes. The total of unrestricted funds, including both capital and expendable sums, amounted to \$110,929.25; and that of restricted funds amounted to \$188,570.92.

The expendable funds of the Association are administered through a general account, five special accounts, and three operating accounts. The general account includes, however, a number of special funds and grants, which are segregated from the unrestricted funds only by bookkeeping. The balances in this account are kept partly in a savings account and partly in a checking account, and transfers are made from one to the other as occasion arises. The balances in the special accounts are separately deposited, four in savings accounts and one in a checking account. The operating accounts are not administered by the Treasurer, but the funds for them are supplied from the general or special accounts and, as a rule, their receipts are transmitted to the Treasurer for deposit in the appropriate accounts.

The following tables present a condensed exhibit of the financial transactions of the Association during the year. The statement for the general fund is broken

down into unrestricted funds and the various special funds and grants, and for the unrestricted funds the items for 1942-43 are included for purposes of comparison. Statements for the special accounts and the operating accounts follow, and there are a number of summaries. It is gratifying to note that receipts exceeded disbursements for 1943-44 by \$4,088.25.

The Treasurer's accounts have been audited by F. W. Lafrentz & Co., certified public accountants, and their report is on file in the Washington office of the Association, where it may be examined by any interested member. The operating account of the Historical Service Board has also been audited by F. W. Lafrentz & Co. There has been no audit of the operating account of the Committee on Americana as activities have been suspended for the duration and no report has been submitted. The other operating accounts have been audited and certified to be correct by the members of the Association appointed by the President for that purpose, as follows: the account of the Radio Committee by Eugene N. Anderson and William L. Langer; and the account of *Social Education*, by Robert L. Schuyler and John A. Krout. Reports of these audits are also on file and available for inspection in the Washington office.

The report of the Board of Trustees for the fiscal year ending August 31, 1944, which was submitted by W. Randolph Burgess, chairman of the Board, is also on file and available for inspection in the Washington office.

SOLON J. BUCK.

GENERAL ACCOUNT

Comparative Statement for 1942-43 and 1943-44 of receipts and disbursements of unrestricted funds

Receipts:	1942-43	1943-44
Cash on hand	\$6,829.08	\$7,997.52
Annual dues	15,125.70	16,320.93
Registration fees		290.00
Interest	2,839.41	2,862.21
<i>American Historical Review</i>	5,588.30	6,676.17
Royalties	70.20	66.02
Advertising	720.00	597.50
War Dept., for special meeting of Exec. Com. of the Council		141.58
Miscellaneous	8.18	19.07
Total	31,180.87	34,971.00
Disbursements:		
General administration	13,723.19	13,766.75
Council and Council committees	117.87	180.03
Annual meetings	147.13	130.18
<i>Review</i> —copies for members	8,420.16	8,633.27
A.C.L.S.—dues	75.00	75.00
Committee on the Teaching of American History	600.00	
Pacific Coast Branch	100.00	100.00
Total	23,183.35	22,885.23
Balance	7,997.52	12,085.77
	31,180.87	34,971.00

*Statement of receipts and disbursements for 1943-44 of special funds and grants
included in the general account*

	<i>Receipts</i>	<i>Disbursements</i>
Endowment Fund:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	\$56.50	
Contributions	102.00	
Life membership dues	600.00	
Transferred for investment		\$600.00
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		158.50
	<u>758.50</u>	<u>758.50</u>
Andrew D. White Fund:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	120.16	
Interest	42.00	
Expenses (International Bibliography)		100.00
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		62.16
	<u>162.16</u>	<u>162.16</u>
George Louis Beer Prize Fund:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	486.25	
Interest	224.00	
Prize of 1943		200.00
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		510.25
	<u>710.25</u>	<u>710.25</u>
John H. Dunning Prize Fund:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	92.90	
Interest	73.50	
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		166.40
	<u>166.40</u>	<u>166.40</u>
Herbert Baxter Adams Prize Fund:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	131.53	
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		131.53
	<u>131.53</u>	<u>131.53</u>
Writings on American History Index:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	500.00	
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		500.00
	<u>500.00</u>	<u>500.00</u>
J. Franklin Jameson Fund:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	85.03	
Interest	84.70	
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		169.73
	<u>169.73</u>	<u>169.73</u>

	<i>Receipts</i>	<i>Disbursements</i>
Radio Committee:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	\$ 972.00	
Grant from National Broadcasting Company	8,798.00	
Other Receipts	15.00	
Transferred to operating account		\$ 8,800.00
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		985.00
	<u>9,785.00</u>	<u>9,785.00</u>

Historical Service Board:

Contract payment from War Department for preparation of manuscripts for discussion guides	40,000.00	
Transferred to operating account		40,000.00
	<u>40,000.00</u>	<u>40,000.00</u>

Special Accounts:

Interest	4,168.32	
Transfers		4,168.32
	<u>4,168.32</u>	<u>4,168.32</u>

*Summary statement for 1943-44 of receipts and disbursements
of funds in the general account*

	<i>Receipts</i>	<i>Disbursements</i>
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943:		
Unrestricted funds	\$7,997.52	
Special funds and grants	2,444.37	
	<u>\$10,441.89</u>	
Income:		
Unrestricted funds	26,973.48	
Special funds and grants	49,939.20	
	<u>76,912.68</u>	
Expenditures and transfers:		
Unrestricted funds	22,885.23	
Special funds and grants	49,700.00	
		<u>\$72,585.23</u>
Balances, Aug. 31, 1944:		
Unrestricted funds	12,085.77	
Special funds and grants	2,683.57	
		<u>14,769.34</u>
Total	<u>87,354.57</u>	<u>87,354.57</u>
Interest received and transferred to special accounts	<u>4,168.32</u>	<u>4,168.32</u>
Grand totals, general account	<u>91,522.89</u>	<u>91,522.89</u>

SPECIAL ACCOUNTS

Statement for 1943-44 of receipts and disbursements

	Receipts	Disbursements
Americana for College Libraries:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	\$1,557.95	
Refund on insurance policy	3.70	
Rental of adding machine	45.00	
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		\$1,606.65
	<u>1,606.65</u>	<u>1,606.65</u>
Carnegie Revolving Fund for Publications:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	8,315.60	
Interest	55.34	
Royalties	1,254.66	
Committee expenses		47.00
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		9,578.60
	<u>9,625.60</u>	<u>9,625.60</u>
Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Fund:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	22,658.63	
Interest	3,415.83	
Royalties	848.14	
Editorial and publication expenses		1,474.77
Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Prize		229.09
Membership dues for contributors		340.00
<i>Writings on American History</i>		686.35
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		24,192.39
	<u>26,922.60</u>	<u>26,922.60</u>
Littleton-Griswold Fund:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	8,065.21	
Interest	925.18	
Sales of publications	493.50	
Editorial and publication expenses		804.50
Committee expenses		29.27
Membership dues of contributor		5.00
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		8,645.12
	<u>9,483.89</u>	<u>9,483.89</u>
Social Education:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	4,138.20	
Interest	27.08	
Royalties	345.43	
Subscriptions and advertising	3,374.49	
Royalty payments to authors of report of Commission on the Social Studies		96.57
Transferred to operating account		4,133.00
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		3,655.63
	<u>7,885.20</u>	<u>7,885.20</u>

	<i>Receipts</i>	<i>Disbursements</i>
Summary of Special Accounts:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	\$44,735.59	
Income including transfers	10,788.35	
Expenditures and transfers		\$ 7,845.55
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		47,678.39
	<u>55,523.94</u>	<u>55,523.94</u>

GENERAL SUMMARY

*Summary statement for 1943-44 of funds in the general account
and the special accounts*

Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943:		
General account	\$10,441.89	
Special accounts	44,735.59	
	<u>55,177.48</u>	
Income:		
General account	76,912.68	
Special accounts	10,788.35	
	<u>87,701.03</u>	
Less duplication	345.00	
	<u>87,356.03</u>	
Expenditures and transfers:		
General account	72,585.23	
Special accounts	7,845.55	
	<u>80,430.78</u>	
Less duplication	345.00	
	<u>\$80,085.78</u>	
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944:		
General account	14,769.34	
Special accounts	47,678.39	
	<u>62,447.73</u>	
Total	<u>142,533.51</u>	<u>142,533.51</u>

OPERATING ACCOUNTS

*Statement for 1943-44 of receipts and disbursements of accounts
not handled by the treasurer*

Social Education:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	\$667.00	
Transferred from special account	4,133.00	
Salaries		\$3,888.00
Office expenses		371.66
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		540.34
	<u>4,800.00</u>	<u>4,800.00</u>

	Receipts	Disbursements
Radio Committee:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	\$ 718.00	
Transferred from general account	8,800.00	
Honoraria to historians		\$ 750.00
Fee to broadcaster		5,300.00
Historical director		1,536.70
Research assistant to director		1,235.00
Telephone and telegraph		79.90
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		616.40
	<u>9,518.00</u>	<u>9,518.00</u>
Committee on Americana for College Libraries:		
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	543.29	
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		543.29
	<u>543.29</u>	<u>543.29</u>
Historical Service Board:		
Transferred from general account	40,000.00	
Authors and rewriters		10,428.00
Illustrations		5,050.29
Staff salaries		17,528.17
Travel		667.06
Office expenses		1,032.55
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		5,293.93
	<u>40,000.00</u>	<u>40,000.00</u>

FINANCIAL ASSETS

Securities as appraised Aug. 31, 1944	\$230,058.48
Credited to—	
Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Fund	\$94,095.00
Littleton-Griswold Fund	25,000.00
Andrew D. White Fund	1,200.00
George Louis Beer Fund	6,400.00
John H. Dunning Fund	2,100.00
J. Franklin Jameson Fund	2,420.00
	<u>131,215.00</u>
Unrestricted	<u>98,843.48</u>
Cash in checking and savings accounts	69,441.69
Special accounts	47,678.39
Credited to special funds	2,683.57
Operating accounts, restricted	6,993.96
	<u>57,355.92</u>
Unrestricted	<u>12,085.77</u>

	Summary	Receipts	Disbursements
Unrestricted funds:			
Securities	\$ 98,843.48		
Cash in the custody of the Treasurer	12,085.77		
			\$110,929.25
Restricted funds:			
Securities	131,215.00		
Cash in the custody of the Treasurer	50,361.96		
Cash in operating accounts	6,993.96		
			188,570.92
Total			299,500.17

REPORT ON EXAMINATION

OCTOBER 2, 1944.

AMERICAN HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION,
Washington, D. C.

DEAR SIRs: We have made an examination of your accounts from September 1, 1943 to August 31, 1944, inclusive, and submit herewith our report including the exhibits and schedules listed in the index.

CASH RECEIPTS AND DISBURSEMENTS

A summary of the cash receipts and disbursements covering the general account, general account—special funds and grants, and special accounts, as detailed on Exhibits A, B and C, is presented as follows:

	Exhibit A, general account	Exhibit B, special funds and grants	Exhibit C, special accounts
Balance at Sept. 1, 1943.....	\$7,997.52	\$2,444.37	\$44,735.59
Receipts	26,973.48	49,939.20	10,836.46
	34,971.00	52,383.57	55,572.05
Disbursements	22,885.23	49,700.00	7,893.66
Balance at Aug. 31, 1944.....	12,085.77	2,683.57	47,678.39

Recorded cash receipts were accounted for in bank deposits and cash disbursements, according to the records, were supported by cancelled checks or withdrawals noted in the pass books and correctly approved vouchers.

The cash on deposit with the Union Trust Company to the credit of the accounts and funds listed below, amounting to \$62,447.73 at August 31, 1944 was reconciled with the bank statements and pass books and confirmed by correspondence with the depository. A summary of these accounts is as follows:

Checking account—general	\$13,681.43
Savings account—general	1,087.91
Savings account No. 5	24,192.39
Savings account No. 6	8,645.12
Savings account No. 7	3,655.63
Savings account No. 8	9,578.60
Checking account—special	1,606.65
	62,447.73

INVESTMENTS

A summary of the transactions made by the Fiduciary Trust Company of New York for your account from September 1, 1943 to August 31, 1944, inclusive, as detailed on Schedule 1 is as follows:

Cash balance at Sept. 1, 1943	\$4,962.78
Receipts	37,597.71
	<hr/>
	42,560.49
Disbursements	40,977.51
	<hr/>
Cash balance at Aug. 31, 1944	1,582.98

A summary of the purchases and sales of securities by the Fiduciary Trust Company of New York for your account from September 1, 1943 to August 31, 1944, inclusive, as detailed in Schedule 2, is as follows:

Securities on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	\$201,772.42
Purchases	30,789.38
	<hr/>
	232,561.80
Sales	28,089.77
	<hr/>
Securities on hand, Aug. 31, 1944	204,472.03

Securities in the hands of the Fiduciary Trust Company of New York at August 31, 1944 are as shown by their report to the Association without direct confirmation by us. These securities as detailed on Schedule 3, are shown at par value or cost in accordance with the records of the Association, and are summarized as follows:

Bonds	\$100,000.00
Stocks:	
Preferred	\$20,512.50
Common	83,959.53
	<hr/>
	104,472.03
	<hr/>
	204,472.03

INCOME FROM INVESTMENTS

Interest on investments was accounted for during the period under review. The total net income received from securities by the Fiduciary Trust Company of New York and transmitted to your Association during the period under review amounted to \$7,443.86 as may be noted on Schedule 1.

Respectfully submitted,

F. W. LAFRENTZ & Co.,
Certified Public Accountants,

REPORT OF THE BOARD OF TRUSTEES

NOVEMBER 28, 1944.

TO THE TREASURER OF THE AMERICAN HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION:

SIR: I submit herewith a report of the Board of Trustees of the American Historical Association for the financial year ended August 31, 1944.

The securities held in trust for the Association on that date were as follows:

Bond Account

	Amounts based on Aug. 31, 1944 quotations	Estimated annual income
U. S. government bonds:		
\$5,000 Savings bonds, reg., Defense G, 2½% due 1953..	\$5,000.00	\$125
\$4,000 Treasury bonds, 2%, due 1953.....	4,040.00	80
\$8,000 Savings bonds, reg., Defense G, 2½%, due 1954..	8,000.00	200
\$8,000 Treasury bonds, 2½%, due 1954.....	8,320.00	200
\$12,000 Savings bonds, reg., Defense G, 2½%, due 1954..	12,000.00	300
Railroad bonds:		
\$6,000 Alleghany Corp., secured conv. notes 3¼%, due 1954	6,360.00	195
\$5,000 Chicago Union Station Co., 1st mtge. E gtd. 3¾%, due 1963	5,450.00	188
Public utility bonds:		
\$9,000 American Gas & Elec. Co., deb. 3½%, due 1960..	9,630.00	315
\$10,000 American Tel. & Tel. Co., conv. deb. 3%, due 1956	12,200.00	300
\$7,000 Brooklyn Edison Co. Inc., cons. mtge. 3¼%, due 1966	7,630.00	228
Industrial bonds:		
*\$5,000 National Distillers Products Corp., conv. deb. 3½%, due 1949	5,200.00	175
\$10,000 Standard Oil Co. of N. J., deb. 2¾%, due 1953..	10,400.00	275
Foreign bonds:		
*\$2,000 Canada, Dominion of, 4th Victory Loan bonds, 3%, due 1957.....	1,800.00	60
\$10,000 Canada, Dominion of, C, 3%, due 1958.....	10,300.00	300
Preferred stocks:		
100 shares E. I. duPont de Nemours & Co., \$4.50 cum. pfd. No par. Rate \$4.50.....	12,500.00	450
100 shares U. S. Steel Corp., 7% cum. pfd. Par \$100. Rate \$7	12,900.00	700
Miscellaneous stock:		
6 shares International Match Realization Co. Ltd. V.T.C. Par £1. In liquidation.....	138.00	...
Securities value	131,868.00	
*Adjusted principal cash balance.....	191.28	
Total bond account.....	132,059.28	4,091

* Adjusted to reflect the pending purchase of \$2,000. Canada, Dominion of, 4th Victory Loan bonds, 1954-57, 3%, due 1957 at 90½%..... \$1,812.50
 And pending redemption of \$1,000 National Distillers Products Corp., conv. deb. 3½%, due 1949, called 1944 at 102..... 1,020.00

Special Account

	Amounts based on Aug. 31, 1944 quotations	Estimated annual income
Industrial common stocks:		
100 shares Best Foods, Inc. Par \$1. Rate \$1.....	\$1,900.00	\$100
50 shares United Fruit Co. No par. Rate irregular; estimated rate \$3.....	4,350.00	150
60 shares American Can Co. Par \$25. Rate irregular; estimated rate \$3.....	5,460.00	180
60 shares Liggett & Myers Tobacco Co. B. Par \$25. Rate irregular; estimated rate \$3.50.....	4,980.00	210
40 shares Philip Morris & Co. Ltd., Inc. Par \$10. Rate \$3. \$1.50 extra paid Apr. 15, 1944.....	3,760.00	180
100 shares W. T. Grant Co. Par \$10. Rate \$1.40.....	3,800.00	140
50 shares Loew's Inc. No par. Rate \$2. 50¢ extra paid June 30, 1944.....	3,200.00	200
40 shares Allied Chemical & Dye Corp. No par. Rate \$6.. 50 shares E. I. duPont de Nemours & Co. Par \$20. Rate irregular; estimated rate \$5.....	6,080.00	240
50 shares Union Carbide & Carbon Corp. No par. Rate \$3.. 100 shares Continental Oil Co. Par \$5. Rate irregular; estimated rate \$1.20.....	7,650.00	250
100 shares Standard Oil Co. of N. J. Par \$25. Rate \$1. 75¢ extra paid June 12, 1944.....	3,950.00	150
50 shares Texas Company. Par \$25. Rate \$2.....	2,800.00	120
25 shares Chrysler Corp. Par \$5. Rate irregular; esti- mated rate \$3.....	2,300.00	75
30 shares General Motors Corp. Par \$10. Rate irregular; estimated rate \$3.....	1,860.00	90
125 shares Deere & Co. No par. Rate irregular; esti- mated rate \$2.....	5,375.00	250
200 shares General Electric Co. No par. Rate irregular; estimated rate \$1.40.....	7,600.00	280
25 shares Westinghouse Elec. & Mfg. Co. Par \$50. Rate irregular; estimated rate \$4.....	2,625.00	100
30 shares Ingersoll Rand Co. No par. Rate \$6.....	3,180.00	180
100 shares Holland Furnace Co. Par \$10. Rate \$2.....	4,700.00	200
30 shares Pittsburgh Plate Glass Co. Par \$25. Rate irregular; estimated rate \$4.....	3,540.00	120
Aviation common stocks:		
100 shares Sperry Corp. Par \$1. Rate irregular; esti- mated rate \$2.....	2,800.00	200
Financial common stocks:		
10 shares Guaranty Trust Co. of N. Y. Par \$100. Rate \$12.....	3,290.00	120
50 shares Insurance Co. of No. America. Par \$10. Rate \$2.50. 50¢ extra paid Jan. 15, 1944.....	4,450.00	150
Securities value	97,400.00	...
Principal cash balance	599.20	...
Total special account	97,999.20	4,035
Total bond account	132,059.28	4,091
Grand total	230,058.48	8,126

The securities of the Association are in the custody of the Fiduciary Trust Company of New York, and are managed by it subject to the approval of the Trustees.

During the year securities at a cost price of \$27,886.50 have been purchased for the *Bond Account*, and securities at a sales price of \$22,290.00 have been sold from the *Bond Account*. Securities at a cost price of \$5,789.38 have been purchased for the *Special Account*, and securities at a sales price of \$7,181.26 have been sold from the *Special Account*. A list of these purchases and sales has been filed at the office of the Treasurer of the Association.

The holdings of the American Historical Association as of August 31, 1944, compares with its holdings as of August 31, 1943, as follows:

	Value of principal	Income		Value of principal	Income
BOND ACCOUNT			SPECIAL ACCOUNT		
Aug. 31, 1943..	\$130,340.14	\$4,013.00	Aug. 31, 1943...	\$91,729.64	\$3,745.00
Aug. 31, 1944..	132,059.28	4,091.00	Aug. 31, 1944...	97,999.20	4,035.00

As will be noted from the foregoing figures, the market value of the securities held in both accounts for the Association increased from a total of \$22,069.78 on August 31, 1943, to \$230,058.48 on August 31, 1944, an increase of 3.6 percent. This increase reflects conditions general in the securities markets for the respective dates. The income basis, figured as of the same two dates, increased from \$7,758. to \$8,126., an increase of 4.7 percent.

In accord with accepted principles, the Trustees have given instructions to the Fiduciary Trust Company to set aside out of each year's income such an amount as is applicable for that year towards the amortization of the premiums on bonds purchased above the redemption price. The charge upon income on this account for the fiscal year was \$211.64.

During the fiscal year, the Trustees received from the Association for investment \$600.

Charges made by the Fiduciary Trust Company for the management of securities amounted during the fiscal year to \$1,243.16. The brokerage charges on purchases and sales amounted to \$113.06. The Board of Trustees incurred no other expenses.

Very truly yours,

For the Board of Trustees of the American Historical Association,

W. RANDOLPH BURGESS, *Chairman.*

AMERICAN HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION

Budgets, 1944-45, 1945-46, Unrestricted Funds

[Approved by the Council, Dec. 27, 1944]

	Actual 1943-44	Original 1944-45	Revised 1944-45	1945-46
RECEIPTS				
Annual dues	\$16,320.93	\$15,000	\$15,500	\$15,000
Registration fees	290.00	250	300	300
Interest	2,862.21	2,800	2,800	2,800
Royalties	66.02	50	304	200
<i>American Historical Review:</i>				
Macmillan, editorial expenses...	2,400.00	2,400	2,400	2,400
Profits	4,276.17	2,700	2,700	2,700
From sale of periodicals .....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Advertising and exhibit space	597.50	600	600	600
Publications and miscellaneous	19.07	15	1,600	15
War Dept., for special meeting of Executive Committee of the Council	141.58	.....	.....	.....
	<u>26,973.48</u>	<u>23,815</u>	<u>26,204</u>	<u>24,015</u>
DISBURSEMENTS				
General Administration:				
Salary of Executive Secretary and Editor	5,000.00	5,000	5,000	5,000
Salary of Assistant Secretary- Treasurer	2,400.00	2,400	2,400	2,400
Salary of Editorial Assistant	2,167.29	2,100	2,067	2,100
Salary of Clerk-Stenographer ..	1,840.00	1,920	1,840	1,860
Bonding Assistant Secretary- Treasurer	25.00	25	25	25
Auditing	125.00	125	125	125
Travel	90.76	200	200	200
Office expenses (including stationery, supplies, equipment, postage, telephone, and telegraph)	1,633.81	2,500	2,500	2,500
Notes contributed to <i>Review</i>	243.50	225	250	250
Contingent, miscellaneous, and editorial assistance	241.39	900	900	900
	<u>13,766.75</u>	<u>15,395</u>	<u>15,307</u>	<u>15,360</u>
Payments to the Macmillan Company for copies of the <i>Review</i> supplied to members of the Association ..	8,633.27	9,000	9,000	9,000
Historical Activities and Other Expense:				
Pacific Coast Branch	100.00	100	100	100
Council and Council Committees ..	180.03	250	250	250
Membership committee .....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Program committees:				
New York, 1943	33.38	.....	.....	.....
Chicago, 1944	75.00	25	25	.....
1945 .....	.....	75	75	25
1946 .....	.....	.....	.....	75
Local arrangements committees ..	.....	200	200	200
Nominating committees:				
New York, 1943	21.80	.....	.....	.....
Chicago, 1944 .....	.....	50	50	.....
1945 .....	.....	25	25	50
1946 .....	.....	.....	.....	25
Dues in A. C. L. S.	75.00	75	75	75
International Bibliography of Historical Sciences	(1)	100	(1)	100
	<u>485.21</u>	<u>900</u>	<u>800</u>	<u>900</u>
Summary of Disbursements:				
General Administration	13,766.75	15,395	15,307	15,360
Macmillan for copies of <i>Review</i> to members	8,633.27	9,000	9,000	9,000
Historical activities and other expenses	485.21	900	800	900
	<u>22,885.23</u>	<u>25,295</u>	<u>25,107</u>	<u>25,260</u>

¹ A. D. White fund.

AMERICAN HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION

Balance Sheet, 1944-46, estimated

Balance on hand, Sept. 1, 1944	\$12,085.77
Receipts, 1944-45	26,204.00
Total available, 1944-45	38,289.77
Expenditures, 1944-45	25,107.00
Balance, Sept. 1, 1945	13,182.77
Receipts, 1945-46	24,015.00
Total available, 1945-46	37,197.77
Expenditures, 1945-46	25,260.00
Balance, Sept. 1, 1946	11,937.77

STATISTICS OF MEMBERSHIP

December 15, 1944

I. GENERAL

Total membership:

Individuals:

Life	432
Annual	2,782

Institutions:

25-year memberships	6
Annual	408

Total paid membership, including life members	3,628
	2,936

Delinquent:

Year ending Feb. 28, 1945	10
Year ending May 31, 1945	23
Year ending Aug. 31, 1945	364
Year ending Nov. 30, 1945	168
Over 2 years (foreign and members in military service)	127
	692

Loss:

Deaths	31
Resignations	26
Dropped	159
	216

Gain:

New members	223
Former members re-entered	36
	259
Net gain	43

Membership Dec. 15, 1943	3,585
New members and renewals	259
Deaths, resignations, etc.	216
	43

Total membership, Dec. 15, 1944	3,628
---------------------------------------	-------

¹ During the year 16 life members have died and 7 have been added. Of the 7 added 2 are new members and 5 were annual members who changed over to life membership.

II. BY REGIONS

New England: Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut	477
North Atlantic: New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland District of Columbia	1,273
South Atlantic: Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida ..	271
North Central: Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin	702
South Central: Alabama, Mississippi, Tennessee, Kentucky, West Virginia ..	112
West Central: Minnesota, Iowa, Missouri, Arkansas, Louisiana, North Dakota, South Dakota, Nebraska, Kansas, Oklahoma, Texas	367
Pacific Coast Branch: Montana, Wyoming, Colorado, New Mexico, Idaho, Utah, Nevada, Arizona, Washington, Oregon, California, Hawaii	336
Territories and Dependencies: Porto Rico, Alaska, Philippine Islands, Canal Zone	5
Other Countries	85
	3,628

III. BY STATES

	Total membership	New members and renewals 1943-44		Total membership	New members and renewals 1943-44
Alabama	20	...	New Hampshire	25	1
Alaska	2	1	New Jersey	104	8
Arizona	12	1	New Mexico	13	1
Arkansas	7	1	New York	531	47
California	218	13	North Carolina	60	4
Canal Zone .....	...	...	North Dakota	9	1
Colorado	20	...	Ohio	151	7
Connecticut	114	6	Oklahoma	17	1
Delaware	12	...	Oregon	20	2
Dist. of Col. ..	278	28	Pennsylvania ..	232	13
Florida	30	4	Philippines	2	...
Georgia	22	4	Porto Rico	1	...
Hawaii	4	...	Rhode Island ..	30	1
Idaho	2	...	South Carolina ..	18	...
Illinois	251	23	South Dakota ..	9	1
Indiana	136	6	Tennessee	38	3
Iowa	51	3	Texas	68	6
Kansas	36	3	Utah	3	...
Kentucky	28	4	Vermont	10	...
Louisiana	29	2	Virginia	141	6
Maine	19	...	Washington	34	1
Maryland	116	10	West Virginia ..	18	1
Massachusetts ..	279	16	Wisconsin	68	4
Michigan	96	9	Wyoming	3	...
Minnesota	61	3	Canada	41	4
Mississippi	8	1	Cuba	3	...
Missouri	61	6	Latin-America ..	6	2
Montana	5	...	Foreign	35	...
Nebraska	19	1			
Nevada	2	...		13,628	259

¹ This includes the 259 new members and renewals.

DEATHS REPORTED SINCE DECEMBER 15, 1943

- John M. S. Allison, New Haven, Conn. (Apr. 6, 1944).
 Thomas F. Branson, Rosemont, Penn. (Dec. 8, 1943), *life member*.
 Mrs. Louis C. Bulkley, Shreveport, La. (Sept. 14, 1944).
 Harry Victor Church, Galien, Mich. (Mar. 9, 1944), *life member*.
 Christopher B. Coleman, Indianapolis, Ind. (June 25, 1944), *life member*.
 Eugene Newton Curtis, Baltimore, Md. (Apr. 20, 1944), *life member*.

Herbert Friedenwald, Washington, D. C. (Apr. 28, 1944).
 Edward C. Gale, Minneapolis, Minn. (Sept. 12, 1943), *life member*.
 Cardinal L. Goodwin, Oakland, Calif. (June 23, 1944).
 Otis Grant Hammond, Concord, N. H. (Oct. 2, 1944).
 Leonard Clinton Helderman, Lexington, Va. (July 10, 1943).
 Adaline Jenckes, Asbury Park, N. J. (Oct. 17, 1943), *life member*.
 James Richard Jewett, Cambridge, Mass. (Mar. 31, 1943).
 William Vail Kellen, Boston, Mass. (Dec. 20, 1942), *life member*.
 Douglas Crawford McMurtrie, Evanston, Ill. (Sept. 29, 1944).
 Philip Ainsworth Means, Pomfret, Conn. (Nov. 24, 1944).
 James W. Noel, Indianapolis, Ind. (Apr. 6, 1944), *life member*.
 Charles Oscar Paullin, Washington, D. C. (Sept. 1, 1944), *life member*.
 Worthington W. Phillips, New Haven, Conn. (Mar. 27, 1944), *life member*.
 H. I. Priestley, Berkeley, Calif. (Feb. 10, 1944).
 E. M. Sait, Claremont, Calif. (Oct. 27, 1943).
 John C. Shaffer, Chicago, Ill. (Oct. 5, 1943), *life member*.
 Addison Erwin Sheldon, Lincoln, Nebr. (Nov. 24, 1943).
 Lester Burrell Shippee, Minneapolis, Minn. (Feb. 9, 1944), *life member*.
 Vangel Konstantine Sugareff, College Station, Tex. (Mar. 19, 1943).
 Frank J. Sullivan, San Francisco, Calif. (Nov. 16, 1930), *life member*.
 Wallace M. True, Tallahassee, Fla. (Nov. 17, 1944).
 Alexander James Wall, New York, N. Y. (Apr. 15, 1944), *life member*.
 Mary Wilhelmine Williams, Palo Alto, Calif. (Mar. 10, 1944), *life member*.
 Herbert D. Winters, Riderwood, Md. (June 22, 1944).
 Arthur Yager, Louisville, Ky. (, 1942), *life member*.

COMMITTEE REPORTS FOR 1944

THE NOMINATING COMMITTEE

As chairman of the Nominating Committee I have no report to make beyond the statement of the committee's nominations contained in my letter to you of October 16 [see below]. The tasks of the committee were relatively simple this year by reason of the fact that it was not necessary to name a prospective president. I found the other members of the committee most co-operative.

NOVEMBER 13, 1944

JULIUS W. PRATT, *Chairman*.

OCTOBER 16, 1944.

DEAR DR. FORD:

The following nominations we make unanimously:

For President	Carlton J. H. Hayes.
For Vice-President	Sidney B. Fay.
For Treasurer	Solon J. Buck.

For the Council (two to be chosen) we nominate:

	<i>Field</i>	<i>Institution</i>
Fletcher M. Green	American	North Carolina.
Ralph H. Lutz	European	Stanford.
Lowell J. Ragatz	European	George Washington.
Laura A. White	American	Wyoming.

For the Nominating Committee (three to be chosen) we nominate:

Willson H. Coates	European	Rochester.
Geneva Drinkwater	European	Vassar.
Edward M. Earle	American	Princeton.
Frank J. Klingberg	European	U.C.L.A.
Reginald C. McGrane	American	Cincinnati.
Max Savelle	American	Stanford.

The Committee has elected Loren C. MacKinney as Chairman for next year.

Sincerely yours,

JULIUS W. PRATT.

THE COMMITTEE ON HONORARY MEMBERS

Your Committee on Honorary Members has met in Washington, D. C., has considered the matters committed to them, and begs to present the following report:

I. General Consideration

The election of honorary members of the American Historical Association rests upon the following provision:

Constitution, Art. III (last sentence): "... Persons not resident in the United States may be elected by the Council as honorary or corresponding members, and such members shall be exempt from the payment of dues."

In the past, no corresponding members have been named, but honorary members have been elected as follows:

Leopold von Ranke	1885-1886 ¹
William Stubbs	1899-1901 ¹
Samuel Rawson Gardiner	1899-1902 ¹
Theodor Mommsen	1900-1903 ¹
James Bryce	1906-1922 ¹
Benedetto Croce	1943

It is thus seen that honorary members have been elected very rarely (six in sixty years) and that for two long periods, 1886-1899 and 1922-1943, there have been no honorary members.

The reputation and position of the American Historical Association are such as to make election to its honorary membership a distinction of consequence. This distinction should be maintained, and elections to honorary membership should always be reserved for historians of eminent achievement and distinguished service.

Your committee believes, however, that the institution of honorary membership should be given more importance by the Association, and that the Association should endeavor to maintain at all times a small list of honorary members, from ten to not more than fifteen in number, composed of foreign scholars possessing qualifications of the highest order.

Such qualifications, in the opinion of your committee, would be demonstrated by the achievement of distinction in historical writing, or by distinguished service in editorial activities or in the organization and administration of historical studies and research. Consideration should also be given to special services rendered to American historical scholars and studies.

¹ To date of death.

Your committee believes that honorary members should be elected from numerous countries, in such manner as to constitute a body representative of the historical scholarship of the world.

It is also believed that honorary members selected in the manner indicated might in many cases render exceedingly useful services to the Association and to American historians. To encourage such usefulness, your committee recommends that the executive officer of the Association, or possibly a special committee appointed for the purpose, should initiate and maintain correspondence with honorary members; should, under appropriate circumstances, encourage American historians visiting their countries to call upon them, and should facilitate visits on their part to the United States. In these ways the honorary members of the Association would come to constitute an international group interested in historical studies in the United States and disposed to cooperate with American historians. A section of the *American Historical Review* might occasionally be devoted to news of the honorary members or furnished by them.

II. Nominations of 1944

Your committee, on the basis of the foregoing considerations, begs to nominate the following foreign scholars for election to honorary membership at the present time:

George Mackinnon Wrong	Canada.
Afonso de Escagnolle Taunay	Brazil.
Domingo Amunátegui y Solar	Chile.
George Macaulay Trevelyan	England.
Albert Frederick Pollard	England.
Pierre Caron	France.
Johan Huizinga ¹	Netherlands.
Aage Friis	Denmark.
Rafael Altamira	Spain
Hu Shih	China.

III. Proposed Vote on Honorary Membership

Your committee recommends that the Council invite the Association to adopt a special vote, or by-law, or other form of instruction, respecting the election of honorary members, which might be formulated as follows:

The Council shall from time to time elect as honorary members, for life, of the American Historical Association, foreign scholars who have achieved eminence in historical writing or who have performed other distinguished services to historical scholarship.

The number of honorary members of the Association shall not exceed fifteen at any one time, except by vote of the Association.

Each honorary member shall receive a special diploma or certificate of election, together with a citation approved by the Executive Council and shall be exempt from payment of dues.

The Executive Officer of the Association shall, on behalf of the Association, maintain correspondence, at appropriate intervals, with each honorary member.

WALDO G. LELAND, *Chairman.*

NOVEMBER 24, 1944.

¹ Word received Mar. 23, 1945, of his death.

THE COMMITTEE ON THE HERBERT BAXTER ADAMS PRIZE

The committee followed various procedures in drawing up a list of books to be examined. Reviews in significant journals were studied and numerous letters were sent to publishers, especially the university presses, asking for titles. The books thus gathered together were circulated, and the results brought together for the purposes of decision. My colleagues on the committee displayed considerable energy and resolution in passing these books under review, so that their judgment was clearly based upon a real knowledge of the books.

The favorable decision of the committee finally rested on *The Russian Fur Trade, 1550-1700* by R. H. Fisher, published by the University of California Press, 1943. It was the judgment of the committee that the subject was in the field of European expansion, that it was in a field of importance and growing interest, that it met appropriate standards of scholarship, and indicated the intellectual promise of the author.

C. W. DE KIEWIET, *Chairman.*

NOVEMBER 13, 1944.

THE COMMITTEE ON THE GEORGE LOUIS BEER PRIZE

This is the report of the committee for the award of the George Louis Beer Prize. The committee was composed, during the year 1944, of Harry N. Howard, Miami University, Walter C. Langsam, Union College, and Troyer S. Anderson, State University of Iowa, chairman. During the year no manuscripts were submitted to the committee for examination. There is, therefore, no award to be made for the present year.

TROYER S. ANDERSON, *Chairman.*

NOVEMBER 21, 1944.

THE COMMITTEE ON THE ALBERT J. BEVERIDGE MEMORIAL PRIZE

As the Beveridge Memorial Prize is not awarded the present year, our committee has nothing definite to report, except that the members are giving continued thought to methods of reaching promising young scholars who may be induced to compete for the prize and to standards of evaluation by which the relative merit of books and manuscripts submitted may be most adequately determined. I am hoping that the committee may be able to consult and exchange ideas on these matters at the Chicago meeting.

EARLE D. ROSS, *Chairman.*

OCTOBER 26, 1944.

THE COMMITTEE ON THE JOHN H. DUNNING PRIZE

On behalf of the Committee on the John H. Dunning Prize, I beg to report that fifteen printed works and seven manuscripts were offered in the competition this year. This considerable number is partly the result of a generous response by departments of history to the invitation of the committee to submit the works of authors prevented by service in the armed forces, or by other cause, from submitting their own works.

The twenty-two works represent a wide spread of research activity, and a high degree of effectiveness. Three studies, mainly political in content, represent the late colonial and revolutionary period. The other nineteen fall in all the periods of national history from the late eighteenth century until very recent times. Nine

are works primarily in political history; seven are in intellectual or religious history; two in naval history; and one in economic history. The committee considers many of the entries worthy of the prize.

The committee unanimously recommends that the prize be awarded to Lieutenant Elting E. Morison, U.S.N.R., for his *Admiral Sims and the Modern American Navy* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1942).

The committee wishes also to make honorable mention of the three following works: Charles L. Mowat, *East Florida as a British Province, 1763-1784* (Berkeley and Los Angeles, 1943), which we judge the best work offered in early American history; Lieutenant Jeter A. Iseley, U.S.N.R., *Horace Greeley and the New York Tribune* (manuscript), which we judge the best in national political history; and Richard A. Hofstadter, *Social Darwinism* (Philadelphia, 1944), as the best in the history of thought. The three works are of about equal, high, general merit, and we do not distinguish among them on that basis. We think that if works of such disparate types as this year continue to be submitted for the prizes of the Association (and we hope they will), future committees also will have to think and compare along lines of types and fields of history.

CHARLES A. BARKER, *Chairman.*

NOVEMBER 13, 1944.

THE COMMITTEE ON THE PUBLICATION OF THE *Annual Report*

The three following volumes, constituting the *Annual Report* for 1942, have appeared during the past year: Volume I, containing the Association's proceedings for 1942 and a list of members as of April 1943; Volume II, containing *Letters from the Berlin Embassy . . . , 1871-1874 and 1880-1885*, edited by Paul Knaplund; Volume III, containing papers prepared for the 1942 Chicago meeting but not presented because of wartime cancellation of the meeting and not published elsewhere, edited by Stanley Pargellis.

No back volumes of any previous *Report* are outstanding; all *Reports* through 1942 have been published in their entirety.

The status of the *Annual Report* for 1943 is as follows: Volume I, containing the proceedings of the New York meeting (1943) and the proceedings of the Pacific Coast Branch for 1943, is ready for distribution. Volume II, *Writings on American History for 1939 and 1940*, edited by Grace Griffin and Dorothy Louraine, is in page proof and is being indexed.

A printing credit of \$10,620 has again become available for the new fiscal year beginning 1 July 1944. Through overobligations of \$1,252.94 on estimates on completed jobs not yet billed and on volumes still in manufacture, the current operating balance to the Association's credit at this time is \$9,367.06.

The *Annual Report* for 1944 will consist of 3 volumes as follows: Volume I, containing proceedings of the Association and of the Pacific Coast Branch for 1944 and an abstract, subject-classified bibliography of all major articles published in *The American Historical Review*, Volumes I through L, compiled by Franklin D. Scott; Volumes II and III, containing a calendar of American Fur Company papers, 1831-1849, prepared under the direction of Grace Lee Nute, together with a preface and her article on these papers, published in *The American Historical Review* for April, 1927, reproduced by the offset method from existing typed copy, and in the usual binding.

Owing to Mrs. Louraine's resignation, little more than a start has been made on *Writings on American History for 1941 and 1942*. Presumably the manuscript will

be ready by next fall, especially if Miss Griffin, who is burdened with numerous other duties, is provided assistance.

Mr. Matteson, who is compiling the cumulative index to *Writings on American History* and who had completed the letter "O" on all place and name titles through 1930 before being requested to include the 1931 through 1938 volumes as well, has done so and is now midway through "P" for the place and name titles. The entire gigantic project, including place and name titles and topical analytical titles, will, according to his estimate, "require at least another year's work after the present year. It does not seem possible that the committee can plan for publication earlier than 1946."

Since no commercial publisher for *Writings on American History* can be found in these days of paper shortage, it appears that the Association must continue publishing the same as part of the *Annual Report* for an indefinite period which will, of course, rather seriously limit the committee's publishing program.

LOWELL RAGATZ, *Chairman.*

NOVEMBER 12, 1944.

THE COMMITTEE ON THE ALBERT J. BEVERIDGE MEMORIAL FUND

The responsibilities and activities of the Committee have not changed in any essential respect since the submission of the report for 1943. The committee has continued to finance the preparation of the *Writings in American History*, but, as noted last year, has been relieved of other editorial or publishing responsibilities for this series. A report on the present status of the *Writings* will therefore presumably be presented from other sources. (See preceding report.)

The major interest of the committee has related to the monograph series. Three studies had been accepted in 1943, and were edited for publication during the current year. The first of these, Richard Hofstadter's *Social Darwinism*, was issued by the University of Pennsylvania Press during the fall. As this was the first book brought out since the Press became our publisher in the place of D. Appleton-Century, it is encouraging to note that the book is attractive in appearance, and conforms as far as possible to the earlier committee publications. It is as yet too early to report on reviews, but sales for the first weeks have been satisfactory.

The second study, Bernstein's *Origins of Inter-American Relations, 1700-1812*, has just gone to press. The third, Pomeroy's *The Territories and the United States, 1861-1890*, has been edited, and is ready to go to press whenever it can be handled by the printers. The University Press expects to bring it out some time during the coming year. Paper shortages have, of course, delayed the appearance of these last two works.

Meanwhile, a contract with the University of Chicago Press for the publication of the last of the documentary series (Easterby's *Rice Plantation Documents*) has been approved by the committee and the Executive Secretary of the Association, and this work is also in press. It may be recalled that this was the one manuscript that the University of Pennsylvania Press felt unable to take over. We were therefore fortunate in making, with the assistance of Professor Avery Craven, this arrangement, which will conclude the older series.

It will be noted that no new studies have been accepted for the monograph series, although one recently proposed has been declined by the committee. With this exception, no new manuscripts were submitted during the past year. The dearth of submissions was noted in our report for 1943, and no new factors seem to have entered the picture since that time. As was then noted, the committee made a comprehensive effort to secure professional publicity something over two years ago,

and it was not thought best to repeat this procedure too soon. It would hardly seem desirable to be placed in the position of annually soliciting manuscripts.

In view of the lack of manuscripts, it was not deemed necessary to put the Association to the expense of providing for any special meeting of the committee.

The coexistence of complaints about the difficulty of publishing monographs, and the failure to submit such studies to this committee, seems somewhat paradoxical. The war doubtless is a factor, but probably does not explain the whole situation. We would therefore suggest that the whole work of the committee be re-examined, with a view to either developing a new type of program, or to finding some more adequate means for making the present program better known. If the latter course is followed, the four monographs which will have been published by the end of the coming year (Kirby's *George Keith* appeared in 1942) will provide a respectable beginning for this series.

It may be pointed out, in passing, that an increasing interest has been manifested recently in the whole field of so-called American studies; i.e., studies in American civilization and cultural history. Other professional groups, in addition to the general historians, are interested. Should the response from the latter to the opportunities afforded by the committee continue to be inadequate, it might be worth while to make these opportunities known to the other professions noted; e.g. to those working in such fields as the history of American art, literature, science, and so on.

In any case, a general re-examination of the committee's function would seem to call for new personnel in its membership. If a change in program is to be adopted, it would be well to let a new group inaugurate it. It would, moreover, be wise to bring in new blood, and to relieve the present members from further responsibility. The present chairman has served through the last four years, and the other two members for a longer period. It is therefore recommended that a new chairman and at least one additional new member be appointed, retaining one member for another year for the sake of continuity.

The following financial statement speaks largely for itself. It will be noted that the cash on hand remains at over \$22,000, and that the year's income was larger than the disbursements—a difference of about \$1,500. This is somewhat misleading, however, since it happened that bills for the Easterby and Hofstadter volumes in press came in during the fall, after the August 31 financial statement was prepared.

Royalties on earlier publications are again relatively small, after an increase in 1943 due to special price offerings noted in the *Report* for that year. Only one—Perkins' *Northern Editorials on Secession*—brought in more than \$100. Total royalties for 1944 were about half those for 1943; but were about the same as for 1941, and much larger than those for 1942.

Should the Council proceed to re-examine the committee's program and to appoint new members, this would be an appropriate time to summarize the work of the last four years. This may be done briefly under the following headings:

- (1) All old commitments for the original documentary series were cleared up; and one final work prepared for that series is now in press.
- (2) The monograph series, planned under Professor Nichols' chairmanship, was continued. Although, as noted, only four of these studies have been published or are soon to be published, about three times that number of manuscripts were examined. War conditions were at least in part responsible for the relatively small number of works submitted.
- (3) The policy of extending authors' grants-in-aid, for the completion of accepted manuscripts, was discontinued.
- (4) Upon the refusal of the D. Appleton-Century Company to continue to act as publisher, a satisfactory contract was secured with the University of Penn-

sylvania Press. In this connection it was ascertained from the proper federal office that paper credit for earlier publications belonged to the A.H.A. rather than to Century.

- (5) In an effort to secure better professional publicity for the committee's program, individual letters were sent in 1942 to the chairmen or well-known members of history departments in some fifty colleges and universities throughout the country.
- (6) Through the assistance of Dr. Ford, considerable stocks of earlier publications were sold in 1943 by the device of setting special reduced prices on various volumes.
- (7) A procedure was adopted for speeding up the preparation and publication of the *Writings on American History*, in an effort to bring the appearance of these more nearly up to date. This involved considerable attention, at a time when it was expected that the committee would finance publication as well as editorial costs. As responsibility for publication has since been accepted by the Council, this problem is now no longer in the committee's hands. In financing Miss Griffin's work as editor, however, it has encouraged her to proceed as rapidly as possible.

In conclusion, the chairman wishes again to record the conscientious service rendered by both Professor White and Professor Pratt, and the valuable advice frequently provided by Professor Nichols, as a former chairman. He also would point out the services rendered us by Mr. Phelps Soule and Miss Ruth Keener, of the University of Pennsylvania Press. The committee, finally, wishes to express sincere appreciation of the constant cooperation of Dr. Ford, of Miss Washington, and of Miss Griffin.

Our financial statements follows.

THE ALBERT J. BEVERIDGE MEMORIAL FUND

Sept. 1, 1943 to Aug. 31, 1944

	Receipts	Disbursements
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943.....	\$22,658.63	
Interest:		
Investments	\$3,293.32	
Royalties:		
Savings account	122.51	
		3,415.83
Dumond, <i>Southern Editorials on Secession</i> ..	81.95	
Barnes-Dumond, <i>Weld-Grimke Letters</i>	78.01	
Labaree, <i>Royal Instructions to British Colonial Governors</i>	48.49	
Case, <i>French Public Opinion on the United States and Mexico</i>	63.26	
Binkley, <i>Official Correspondence of the Texan Revolution</i>	75.70	
Pargellis, <i>Military Affairs in North America, 1748-1765</i>	81.07	
Dumond, <i>Letters of James Gillespie Birney, 1831-1857</i>	91.14	
Phillips, <i>The Course of the South to Secession</i>	38.57	
Josephson, <i>Manual of Style</i>	34.08	
Kirby, <i>George Keith</i>	51.20	
Perkins, <i>Northern Editorials on Secession</i> ..	204.67	
		848.14
Editorial and publication expenses:		
Dumond, <i>Southern Editorials on Secession</i> ..	69.30	
Kirby, <i>George Keith</i>	33.28	
Easterby volume (Allston Rice Plantation Records)	1,306.98	
Bernstein volume (Origins of Inter-American Relations, 1700-1812).....	25.00	
Pomeroy volume (The Territories and the United States, 1861-1890).....	40.21	
		\$1,474.77
<i>Writings on American History</i>		686.35
Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Prize of 1943.....	200.00	
Expenses of Prize Committee.....	29.09	
		229.09
Membership dues of contributors.....		340.00
	\$26,922.60	\$2,730.21
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944.....		24,192.39
	26,922.60	26,922.60

RICHARD H. SHRYOCK, *Chairman*.

NOVEMBER 6, 1944.

THE COMMITTEE ON THE CARNEGIE REVOLVING FUND FOR PUBLICATIONS

The committee entered 1944 with two manuscripts previously accepted for publication. One of these manuscripts (*The Court of Common Pleas in 15th Century England*, by Miss Margaret Hastings) must await final revision by its author, probably until after the war. The other (*An Economic and Technological History of Steamboating on the Western Waters in the 19th Century*, by Professor Louis C. Hunter) runs to such length that the committee felt the need for additional funds. There has also been the very serious problem of finding a publisher able and willing to print the volume in the near future. Both problems have apparently been solved. There is now every reason to suppose that this volume will appear early in 1945 as a joint publication under the auspices of the American Council of Learned Societies, the Committee on Research in Economic History (Dr. Arthur H. Cole, chairman), and of this committee. The volume will be printed by the Cornell University Press.

Very few new manuscripts have been submitted to the committee during the year. In each case the author has been advised to resubmit his work after the war. An announcement should be made in the *Review*, when publication is again possible under the usual conditions, inviting authors to submit manuscripts before a fixed date. The committee, when it resumes operations, should make its selections from the widest possible choice of manuscripts, both old and new.

Four members of the committee met in New York last December and discussed the problems and policies of the committee. The general conclusion was that some notice should be printed in the *Review* each year concerning the Carnegie Revolving Fund. Such a notice might well describe the type of work which we would like to receive and might well suggest the desired length of manuscript, either in number of words or in number of printed pages. Probably a date should be fixed for receiving manuscripts in a given year. It was the feeling of the committee, however, that any statement of this kind in the *Review* should appear only after the war is over and at a time when the submission of manuscripts might be expected. A further suggestion was made that the Council should be asked to consider the whole problem of advertising in connection with our volumes, probably in relation to the other volumes published by the Association.

Our financial statement follows.

THE CARNEGIE REVOLVING FUND FOR PUBLICATIONS

Sept. 1, 1943, to Aug. 31, 1944

	Receipts	Disbursements
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	\$8,315.60	
Interest on savings account	55.34	
Royalties:		
Heidel, <i>The Day of Yahweh</i>	\$2.67	
Lonn, <i>Desertion during the Civil War</i>	16.00	
Ragatz, <i>The Fall of the Planter Class in the British Caribbean, 1763-1833</i>	34.71	
Carroll, <i>French Public Opinion and Foreign Affairs</i>	16.83	
Allyn, <i>Lords versus Commons</i>	2.66	
Shryock, <i>The Origin and Development of the State Cult of Confucius</i>	21.30	
Sanborn, <i>Origins of the Early English Maritime and Commercial Law</i>	12.78	
Bruce, <i>Virginia Iron Manufacture in the Slave Era</i>	12.00	
Swann, <i>Pan Chao: Foremost Woman Scholar in China</i>	16.00	
Dietz, <i>English Public Finance, 1558-1641</i>	4.26	
Sydnor, <i>Slavery in Mississippi</i>	20.57	
Brown, <i>The First Earl of Shaftesbury</i>	14.91	
Barnes, <i>The Antislavery Impulse</i>	20.52	
Whitaker, <i>The Mississippi Question</i>	11.22	
Bemis, <i>The Diplomacy of the American Revolution</i>	22.04	
Garrett, <i>The Estates General of 1789</i>	3.20	
Hubbart, <i>The Older Middle West</i>	28.05	
Ranck, <i>Albert Gallatin Brown</i>	5.34	
Hoon, <i>The Organization of the English Customs System</i>	4.26	
Priestley, <i>France Overseas</i>	48.06	
Horton, <i>James Kent: A Study in Conservatism</i> ..	9.35	
Chitwood, <i>John Tyler, Champion of the Old South</i>	31.95	
Stafford, <i>James VI of Scotland and the Throne of England</i>	20.00	
Jackson, <i>Free Negro Labor and Property Holding in Virginia, 1830-1860</i>	432.00	
Nute, <i>Caesars of the Wilderness</i>	543.15	
	<u>1,358.83</u>	
Less overpayment on Barnes volume.....	\$51.06	
Less charges against fund.....	48.16	
	<u>99.17</u>	
	1,254.66	
	<u>9,625.60</u>	
Committee expenses: Travel, postage, etc.....		\$47.00
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944.....		<u>9,578.60</u>
	<u>9,625.60</u>	<u>9,625.60</u>

NOVEMBER 15, 1944.

SIDNEY R. PACKARD, *Chairman*.

THE COMMITTEE ON THE LITTLETON-GRISWOLD FUND

Although the work of the committee has been greatly hampered by the war, some progress has nevertheless been made and one meeting of the committee was held.

Dr. Anne K. Gregorie has found new materials for our contemplated volume of equity cases from South Carolina, and has continued her work thereon. Dr. Susie M. Ames has likewise steadily continued work on the Virginia material. We are assured of extremely competent historical editorship for both these volumes. The last step in their preparation, which will soon confront us, will be the study of the materials by their legal editors.

Final editorial work on the Rhode Island equity materials has been begun under very promising arrangements. Dr. John T. Farrell of the College of New Rochelle, who acted most satisfactorily as historical editor of the fourth volume of our series, has agreed to perform the same duties on the Rhode Island volume, and he will be guided by Professor Zechariah Chafee, Jr., of the Law School of Harvard University, who is certainly one of the two or three leading American authorities on equity in England and in this country.

Finally, an opportunity has recently unexpectedly arisen to publish a volume of early Maryland county court records, those, namely, of Prince Georges County from 1696 through 1699. An expert transcription of these was made for the Hall of Records Commission of Maryland, but inasmuch as they plan to continue for the present the publication of records of higher courts (of which some half a dozen volumes have already appeared in the Archives of Maryland), the transcript has not been utilized. Our present plan, on the contrary, is to publish county records. Under these circumstances, the Commission (Dr. Morris L. Radoff, Archivist of Maryland, being acquainted with our program) offered us the Prince Georges transcript, with a subvention, for publication by us. This offer we have tentatively accepted. Proper acknowledgment of the Commission's editorial and financial aid will of course be made, and a small number of copies will be specially bound for distribution by the Commission in Maryland.

Since it has long been hoped that local historical societies might co-operate in the work of our committee, this precedent may prove to be one of great importance.

Our financial statement follows.

THE LITTLETON-GRISWOLD FUND

Sept. 1, 1943, to Aug. 31, 1944

	Receipts	Disbursements
Cash on hand, Sept. 1, 1943	\$8,065.21	
Interest:		
Investments	\$875.00	
Savings account	50.18	
	925.18	
Proceeds of sales of publications:		
Bond-Morris, <i>Maryland Court of Appeals</i>	9.00	
Morris, <i>Select Cases of the Mayor's Court of New York City</i>	4.50	
Towle-Andrews, <i>Records of the Vice Admiralty Court of Rhode Island</i>	9.00	
Farrell, <i>Superior Court Diary of William Samuel Johnson</i>	49.50	
Reed, <i>Burlington Court Book of West New Jersey</i>	421.50	
	493.50	
Expenses in connection with:		
Bond-Morris volume .....	.11	
Morris volume .....	.11	
Towle-Andrews volume .....	.11	
Farrell volume .....	.80	
Volume on Burlington, New Jersey, records....	803.37	
		\$804.50
Committee expenses		29.27
Membership dues of contributor		5.00
	9,483.89	838.77
Balance, Aug. 31, 1944		8,645.12
	9,483.89	9,483.89

FRANCIS S. PHILBRICK, *Chairman.*

NOVEMBER 13, 1944.

THE COMMITTEE ON GOVERNMENT PUBLICATIONS

Plans for enlarging the scope of the committee's endeavors during 1944 were vetoed by the severe paper stringency. Wartime conditions counselled temporary contraction, rather than immediate expansion, of publication programs.

While definitive action remains in abeyance, plans for the future are by no means out of mind. Indeed the present offers an opportunity to formulate policy for better results, come peace. Therefore, the committee invites members of the American Historical Association (1) to submit proposals on their particular needs in any field of government publications of special use to them, (2) to accompany their proposals with concrete suggestions as to means for implementing them effectively.

During 1944 an effort was launched to give the Territorial Papers project a more secure status; the Committee endorsed the move, receiving encouraging response. As of November 15, the Committee recommends that, if legislation for

continuance to completion of these Papers has not been enacted before the 1944 convention of the American Historical Association, that body go on record by resolution addressed to the House of Representatives, the Senate and the President, urging enactment of such legislation. (See minutes of the Business Meeting, pp. 8-9.)

JEANNETTE P. NICHOLS, *Chairman.*

NOVEMBER 15, 1944.

COMMITTEE ON THE W. P. A. ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY OF AMERICAN HISTORY

The American Historical Association's Committee on the W. P. A. Annotated Bibliography of American History was asked "to examine the present status of the material and to report to what degree it was or might be made publishable in part if not in whole."

The members met as a committee on March 12, 1943. It examined the bibliography in considerable detail, conferred with individuals who had been connected with the project, and explored and weighed proposals made with reference to it. The members of the committee individually have also investigated phases of the problems involved both before and since this meeting.

The history, nature, extent, and importance of this W. P. A. project are delineated in a mimeographed prospectus issued by the New Jersey Historical Records Survey in October, 1942. It tells or illustrates more about the project than the committee can hope to do at any time.

With reference to the nature and value of the project, the committee wishes to emphasize one point more strongly than does the preface in the New Jersey prospectus. By virtue of the method used in assembling the items, the files of the project are a vast cumulative book-review index whereas the bibliography is a selected distillation. More than three hundred periodicals and fifty reference books were systematically combed for titles and annotations or comments. For certain purposes the resulting extensive assemblage of data from reviews of books on the United States is as important as the bibliography itself. The possibility and desirability of adding paragraphs of citations of reviews not quoted in the annotations actually used with the entries might well be considered.

There is one other point on which the committee feels rather strongly. Titles appear in the bibliography because they happen to have been reviewed or listed in the periodicals and reference works searched. The result was the inclusion of considerable dead wood. The amount varies, depending on the topic, but in the case of agriculture, for example, a fairly large number of items are not history or even historical sources of value.

In this connection, a brief comment on the scope of the bibliography is pertinent. In the selection the word "history" has been interpreted so broadly that the title, Annotated Bibliography of American History, is hardly adequate. Some persons may wish for more rigid selection while others will argue for something approximating the reproduction of the pertinent parts of the *Union Catalogue* of the Library of Congress. The committee feels that the content as dictated by the basic idea underlying the project should stand.

The extent to which the bibliography is ready for printing has been considered by the committee. We found that there were a number of problems of arrangement still unsettled. As stated in the preface of the New Jersey prospectus, these are: "Shall the biographies be scattered through the subject classification or grouped by epochs? Shall the paraphrased reviews be retained as they are or recast in the form of abstracts? Shall the unannotated entries appear in the schematic classifica-

tion or be relegated to a separate list?" These problems are fairly simple as compared with those already solved. The committee considered them but made no attempt to arrive at a unity of opinion concerning them. However, merely listing them indicates that there is still work to be done on the bibliography.

In addition to these problems of arrangement, there is the question of the extent to which the bibliography is ready for publication. William Jerome Wilson, the last person to work on it, has discussed this point in the New Jersey prospectus. We found that the checking was about twenty percent complete. We considered the possibility of recommending the issuance of the bibliography as it stands together with an explanation stating that circumstances have not permitted the completion of the checking. In view of the size of this bibliography, it will probably be issued only once, and we decided, therefore, that completion of the checking was essential. We discussed this point in detail with Mr. Wilson as he had checked the items that are ready. On the basis of his experience, he was emphatic in saying that the checking should be completed.

The bibliography contains over 26,000 annotated titles, and it is estimated that a complete printed version would run to about 3,000,000 words. It may, therefore, be regarded as sizeable, and printing it in wartime would probably be impossible. Even a limited edition would take a large amount of paper. In addition, printing and proof reading under war conditions might prove impracticable.

We considered the problems involved in the completion of the checking. Here again we depended largely on Mr. Wilson's judgment and concluded that it would take at least three unusually competent people eight months or more to complete the job. We then raised the question as to where the committee, the American Historical Association, or any other sponsor could secure the trained and experienced persons needed for this work. In view of the labor situation, we were forced to conclude that the necessary personnel could not be secured during the war period and that, so far as the committee could see, the work of checking would have to be left until after the war. It should also be added that none of the members of the committee were in a position to spare time from their regular work for supervising the checking, assuming that the personnel could be secured.

We also considered the suggestion that certain parts of the bibliography should be made available in the annual report of the Agricultural History Association or otherwise. Specifically we examined the entries relating to World War I. We discounted the importance of issuing this or any other segment as an illustration of the value of the bibliography as a whole because of the imminent appearance of the New Jersey prospectus. Considering the segment on World War I as an example, we concluded that, for practical purposes, the person wishing a bibliography on this subject could locate the key items by using the volumes of *Writings on American History* and that the issuance of the segment from the Annotated Bibliography of American History would not contribute enough more to justify the effort. In addition, there was the problem of getting personnel to check the annotations of any segment selected.

The committee thinks that issuance of the bibliography would be a great service to scholarship, and it wishes, therefore, that its findings were less negative in character. We feel, however, that the personnel and printing problems cannot be met in wartime and that the completion and issuance of the bibliography must wait until the return of peace.

EVERETT E. EDWARDS, *Chairman.*

NOVEMBER 10, 1944.

REPORTS OF THE DELEGATES AND REPRESENTATIVES

REPORT OF THE DELEGATES TO THE AMERICAN COUNCIL OF LEARNED SOCIETIES

On behalf of the delegates of the American Historical Association (William S. Ferguson, Wallace Notestein) to the American Council of Learned Societies, I beg to present a report for the year 1944.

It is impossible to describe in a few words the activities of the American Council of Learned Societies. Mr. Waldo G. Leland and Mr. Mortimer Graves manage to be en rapport with many departments of the government, with the foundations, and with the universities and what is going on within them. The A. C. L. S. was established, as I understand it, to perform in Washington for the humanities the same role as that undertaken by the National Academy of Science for science. The director, Mr. Leland, is not remiss in his efforts to make the A. C. L. S. useful to the constituent societies, to the cause of the humanities, and to the government. He is constantly germinating ideas that find their outcome in committees and eventually in action.

The Committee for the Protection of the Cultural Treasures of Europe is a case in point. This committee has collected information regarding looted, damaged, and destroyed objects, monuments, and collections; has correlated activities of museum, university, and professional experts; and has formulated general principles of conservation. It is due no doubt in part to the work of this committee and in part to Mr. Leland's constructive imagination, that there is now an American Commission for the Protection and Salvage of Artistic and Historic Monuments in Europe. On that commission five members of the A. C. L. S. committee are serving. Mr. William B. Dinsmoor has been overseas, and Mr. Francis Taylor and Mr. Sumner Crosby are there now.

The collaborative history of science in America that Mr. Richard H. Shryock's committee proposes is now in the planning stage. The work is to consist of four volumes and of about 2500 pages, and pains are being taken to see that the work is more than a series of unrelated monographs, and that the work is done in an historical way. It is agreeable to hear that "trends will be stressed."

The problem of American Studies, where the results of research in American history, American literature, American folklore, and similar fields may be correlated, has received a great deal of discussion, some of it concrete and helpful. The future of international cultural relations is being carefully watched by the director who is experienced in such relations and who is alert to future possibilities.

The meetings of the A. C. L. S. and of its committees give a delegate much to think about and encourage him about the future of humanistic studies in this country. Those who take a gloomy view of the outlook for the liberal arts should find out what Mr. Leland and Mr. Graves and their associates are doing. I sometimes feel that many academic folk are not wholly aware of what is going on in the A. C. L. S. The American Historical Association should always appoint new delegates so that a wider range of historians should have a chance to learn about the A. C. L. S.

WALLACE NOTESTEIN, *Delegate.*

NOVEMBER 2, 1944.

REPORT OF THE REPRESENTATIVE IN THE AMERICAN DOCUMENTATION INSTITUTE

When Mr. T. R. Schellenberg was reappointed for one year, he was asked to make an appraisal of this Institute and advise the Council as to whether the Association should continue appointing a representative. Mr. Schellenberg reports on

the latter point that he feels that our representation at the present serves no useful purpose inasmuch as the interest of the Institute is very slight in the social sciences and the humanities. The stress of the organization is upon microphotographic reproduction of materials in the field of science. The organizations representing the humanities are largely decorative. He asks to be relieved of future duties and recommends that no successor be appointed.

REPORT OF THE REPRESENTATIVE ON THE SUPERVISORY BOARD OF THE
American Yearbook

As the official representative of the American Historical Association on the Supervisory Board of the *American Yearbook*, I wish to report in favor of continuing the connection of the Association with the *Yearbook*.

The Supervisory Board consists of representatives of forty-six learned societies of unquestioned standing in their respective fields. Withdrawal of the American Historical Association would be inappropriate as long as such closely allied groups as the American Anthropological Association, the American Antiquarian Society, the American Council of Learned Societies, the American Economic Association, the American Political Science Association, and the American Sociological Association continue to be represented by able and distinguished members. Furthermore, since Professor A. B. Hart was the founder of the *Yearbook*, withdrawal of support by the American Historical Association would amount to a repudiation of his work.

I made a suggestion at the meeting of the Board last April that the heading "Historical" of Part I of the *Yearbook* be altered to read "Political and Military History," and Mr. W. M. Schuyler, the editor, said that this would be done. The entire book is historical, and hence the placing of the title "History" at the head of just one of the seven parts gives a false impression of the historian's idea of the scope of his studies.

The *Yearbook* appears to be carefully edited and, on the whole, well written. It is a useful compendium of information that may be of considerable value to historians.

THOMAS C. COCHRAN.

NOVEMBER 6, 1944.

REPORT OF THE DELEGATES TO THE INTERNATIONAL COMMITTEE OF
HISTORICAL SCIENCES

On behalf of the delegates of the American Historical Association (Waldo G. Leland, James T. Shotwell) to the International Committee of Historical Sciences, I beg to present a report for the year 1944.

As reported last year, the single activity of the committee that was being systematically carried on during the period of the war was the editing of the *International Bibliography of Historical Sciences*. This was suspended when Monsieur Marc Jaryc, who had come to the United States for the purpose of continuing the *Bibliography*, died in the spring of 1943. Some material is on hand in the offices of the American Council of Learned Societies or remains with the editors of certain of the reporting countries, but it is still impossible to assemble it. A major problem is to continue the *Bibliography* with as few gaps as possible, and for that, it is necessary to find an editor willing and able to undertake the work. Now that communication with Paris has been partially restored it is possible to consult with Monsieur Pierre Caron, editor of the *Bibliography*, and that is being done.

I have learned that the General Secretary of the International Committee, Monsieur Michel Lhéritier of Paris, has published *Bulletin 47* of the Committee, but

I have not been able to procure a copy, although I hope that one may be secured shortly. As President of the Committee I have instructed Monsieur Lhéritier not to publish *Bulletin 48*, which I learned he contemplated doing, until it has been possible to correspond with the members of the Bureau who are accessible.

Consultations with Professor Charles K. Webster, Chairman of the British Committee, and correspondence with Mr. E. L. Woodward, Treasurer of the International Committee, have been of value in defining the immediate problems of the International Committee, but correspondence must be carried further and with other members of the Bureau before reaching useful conclusions.

Of the members of the Bureau, Mr. Nabholz (Vice-President) of Zurich is accessible, as are Mr. Woodward (Treasurer), Monsieur Lhéritier (Secretary) and Mr. Halvdan Koht (Honorary Counsellor). It is understood that Mr. Ganshof of Brussels may soon be accessible. Mr. Volpe of Italy can also be reached, if desirable. Mr. Jorga (Vice-President) of Rumania, and Mr. Handelsman, of Poland, are known to be dead. Mr. Holtzmann of Germany is inaccessible.

There are several delicate problems of a more or less personal nature that grow out of conduct and attitudes during the war that will have to be dealt with in due time. It will clearly be impossible for a long time to come to bring together scholars of some of the countries for conferences or congresses. Meanwhile, it seems best that the members of the Bureau who can consult with each other should endeavor to keep the International Committee in being and to carry on certain of its enterprises, chiefly the *Bibliography*, as an evidence of viability.

I hope that it may be possible for me to consult in person with members of the Bureau in England or Europe during the coming year. Meanwhile, the conversations that Mr. John Marshall of the Rockefeller Foundation, now in Europe, is able to have with several members of the Bureau, of which he is keeping me fully informed, will be of the greatest value in determining the most appropriate policy to follow in the near future.

WALDO G. LELAND, *Delegate*.

NOVEMBER 27, 1944.

REPORT OF THE REPRESENTATIVE ON THE NATIONAL PARKS ASSOCIATION BOARD

In compliance with your letter of October 25, I make the following report as the representative of the American Historical Association on the Board of Trustees of the National Parks Association on our activities for 1944.

At the Annual Meeting in Washington, on May 5, 1944, no matters of special historical importance were considered. The main item of business was the adoption of the following resolution, after considerable discussion:

In view of the prevailing confusion in the public mind regarding "National Park standards" and the classification of the various Reservations now administered by the National Park Service, the Board of Trustees of the National Parks Association hereby authorizes the appointment of a Special Committee to study further this problem in close cooperation with the National Park Service.

Your representative was appointed a member of this committee which held preliminary meetings in Washington on October 13 and 31. All members of the committee have been supplied with copies of the various basic statements of National Park standards and objectives that were made before the recent rapid growth and expansion into other than primeval areas and of the present organization tables of the National Park Service. Before any reclassification can be made, it will be necessary to define very clearly the types of areas that should be in a National system and the standards for each type.

As a former member of the National Park Service, I am afraid that it, like Topsy, "just grew." Of course I realize the problems of local and political pressure that have secured National recognition for areas, many of which should not be part of a National system. Whenever the work of our committee is finished and accord is reached with the National Park Service, the work will have just started for it will be necessary to conduct an educational campaign and to convince Congress of the importance of adhering to an accepted set of standards.

I have given considerable thought and study to this problem and I pass on to you some suggestions for whatever action you deem appropriate. First, I think there should be closer liaison between the American Historical Association and the historical work of the National Park Service. This would be of mutual benefit as I feel that members of the profession should have more intimate contact with historical sites and areas, which are prime source materials in themselves. National sites and areas, like the great natural areas, need clearly defined standards and our Association can be of help in setting and maintaining such standards.

As part of the program of the 1934 meeting of the Association in Washington, a luncheon conference on Rehabilitation of Historical Sites was held under the direction of our mutual friend, Dr. V. E. Chatelain, then head of the Park Service historical program. It was my pleasure to read a paper at that session and I remember with much gratification the favorable response we had. So much has happened to historical sites programs since then and so important are the problems that will confront this work in the post-war period that I think it would be very helpful to include another similar session at the meeting next year.

B. FLOYD FLICKINGER, *Representative.*

NOVEMBER 18, 1944.

REPORT OF THE EDITOR OF *Social Education*

Finances.—Economies made possible by the elimination of salary items for an assistant editor and advertising manager have been continued. An increase of \$69.56 in salaries reflects the fact that the editorial office was without a secretary during part of June and July, 1943. Office expenditures were reduced by \$9.30. No travel expenses were incurred. Taking into account taxes on salaries payable by October 31 of both years the net increase in expenditures over 1942-43 is \$60.26.

Sale of advertising netted \$2,025.49 in 1943-44, an increase of \$186.13 over the preceding year, but \$449.03 less than for 1941-42. Receipts from subscriptions (the one fifth of total subscription receipts allocated to *Social Education*) dropped from \$1,456.90 to \$1,348.80, a loss of \$108.10, representing some 270 subscribers. The drop from 1940-42 amounts to \$233.37.

The deficit met from reserves (the difference between editorial expenditures and receipts for advertising and our one fifth of subscriptions) dropped to \$885.37 from \$940.62 in 1942-43, due to increased advertising receipts; receipts from interest on the savings account and from royalties reduce the deficit by \$275.94 to a net of \$609.43, the lowest we have achieved.

Our reserves, on deposit in New York and Washington, totaled \$4,195.97 on August 31, 1944, as against \$4,805.20 a year earlier.

The budget for 1944-45 totals \$4,800, the same as for the preceding two years. It should be possible to hold expenditures at least \$400 below that figure, but the forthcoming meeting of the Executive Board in Cleveland will necessitate drawing on the travel item, which was avoided last year. The deficit is likely to increase, for receipts from advertising are again falling off; on the other hand the holding of an annual meeting should increase subscriptions somewhat.

Staff.—The editorial office continues to be staffed by the editor and a secretary, Mrs. John Berthel, whose services increasingly include those of editorial assistant. Dr. W. H. Hartley and Dr. L. B. Irwin have continued to serve as volunteer departmental editors, while Mr. M. F. Hartshorn, Executive Secretary of the National Council for the Social Studies and Business Manager of *Social Education*, continues to contribute very substantially to a third department.

As was observed in the preceding annual report, the staff is inadequate. As soon as practicable either a full-time editor, or an assistant editor in addition to a part-time editor, should be appointed. The present arrangement does not obtain adequate attention to policy, to professional contacts in the various sections of the country, in the various levels of instruction, or in the range of fields that comprise or are closely related to the social studies. In the long run, moreover, the sale of advertising should not be left to a part-time editor who cannot systematically explore prospects or call on clientele.

Executive Board.—On December 31, 1943, Erling M. Hunt, Mary G. Kelty, and Harold M. Long retired from the Executive Board, and were succeeded by W. Linwood Chase, Alain L. Locke, and Ruth Robinson. At the same time William M. Alexander, Donald R. Alter, W. Linwood Chase, John H. Haefner, Rachel M. Jarrold, Josephine Kirtley, Samuel Steinberg, and William Van Til retired from the Advisory Board and were replaced by Harry Bard, Sidney Barnett, Ralph W. Cordier, Philo M. Dunsmore, Mildred Ellis, Robert Ellwood, Harry Johnson, and Clara Strickland.

Magazine content.—During the year, 59 articles were published. No clear-cut classifications are possible, but it may be noted that more were concerned with American history than any other subject field. One concerned Latin America; one (in addition to several on international relations), world history; two, the Far East; six, geography; three, the Negro and race relations; four, community study; two, government; four, economics or economic problems; and three, testing or evaluation. Overlapping earlier classifications were about twelve articles concerned with aspects of the war and about the same number concerned with the prospective peace; in both categories considerable attention was given to historical backgrounds. Two summaries of doctoral dissertations were published. An approximately equal distribution was maintained among articles dealing with subject matter, with the curriculum and curricular emphasis or revision, and with methods or procedures.

No articles were concerned with the primary grades. One concerned the intermediate grades; three, the junior high school grades; two, the junior and senior high school grades; fourteen, the senior high school years; eight, the range from elementary through high school years; five, the high school and junior college levels; two, teachers college programs; and two, the college level. The elementary and junior high school levels were still under-represented.

Direct solicitation has brought some increase in the number of history articles submitted, but during the past year both American and European (or world) history, and especially the earlier periods in each, have been neglected.

Comment, criticism, and suggestion.—During the year the members of the Advisory Board and some others were invited to send in comment, criticisms, and suggestions relating to editorial policy and the content of *Social Education*. Sixteen individuals (about 50 per cent of those invited) responded.

Acknowledgments.—The editor is grateful to those who sent in criticisms and suggestions, some of which represented conferences with other teachers and subscribers.

We are much indebted to Dr. Hartley and Dr. Irwin for the able conducting of their departments.

FINANCIAL REPORT FOR *Social Education* (EDITORIAL OFFICE)

Sept. 1, 1943 to Aug. 31, 1944

Receipts:

Balance on deposit, September 1, 1943	\$667.00
A.H.A. quarterly payment, October 4	1,200.00
A.H.A. quarterly payment, December 10	1,200.00
A.H.A. quarterly payment, March 15	533.00
A.H.A. quarterly payment, June 10	1,200.00
Total	\$4,800.00

Expenditures:

Balance, tax on July–August 1943 salaries	\$78.40
Salaries (Editor, Secretary) ¹	3,809.60
Office expenditures (Telephone, telegraph, postage, supplies and equipment, copyright fees, proof charges) ...	371.66
Travel (Editor, Executive Board)	0.00
Total expenditures ²	4,259.66
Balance in checking account, August 31, 1944 ³	540.34

FINANCIAL MEMORANDUM FOR *Social Education*

Sept. 1, 1943 to Aug. 31, 1944

	Expended	Budgeted	Saved
Expenditures:			
Editorial Staff:			
Editor	\$2,500.00	\$2,500.00	
Secretary	1,400.00	1,400.00	
Office assistance		100.00	\$100.00
Office expenditures	371.66	600.00	228.34
Travel (Editor, Executive Board)		200.00	200.00
	4,271.66	4,800.00	
Net saving under budget			528.34
Reconciliation with Financial Report: ¹			
Salary tax payable to Collector of Internal Revenue for July–August, 1943		\$78.40	
Salary tax payable to Collector of Internal Revenue for July–August, 1944		90.40	
			12.00
Actual balance in checking account, Sept. 1, 1944			540.34

¹ Excluding \$90.40 payable Oct. 31, 1944, to the Collector of Internal Revenue.² Excluding \$90.40 payable Oct. 31, 1944, to the Collector of Internal Revenue but including \$78.40 paid Oct. 28, 1943, on salaries for July–August 1943.³ Including \$90.40 payable Oct. 31, 1944 to the Collector of Internal Revenue on salaries for July–August 1944.

	<i>Actual</i>	<i>Estimated</i>
Income:		
Sale of advertising	\$2,025.69	\$2,000.00
One fifth of subscriptions	1,348.80	1,400.00
	<u>3,374.49</u>	<u>3,400.00</u>
Deficit met from reserves	885.17	1,200.00
Reserves:		
Cash on hand in New York, Sept. 1, 1943		667.00
Cash on hand in Washington, Sept. 1, 1943		4,138.20
Interest on savings account		27.08
Receipts, one fifth subscriptions and advertising		3,374.49
Net from royalties, <i>AHA Report</i>		248.86
		<u>8,455.63</u>
Less expenditures, editorial office		4,259.66
		<u>4,195.97</u>
Balance, Sept. 1, 1944		
Balance in New York	\$540.34	
Balance in Washington (AHA Treasury)	3,655.63	
	<u>\$4,195.97</u>	
Net reduction of reserves		609.23

ERLING W. HUNT, *Editor*.

REPORT OF THE DELEGATES TO THE SOCIAL SCIENCE RESEARCH COUNCIL

On behalf of the delegates of the American Historical Association to the Social Science Research Council (Roy F. Nichols, Shepard E. Clough, Merle Curti), I beg to present a report for the year 1944.

The activities of the Social Science Research Council during the past year have been of particular interest to historians.

The work of the committee on the guide to local history has concluded its labors by publishing a manual *Local History* by Donald D. Parker, revised and edited by Bertha E. Josephson. This book is designed to stimulate more work of value to social science in general in this basic field.

The committee on appraisal has been exploring the use of the personal document in various disciplines and is publishing a series of reports. Louis Gottschalk was commissioned to prepare one on "The Use of the Personal Document in History" which is now in proof.

The committee on the control of social data working through Lester J. Cappon has been active in arousing interest and cooperation among the various state governments, archives and libraries in collecting and preserving an adequate record of state participation in the war.

The committee on economic history has continued its activities under difficulties caused by war demands upon manpower. Its program is emphasizing work on the role of government in American economic development, studies of American politico-economic thought in the 1790's and of economic and business legislation in specific states prior to the Civil War.

The committee on war studies has been successful in interesting a number of scholars from the various disciplines in pilot studies which are designed to start

scholarly interest immediately in the problems of American behavior in time of war. The plans of the committee look forward to promoting a continuing interest which will provide the monographic studies necessary for the future historians of the war.

The committee on historiography has been considering fundamental problems of historical methodology and means to raise the level of historical thinking and to improve the quality of historical research. It hopes to have its report ready early in the year.

ROY F. NICHOLS, *Delegate.*

NOVEMBER 14, 1944.

REPORT OF THE SECRETARY-TREASURER OF THE PACIFIC COAST BRANCH
OF THE AMERICAN HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION FOR 1944

Because of wartime restrictions, the officers and other members of the Council voted to hold no meeting of the Pacific Coast Branch of the American Historical Association this year. It was decided, however, to call a **business meeting of the Branch** for January 20, 1945, in order to choose necessary officers and to transact other business. The meeting was held at the California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, and was attended by about ninety persons. A nominating committee, appointed by President Andrew Fish, consisted of Professors Reginald F. Arragon of Reed College, William H. Ellison of Santa Barbara College, University of California, and Waldemar Westergaard of the University of California at Los Angeles.

In the absence of President Fish, Vice-President Garver presided at the business meeting. Professor Ellison presented the following nominations, which were unanimously approved:

Board of Editors of the Pacific Historical Review (3-year terms, ending with 1947).—Le Roy R. Hafen, State Museum, Denver, Colorado; Harold J. Noble, University of Oregon.

Committee on Program, 1945.—Charles A. Barker, Stanford University, *Chairman*; Glenn S. Dumke, Occidental College; Charles M. Gates, University of Washington; Engel Sluiter, University of California.

Committees on Awards.—*American History*: L. H. Creer, University of Utah, *Chairman*; Dan E. Clark, University of Oregon; Richard W. Van Alstyne, Chico State College. *European History*: John W. Olmsted, University of California at Los Angeles, *Chairman*; Carl C. Eckhardt, University of Colorado; Francis H. Herrick, Mills College. *Pacific History*: Harold J. Noble, University of Oregon, *Chairman*; Harold W. Bradley, Stanford University; Robert G. Cleland, Huntington Library.

It was moved and unanimously carried that the present officers and other members of the Council should be retained in office during the coming year.

Reports on the progress and status of the *Pacific Historical Review* were made by Professors Louis Knott Koontz, Managing Editor, and John W. Caughey, Associate Editor; the report of Mr. Samuel T. Farquhar, Business Manager, was read by Professor Koontz. These reports are printed separately in the *Pacific Historical Review*.

The chairmen of the Committees on Awards having reported that they had no recommendations, no awards were made this year.

Professor Bradley called attention to the need of a Committee on Resolutions to commemorate a number of valued members of the Pacific Coast Branch who have

died during the war years. It was moved and unanimously carried that the President should appoint such a committee. The resolutions of this committee will appear in an early number of the *Pacific Historical Review*.

It is hoped that a full meeting of the Pacific Coast Branch can be held at the end of 1945, but at the present time the prospects for such a meeting are not bright. The membership of the Branch is now 329, including 37 libraries.

A meeting of historians was held on the same day and at the same place as the business session. This meeting was sponsored by the History Guild, an informal association of southern California historians. A program of papers was arranged by a committee consisting of Professors Glenn Dumke of Occidental College, chairman, Francis J. Bowman of the University of Southern California, Harold W. Bradley of Stanford University, W. Henry Cooke of Claremont Colleges, and the editors of the *Pacific Historical Review*.

In the morning there were two sessions running concurrently and devoted respectively to the History of the United States and to American International Relations. At the first of these, of which Professor Harold W. Bradley of Stanford University was chairman, the following papers were read: "Christopher Gist and the Westward Movement," by Kenneth P. Bailey of Oceanside-Carlsbad Junior College; "The Adoption of the Federal Bill of Rights," by Frank H. Garver of the University of Southern California; "Backgrounds of the Communistic Enthusiasm of the 1840's in the United States," by Arthur E. Bestor, Jr. of Stanford University.

The second morning session, presided over by Professor J. E. Wallace Sterling of the California Institute of Technology, consisted of the following papers: "Thomas Jefferson and the Tripolitan War," by Louis B. Wright of the Huntington Library; "Bolivar and Spanish-American Cooperation," by Harold A. Bierck of the University of California at Los Angeles; "American Non-Recognition and Recognition of Obregon," by Donald D. Johnson of the University of Southern California.

In the afternoon there were also two sessions, on the History of the Far West and on the History of Europe. Professor John W. Caughey of the University of California at Los Angeles was the chairman of the first of these, at which the following papers were presented: "New England Ice around the Horn," by Richard O. Cummings of the University of California at Los Angeles; "California's Early Mineral Industry," by Robert G. Raymer of the University of Redlands; "John Damon and the Frazer River Rush," by Raymond E. Lindgren of Occidental College; "Whittier, California: A Boom Town of the Eighties as Reflected in its First Newspapers," by Harry W. Nerhood of Whittier College.

The second afternoon session, of which Professor Waldemar Westergaard of the University of California at Los Angeles was chairman, contained the following papers: "The Duke of Alba, Reconsidered," by Walther Kirchner of the University of California at Los Angeles; "Calvinism and the Rise of Capitalism," by Albert Hyma of the University of Redlands; "Ned Ward's Wooden World Dissected," by Ruth Bourne of The Bishop's School; "J. G. Hamann as a Spokesman of the Middle Class," by Philip Merlan of the University of Redlands and Scripps College.

Financial Statement, 1944

Balance, January 2, 1944		\$162.06
Income:		
American Historical Association	\$100.00	
Sale of <i>Proceedings</i>	9.50	
Interest .....	.68	
	<hr/>	
	110.18	110.18
		<hr/>
		272.24
Expense:		
Printing	9.23	
Clerical assistance	14.25	
Postage	15.07	
Business Meeting, Jan. 8, 1944	2.77	
Purchase of 1927 <i>Proceedings</i>	2.00	
	<hr/>	
	43.32	43.32
Balance, January 2, 1945		228.92
		<hr/>
		272.24

HARDIN CRAIG JR., *Secretary-Treasurer.*

**MINUTES OF THE MEETING OF THE CONFERENCE ON LATIN
AMERICAN HISTORY OF THE AMERICAN HISTORICAL
ASSOCIATION HELD IN CHICAGO, DECEMBER 28-29, 1944**

The first session of the Conference on Latin American History held in connection with the 1944 annual meeting of the American Historical Association, took place on the afternoon of December 28, J. Fred Rippy presiding. The papers were as follows: William H. Gray, "Steamboat Transportation on the Orinoco," George Wythe, "The Rise of the Factory in Latin America," Constantine E. McGuire, "Monetary Theory and Policy in Ibero-America Prior to the Twentieth Century."

The luncheon conference convened at 12:30 P.M. on December 29, the Chairman of the Conference, Samuel F. Bemis, presiding. William S. Robertson read a distinguished paper entitled "The Memorabilia of Agustín de Iturbide." Thereafter the business meeting was called to order by the Chairman, who asked Philip W. Powell to act as temporary secretary, in the place of the Secretary, Vera Brown Holmes, whose resignation was read to the group by Mr. Bemis. A nominating committee consisting of Arthur S. Aiton, William B. Greenlee and William H. Gray, was named by the Chairman to put names before the meeting for officers for 1945.

Manoel S. Cardozo made a motion that a letter of appreciation and congratulations for outstanding achievement be sent to John Tate Lanning for his work as managing editor of the *Hispanic American Historical Review*. He also called to the attention of the meeting the recent establishment of the historical review, *The Americas*, under the auspices of the Academy of American Franciscan History.

J. Fred Rippy brought up the matter of plans for future conferences. He offered a recommendation that the Chairman of the Conference on Latin American History and the Committee work in closer liaison in the preparation of future programs and that the Constitution be amended to facilitate this procedure. The motion was discussed at length and it was decided, by ballot, that such an amendment should be adopted.

Mr. Aiton presented the recommendations of the nominating committee for officers for the year as follows: A. Curtis Wilgus, Chairman, J. Fred Rippy and Dana G. Munro, Committee members, Ruth Lapham Butler, Secretary and Treasurer. There being no further nominations the Secretary was instructed by the Chairman to cast a unanimous ballot for the election of the officers named.

A motion of appreciation to the Chairman for his successful arrangement of the programs this year was unanimously passed. The meeting adjourned at 2 P.M.

PHILIP W. POWELL, *Secretary, pro tem.*

PART II

GUIDE TO THE AMERICAN HISTORICAL REVIEW
1895-1945

A SUBJECT-CLASSIFIED EXPLANATORY
BIBLIOGRAPHY OF THE ARTICLES, NOTES AND
SUGGESTIONS, AND DOCUMENTS

EDITED BY

FRANKLIN D. SCOTT AND ELAINE TEIGLER
Northwestern University

WITH A FOREWORD
BY
GUY STANTON FORD

FOREWORD

The *American Historical Review* could have no more appropriate and welcome recognition of its fiftieth birthday than is paid it in the following pages. Professor Scott some years ago conceived the plan of making a digest of all major contributions to the *Review* and it has come about that he and his assistants, notably Miss Teigler, are able to place in the editor's hands a finished manuscript that covers volumes one to fifty inclusive. Their labors are a gift and a service to all historical scholars and on their behalf I desire to make due acknowledgment. What they have done in indicating the character and content of all articles and documents will save their colleagues much time now and in the future. As the annual and consolidated indexes to the contents of the *Review* never did more in the case of articles than list author and title, this volume is an indispensable supplement to the indexes.

Earlier in this *Report* (pp. 22-24) I have told briefly the story of the founding of the *Review*. That account makes it clear that it was the first purpose of the founders of the *Review* to set up a journal that was not the organ of any university, any region or any school of thought. It was to be representative of the best historical scholarship of the nation in all fields and periods. They thus gave it even more than a national scope in subject matter and even in recruiting contributors. Despite increasing division and subdivision in the areas and emphases of historical knowledge in the last half century, the over-all, the inclusive concept has survived. The welcome creation of special historical journals for different areas and fields has not changed the *Review's* eclecticism but rather made it more worthwhile. A glance at the titles of the thirteen main divisions of the *Guide* and the almost ninety subdivisions is, I think, a sufficient gloss on the above comments and a confirmation of the last one.

When the *Review* was about to be started the Board of Editors sent out a valiant and hopeful circular setting forth "three criteria for contributions to the *Review*." They were "that they shall be fresh and original in treatment; that they shall be the result of accurate scholarship; and that they shall have distinct literary merit. Articles which fulfill these conditions will be welcomed on any field of history." I doubt if any of the successive editors to whom the criteria have become a prayer would make any very sweeping claims that articles here calendared have always measured up to the standards set in 1895. However, that is a matter dependent not on

editors but on contributors. It is they, whether as writers of body articles or reviews, that establish the quality of the *Review*. And I am sure all my predecessors would join me in stoutly maintaining that measured absolutely, sound standards have been maintained by our colleagues, and measured relatively against comparable journals, high standards indeed.

To the student of American historiography, this *Guide* will furnish material for many an inquiry and excursion. He too, like his colleague who wants to know who wrote an article about what, will count Professor Scott and Miss Teigler as benefactors.

GUY STANTON FORD, *Managing Editor,*
American Historical Review.

PREFATORY NOTE

The purpose of this *Guide* is to make more accessible the wealth of material published during the last fifty years in the *American Historical Review*. The grouping of titles by subject is intended to facilitate discovery of articles related to special fields of interest, and a more general use of these articles than does the detailed *Index*. Arrangement of articles within the section on Historiography is chronological by date of publication; arrangement within the other sections is roughly chronological by content, with some modifications in order to keep together closely related items. The abstracts are intended to guide readers to the articles which they wish to consult, not to compress the entire content of the articles. The index to the *Guide*, arranged by authors, with references to the numbers of their contributions, will, I hope, supply the one additional clue needed to locate any given article.

Attention should be called to the attempt at parallelism in the organization of the sections, and also to the essential difference in the organization of the European and the American divisions. Topical subdivision for each European country would have created sections too minute to be useful; it is hoped that the subject cross reference sections at the end will accomplish the same object.

The subject classification was begun many years ago at Simpson College, and has been continued and expanded into abstract form through succeeding years at Harvard, Superior State Teachers College, and Northwestern University. Financial aid has come from the FERA, the NYA, and the Graduate School of Northwestern University. Many individuals have done one or more of the abstracts, especially members of recent classes in historical bibliography and criticism. This will explain, and I hope excuse, the almost unavoidable lack of complete uniformity in the preparation of the abstracts. Elaine Teigler, at present fellow in history at Northwestern, has written many and rechecked all of the abstracts.

F. D. S.

ROSTER OF EDITORS
OF THE
AMERICAN HISTORICAL REVIEW

J. FRANKLIN JAMESON
(1895-1901)

ANDREW MCLAUGHLIN
(1901-1905)

J. FRANKLIN JAMESON
(1905-1928)

DANA C. MUNRO
(1928-1929)

HENRY E. BOURNE
(1929-1936)

ROBERT L. SCHUYLER
(1936-1941)

GUY STANTON FORD
(1941-)

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

DEPARTMENT OF THE HISTORY OF ARTS

RECEIVED

1911

FROM THE

LIBRARY

OF THE

UNIVERSITY

OF CHICAGO

1911

FROM THE

LIBRARY

OF THE

UNIVERSITY

OF CHICAGO

1911

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
I. HISTORIOGRAPHY	77
A. The History of Historical Writing	77
B. The Interpretation and Function of History	82
C. Archives; Publication of Historical Material	88
D. Fields for Research	91
E. Teaching and Study of History	94
F. Historical Associations and Activities	96
G. History and Allied Disciplines	96
II. HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION MEETINGS	98
A. Meetings of the American Historical Association	98
B. International Historical Meetings	107
III. EUROPEAN HISTORY (INCLUDING ALSO THE NEAR EAST)	108
A. Ancient History	108
1. Miscellaneous and General	108
2. Greece	111
3. Rome	113
B. Medieval History (<i>ca.</i> 600- <i>ca.</i> 1400)	115
1. England	115
2. France	122
3. Germany	123
4. Southern Europe	124
5. Eastern and Northern Europe	126
6. Byzantium and the Near East	126
7. General and Cultural	128
C. Early Modern Europe (<i>ca.</i> 1400-1789)	132
1. England	132
2. France	144
3. Germany	147
4. Southern Europe	149
5. Eastern and Northern Europe; Netherlands	153
6. Discovery, Colonization, Diplomacy	153
7. General and Cultural	160
D. Modern Europe (1789-1945)	162
1. Great Britain	162
2. France	166

	Page
3. Germany	171
4. Southern Europe; Balkans; Near East	172
5. Eastern and Northern Europe	174
6. International Relations; Imperialism	175
7. General; History of Ideas	184
IV. HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES	186
A. General and Interpretative History	186
1. General	186
2. Interpretation of American History	187
3. Intellectual, Cultural, Religious History	188
B. Colonial Period (to 1776)	191
1. General and Political History	191
2. Political Institutions (Legal, Constitutional, and Institutional History)	192
3. Diplomatic History	195
4. Military and Naval History	196
5. Social and Economic History	196
6. Sectional History	200
a. The South	200
b. The East and Middle Atlantic	201
c. The West	202
7. Intellectual, Cultural, Religious History	203
C. Revolutionary and Early National Period (1776-ca. 1800)	205
1. General and Political History	205
2. Political Institutions (Legal, Constitutional, and Institutional History)	209
3. Diplomatic History	214
4. Military and Naval History	217
5. Social and Economic History	220
6. Sectional History	220
a. The South	220
b. The East and Middle Atlantic	222
c. The West	222
7. Intellectual, Cultural, Religious History	224
D. Expanding and Building the Nation (ca. 1800-1865)	224
1. General and Political History	224
2. Political Institutions (Legal, Constitutional, and Institutional History)	231
3. Diplomatic History	236
4. Military and Naval History	240
5. Social and Economic History	243
6. Sectional History	249
a. The South	249
b. The East and Middle Atlantic	254
c. The West	255
7. Intellectual, Cultural, Religious History	258

	Page
E. The United States since 1865	259
1. General and Political History	259
2. Political Institutions (Legal, Constitutional, and Institutional History)	261
3. Diplomatic History	262
4. Military and Naval History	264
5. Social and Economic History	264
6. Sectional History	266
a. The South	267
b. The West	266
7. Intellectual, Cultural, Religious History	267
8. Expansion Overseas	267
V. THE FAR EAST	268
VI. HISPANIC AMERICA	270
VII. MISCELLANEOUS	275
*VIII. LEGAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE HISTORY	276
IX. ECONOMIC HISTORY	279
X. RELIGIOUS AND CHURCH HISTORY	281
XI. PRESS AND PUBLIC OPINION	283
XII. MILITARY HISTORY	284
XIII. AFRICA	285
INDEX	286

* Sections VIII to XIII are for cross reference only.

181	...
182	...
183	...
184	...
185	...
186	...
187	...
188	...
189	...
190	...
191	...
192	...
193	...
194	...
195	...
196	...
197	...
198	...
199	...
200	...
201	...
202	...
203	...
204	...
205	...
206	...
207	...
208	...
209	...
210	...
211	...
212	...
213	...
214	...
215	...
216	...
217	...
218	...
219	...
220	...
221	...
222	...
223	...
224	...
225	...
226	...
227	...
228	...
229	...
230	...
231	...
232	...
233	...
234	...
235	...
236	...
237	...
238	...
239	...
240	...
241	...
242	...
243	...
244	...
245	...
246	...
247	...
248	...
249	...
250	...
251	...
252	...
253	...
254	...
255	...
256	...
257	...
258	...
259	...
260	...
261	...
262	...
263	...
264	...
265	...
266	...
267	...
268	...
269	...
270	...
271	...
272	...
273	...
274	...
275	...
276	...
277	...
278	...
279	...
280	...
281	...
282	...
283	...
284	...
285	...
286	...
287	...
288	...
289	...
290	...
291	...
292	...
293	...
294	...
295	...
296	...
297	...
298	...
299	...
300	...

GUIDE TO THE AMERICAN HISTORICAL REVIEW 1895-1945

I. HISTORIOGRAPHY

A. The History of Historical Writing

- 1 Channing, Edward, "Justin Winsor," III, January 1898, 197-202.

This laudatory eulogy on Justin Winsor, who died in 1897, is concerned with his great contributions to American history in the fields of cartography and bibliography, and his traits of personality. "In him American history lost its foremost student, America lost its foremost librarian . . ."

- 2 Dow, Earle W., "Features of the New History: Apropos of Lamprecht's *Deutsche Geschichte*," III, April 1898, 431-448.

In the field of German history, Lamprecht, in the *Deutsche Geschichte*, aimed to depict the mutual influence of "material and spiritual" forces of development and to explain the uniform foundation for and the steps of progress in the development of the material and spiritual factors of civilization. The history considered all of the activities of man as a social being. The past was described from a rational evolutionary point of view. Lamprecht recognized in historical life certain natural, individual, and social-psychic factors whose characteristics, transformations and relationships formed the civilization of any given time.

- 3 Libby, Orin G., "Ramsay as a Plagiarist," VII, July 1902, 697-703.

Ramsay has been rejected as a contemporary authority on the period of the American Revolution. Comparison of Ramsay's *History of the American Revolution* (London, 1793), Gordon's *The History of the Rise, Progress, and Establishment of the Independence of the United States of America* (London, 1788), and portions of the *Annual Register*, demonstrate that Ramsay plagiarized portions of the history from either Gordon's work or the *Annual Register*.

- 4 Robinson, James Harvey, "The Study of the Lutheran Revolt," VIII, January 1903, 205-216.

Emphasis on the secular aspects of the Lutheran revolt, the development of the law of historical continuity, and the introduction of new editions of Luther's works have contributed to a richer understanding of the period. Apparent deficiencies in the conception of the Reformation, in Mr. Robinson's opinion, were being remedied by historians in the late nineteenth century. Previous study, chiefly by theologians, had tended to emphasize subjects which few were able to treat in a fair-minded way.

- 5 Robinson, James Harvey, "Recent Tendencies in the Study of the French Revolution," XI, April 1906, 529-547.

The tendency to publish source material for the study of the French Revolution characterized much of the historical activity described by

Mr. Robinson. A commission had been appointed in 1904 by the French government to publish materials dealing with the economic conditions in France during 1789 as revealed in the cahiers of the parishes, the guilds, in an inventory of church possessions, in changes of agriculture and industry. History of the Revolution was treated from the economic, religious, and social point of view. Monographs dealing with the theater, the press, the Fourteenth of July, the Tenth of August, were prevalent. Social history was emphasized; Bruneau's *Les Débuts de la Révolution dans les Départements du Cher et de l'Indre, 1789-1791* (1902) is cited as an example. Present studies tend to consider broader aspects of the Revolution. Sorel's *L'Europe et la Révolution Française* combines the internal history of France with a discussion of the influences of the revolutionary movement throughout Europe.

- 6 Stephens, H. Morse, "Nationality and History," XXI, January 1916, 225-236.

In this presidential address read to the American Historical Association meeting at Washington, 1915, Professor Stephens presents an account of nationalist historians in the nineteenth century and their role in promoting the idea and consciousness of nationality. Since each generation writes its own history of the past and displays the point of view of the period in which it lives, the nineteenth century historian, influenced by the spirit of his age—nationalism—yielded to that spirit and wrote from that point of view.

- 7 Becker, Carl, "The Education of Henry Adams," XXIV, April 1919, 422-434.

Carl Becker reviews *The Education of Henry Adams: an Autobiography* not as a study in the philosophy of history but as a tragic record of defeat of fine aspirations and ambitions. The chief question presented in the autobiography when viewed as a work of self-revelation is: why did Henry Adams look upon his life as a failure? To answer this question, Carl Becker discusses what Adams believed to be the object of education.

- 8 Guillard, Antoine, "German Historical Publications, 1914-1920," XXV, July 1920, 640-659.

Professor Guillard's chronological survey of German historical activity during 1914-1920 is a critical evaluation of the works published on ancient history, the period of the Renaissance, and the Reformation, and such contemporary political problems as the problem of imperialism, the problem of nationality, the problem of "Mitteleuropa," and the colonial problem. In German historical writing of that period, he notes a neglect of the ancient field and an emphasis upon the history of more immediate problems.

- 9 Jameson, J. Franklin, "The American Historical Review, 1895-1920," XXVI, October 1920, 1-17.

Mr. Jameson, in his review of twenty-five years of the *American Historical Review*, tells the history of its foundation, its development, and the principles which guided its conduct through that period. He expresses his appreciation to those who have helped to make it "an impressive monument to one generation of historical workers in America."

- 10 Becker, Carl, "Mr. Wells and New History," XXVI, July 1921, 641-656.

To Mr. Becker, the *Outline of History* is "a criticism of the present in terms of the past." It is an example of a history which exploits the past in the interest of ends that Mr. Wells thinks desirable and attainable in the future. It is a great tour de force well worth reading.

- 11 **Latourette, Kenneth Scott**, "Chinese Historical Studies During the Past Seven Years," XXVI, July 1921, 703-716.

Mr. Latourette's critical summary of Chinese historical works produced in 1914-1921 includes periodicals, reference books, books in English produced by Chinese scholars, histories dealing with Chinese philosophy, religion, missionary activity in China, the archaeology of China and China of the twentieth century. He recommends that scholars of America and the Western world trained in modern research methods help interpret Chinese history to the Chinese and to the world.

- 12 **Presniakov, A.**, "Historical Research in Russia During the Revolutionary Crisis," XXVIII, January 1923, 248-257.

A review of the historical work that was being accomplished in Russia in spite of the discouraging conditions which existed during the revolutionary crisis. Professor Presniakov depicts the difficulties encountered because of the loss of archives due to vandalism and the need for paper.

- 13 **Andrews, Charles M.**, "These Forty Years," XXX, January 1925, 225-250.

The year 1924 marked the fortieth anniversary of the American Historical Association. In this commemorative address Andrews discusses the methods and works of such early historians as Macaulay and Bancroft, traces the development of historical research in America, evaluates the progress made during these years toward more scientific methods of research, the progress made in the interpretation of history and in the methods of presenting it, and summarizes the viewpoint of the modern historical writer and thinker. "History shows us the constant waning of the old and the waxing of the new . . . the task of the historian is to discover the character of these processes and the nature of the laws and forces at work bringing them about, to come to some agreement as to the extent to which the individual is capable of guiding . . . these forces and to determine the measure of human freedom involved."

- 14 **Munro, Dana Carleton**, "War and History," XXXII, January 1927, 219-231.

Mr. Munro traces the influence of the Crusades, the wars of religion, the French Revolution, and the Napoleonic Wars upon history and makes tentative statements regarding the influence of the World War upon the interests of historians. In his opinion, wars which seem to have influenced historiography were wars which excited the popular imagination, wars which were due to or caused a change in the social polity, wars in which men were conscious of common interests, and wars which broadened men's interests or directed them into new channels. Generally, such wars caused history to broaden its scope, created a greater popular interest in it and caused it to be written by statesmen who had participated in the events. The "Great War" Munro predicts would still further broaden the scope of history and create a greater interest in it.

- 15 **Hummel, Arthur W.**, "What Chinese Historians Are Doing in Their Own History," XXXIV, July 1929, 715-724.

Chinese modern historians are attempting to re-organize and re-evaluate their national heritage. They have realized the importance of a doubting approach and the "bold use of hypothesis" in the study of their past. To show this trend of investigation, Mr. Hummel indicates the effects of critical investigation upon such problems as Chinese origins as conducted by Mr. Ku in his studies *Ku Shih Pien* or *Discussion in Ancient History* (1927).

- 16 **Robinson, James Harvey**, "The Newer Ways of Historians," XXXV, January 1930, 245-255.

Newer ways in history do not seem to stress the importance of institutions; formal and official documents seem less fundamental and

authentic. History at its best must not only be authentic; its value as a contribution to wisdom depends upon the selection made from the recorded occurrences and institutions of the past and upon its presentation. Recent historical writing neither applauds nor blames; it describes, narrates and brings the past into intimate relations with the present "that they shall seem one, and shall flow and merge into our own personal history."

- 17 Latourette, Kenneth Scott, "Chinese Historical Studies During the Past Nine Years," XXXV, July 1930, 778-797.

This summary of the progress of Chinese historical works produced during 1921-1930 includes general histories, studies in the history of Chinese philosophy, foreign affairs, archaeology, European intercourse with China since 1500, the Christian missionary movement in China, and the recent development of Chinese internal affairs. Mr. Latourette comments upon the "marked interest in the study of Chinese history in China, in Japan, and in the Occident . . ." and upon the tendency "to concentrate on the Chou and pre-Chou period, upon the history of philosophy, especially under the Chou and the Sung, upon art, and upon the contacts of China with foreign peoples and cultures, particularly of the past hundred years."

- 18 Smith, Theodore Clarke, "The Writing of American History in America, from 1884 to 1934," XL, April 1935, 439-449.

An analysis of the trend of American historiography from 1884-1934. To expand the field which existed in 1884, general histories were written by such narrative historians as Bancroft and Channing. These were supplanted by "objective" or "scientific" history. Such history has been challenged by a history which deems it unnecessary to be impartial; its historians declared a nonpartisan search for the truth impossible and undesirable. Mr. Smith is disquieted by the ease with which such historians discard impartiality on the ground that it is uninteresting or inferior to a bold social philosophy.

- 19 Foran, William A., "John Marshall as a Historian," XLIII, October 1937, 51-64.

Scholars have appraised John Marshall's *The Life of George Washington* as a valuable work. To determine the accuracy of this traditional conception, Foran examines Marshall's use of sources. He cites instances of Marshall's unacknowledged borrowing and concludes that *The Life of George Washington* was neither "an outstanding Federalist interpretation of history" nor a "faithful historical narrative."

- 20 "John Franklin Jameson," XLIII, January 1938, 243-252.

A memoir of John Franklin Jameson including an estimate of his contribution to historical scholarship.

- 21 Borton, Hugh, "A Survey of Japanese Historiography," XLIII, April 1938, 489-499.

A summary by periods, of the chief Japanese historical sources from the eighth century to the present including official histories, bibliographical dictionaries and publications of Japanese historical societies.

- 22 von Fritz, Kurt, "The Historian Theopompus," XLVI, July 1941, 765-787.

The author attempts to explain the contradictory writings of the Greek historian of the fourth century B.C. in the light of his reactionary political opinions. Thus his violent criticisms of the Athenian politicians, his failure to write the history of the Alexandrian conquests, his contempt of his teacher, Isokrates, can be explained by his desire for an aristocratic hierarchical state organization encompassing all Greece, in which there was to be no "strong" man but a senate of nobility.

- 23 Thompson, James Westfall, "The Age of Mabillon and Montfaucon," XLVII, January 1942, 225-244.

Historians of seventeenth century France contributed much to modern critical and interpretative historiography. "They in their age laid the foundation for modern critical historical scholarship; they gave us the documents . . . and without documents there is no history." The age of Jean Mabillon and Bernard de Montfaucon was characterized by an untiring devotion to the collection of new documents and the scholarly re-editing of old works. Historians searched for the truth and attempted to disclose it in an accurate, orderly fashion.

- 24 Caughey, John Walton, "Hubert Howe Bancroft, Historian of Western America," L, April 1945, 461-470.

In this brief paper read at the 1944 meeting of the Mississippi Valley Historical Association the author presents a bit of the amazing tale of the historian of the Far West, producer of 30,000 pages of history, publisher, librarian, salesman, collector. Despite controversy and belittlement Bancroft stands, says Caughey, as one of the great figures of the West and of historical activity.

IA. Notes and Suggestions

- 25 Vasiliev, A. A., "Byzantine Studies in Russia, Past and Present," XXXII, April 1927, 539-545.
- 26 Macdonald, D. B., "Recent Spanish Arabic Studies," XXXIII, October 1927, 78-79.
- 27 Beard, Charles A., "That Noble Dream," XLI, October 1935, 74-87.
- 28 Schindler, Margaret Castle, "Fictitious Biography," XLII, July 1937, 680-690.

A study of *Appletons' Cyclopaedia of American Biography*.

IA. Documents

- 29 Furber, Holden, "How William James Came to be a Naval Historian," XXXVIII, October 1932, 74-85.

IA. Cross References

- 203 Perrin, B., "The Rehabilitation of Theramenes."
- 208 Knipfing, J. R., "German Historians and Macedonian Imperialism."
- 215 Platner, S. B., "The Credibility of Early Roman History."
- 216 Frank, Tenney, "Roman Historiography Before Caesar."
- 218 Westermann, W. L., "The Monument of Ancyra."

B. The Interpretation and the Function of History

- 30 Adams, Henry, "Count Edward de Crillon," I, October 1895, 51-69.

Historians, in Henry Adams' opinion, must always stand in terror of blunders from which no precaution and no anxiety for truth can save them. Such a blunder was made when Count Edward de Crillon was described as a secret agent of the French police. Adams corrects the blunder. By a series of letters concerning the Count, Adams reveals who the Count was and how the adventurous scoundrel happened to appear and disappear in the diplomacy of the War of 1812.

- 31 Sloane, William M., "History and Democracy," I, October 1895, 1-23.

"History will not stay written. Every age demands a history written from its own standpoint—with reference to its own social condition, its thought, its beliefs, and its acquisitions—and therefore comprehensible to the men who live in it." An age that is both scientific and democratic will produce history different from that arising out of a period of absolutism or aristocracy and will be no less history because of the differing qualities. History, in addition to being scientifically accurate, must be composed, not compiled. Facts must be correlated and explained.

- 32 Fling, Fred Morrow, "Historical Synthesis," IX, October 1903, 1-22.

Mr. Fling reviews the attempts made by historians such as Buckle, Droysen, and Rickert to formulate the logic of the historical method. He regards Rickert's attempt a valuable contribution to the justification for a unique, scientific, historical method. To Rickert, the object of a science determines its method. He distinguished between historical synthesis and the synthesis adopted by the natural scientist. The historian, in forming his concept, employs general terms, but combines them to form a concept of individual content. The natural scientist forms concepts with general contents. The historian selects features of an object that make it important to the whole group; the natural scientist selects features that are common to the whole group. The natural scientist deals with changes that repeat themselves, thus making generalizations possible; the historian deals with a unique teleological series with definite parts bound together in the interest of causal connection by elements not teleologically essential.

- 33 Lea, Henry C., "Ethical Values in History," IX, January 1904, 233-246.

Mr. Lea does not recommend that history be written as a "Sunday-school tale," but he does believe that it generally conveys a moral which is to be deduced from the facts. The beliefs and aspirations of a period are the basis for judgment of that period. To depict a character truthfully as the product of a distorted ethical conception is to trace effects to causes and to point out the way to improvement. This, he suggests, is the historian's task.

- 34 Smith, Goldwin, "The Treatment of History," X, April 1905, 511-520.

Continuity of human history, occurrence of accident in it, and the inability to predict events make it difficult to treat history as a science. Valid inductions in science demand a complete situation; accidents are fatal to the conception and verification of any scientific law. History can trace the interdependence of events, the connection of causes and effects, the distinction of epochs, the formation of national character, and the general progress of humanity.

- 35 **Lloyd, Alfred H.**, "History and Materialism," X, July 1905, 727-750.

The author regards materialism as a tendency to treat what is only a part as if in itself it were an independent self-supporting, originally active and constituted whole. He discusses various sources for materialism in history. Among these sources is the idea that history repeats itself, the attempt to explain great changes as reactions, the idea of progress, the date-bound period, emphasis upon class, and others. Materialism in history, he believes, finds its source in the consideration of history as a whole; such history assumes an outside compulsion or determination where none exists.

- 36 **Baldwin, Simeon E.**, "Religion Still the Key to History," XII, January 1907, 219-243.

To recognize its influence and controlling force in public opinion, the historian must recognize and respect religion—a reverent consciousness of a power manifest in nature which is stronger than man and a sense of obligation to answer its demands. The key has changed its form since the "overthrow of the ancient order of things that marked the close of the eighteenth century" but it has retained its power to influence public opinion.

- 37 **Jameson, J. Franklin**, "The American Acta Sanctorum," XIII, January 1908, 286-302.

In this presidential address to the American Historical Association in 1907, Mr. Jameson urges the study of American religious history because in the records left by Americans engaged in religious activity is to be found rich material depicting American social life. Mr. Jameson, in his address, reviews the records of medieval saints which afford enlightenment upon medieval medicine, geography, the national character, and details of domestic life in order to compare them with American records and to suggest the potentialities of an "American Acta Sanctorum."

- 38 **Hill, David J.**, "The Ethical Function of the Historian," XIV, October 1908, 9-21.

"The function of the historian is not to deal with uniformities or with universal formulas, but with the variations of human conduct as measured by its success, and its failure upon the scale of rational endeavor . . . history is nothing more or less than the record of man's efforts to solve the problems with which he is confronted by his nature and his environment." Mr. Hill outlines the historian's job as one which traces the upward or downward curve of man's development as displayed in forms of human conduct—thought, art, industry, literature, politics—in order to bring to light the forces and conditions which produced it and the effect of particular instances of conduct upon it.

- 39 **Adams, George B.**, "History and the Philosophy of History," XIV, January 1909, 221-236.

In the president's address for 1908, Mr. Adams considers the attacks made upon the historian's purpose and method by the political scientist, the geographer, the sociologist, the social psychologist, and the movement which advocates the economic explanation of history, as a challenge to the historian. They demand a philosophy of history. To them, history is not only to be concerned with the fact; they desire to know what forces determine human events. Yet, to the historians of this day, Mr. Adams recommends that their first duty is to discover and record that which actually happened rather than to attempt to discover, from the stage of their knowledge, the forces that control society.

- 40 **Hart, Albert B.**, "Imagination in History," XV, January 1910, 227-251.

Professor Hart in his review of fraudulent, scientific, and picturesque historical writing emphasizes the need for "imagination." The his-

torian must deal with facts established by scientific methods of research, but to write history he must possess imagination or that quality of mind which makes one see things as they really are. He must possess the power "to assemble the dry bones and to make them live."

- 41 Teggart, Frederick J., "The Circumstance or the Substance of History," XV, July 1910, 709-719.

History is defined as the record of man's effort to secure an adjustment of human relationships. Teggart deals with the problems confronting the historian when his philosophy of history is being challenged. Darwin's theory challenged the history which placed its emphasis upon the search alone for facts. The historian is forced to decide whether he should continue in the method of Ranke, accept an evolutionary-sociological view of history, or adopt a point of view of his own.

- 42 Turner, Frederick J., "Social Forces in American History," XVI, January 1911, 217-233.

The changing contemporary scene, in which the old pioneering spirit is disappearing, while the forces of social combination are magnifying themselves, typifies current trends which the historian should learn to deal with. A genetic approach to the study of present-day trends is called for.

- 43 Sloane, William M., "The Vision and Substance of History," XVII, January 1912, 235-251.

Effectively to modernize history and make it live, Mr. Sloane suggests that the historian first free himself of a prejudice against secondary authority which has been established by honest specialists, and secondly that he free himself of meaningless terminology. The historian must account for what is; he must reject that in the past which has no bearing on things as they exist in the present.

- 44 Shotwell, J. T., "The Interpretation of History," XVIII, July 1913, 692-709.

"We interpret history by knowing more of it, bringing to bear our psychology and every other auxiliary to open up each intricate relationship between men, situations, and events." In their extreme forms the theological, philosophical, materialistic, or economic interpretations of history are inadequate but they do reveal progressive clarifications. They have served to bring to the historian's attention new data. Interpretation should be a suggestive stimulus for further research.

- 45 Callender, Guy S., "The Position of American Economic History," XIX, October 1913, 80-97.

Mr. Callender defines economic history as a description and explanation of the economic life of each country during the course of its history. To explain the wealth of nations is the economic historian's task. His aim should be to analyze factors which determine the ability of a nation to produce wealth at any particular time, factors which influence the distribution of its wealth, and forces which work to change economic conditions. To achieve such a description of American life as a whole, he recommends histories of the important industries, agriculture, forestry, mining, and manufacture; studies of economic institutions, currency, transportation systems, public finance; and synthetic studies of the whole economic life of regions such as New England, the Middle States, or the Lower South.

- 46 Dunning, William A., "Truth in History," XIX, January 1914, 217-229.

Emphasis upon the historian's pursuit of the objective fact has tended to limit the scope of history. Material rather than spiritual or psychic forces and influences in human nature have been stressed. To depict a period, the historian must ascertain the scope and content of the ideas

that constituted the culture of that period. Whether these ideas are true or false according to the standard of any other time is not his concern. The course of human history is determined no more by what is true than by what men believed to be true. The historian imbued with the desire to seek for the objective fact must remember that there is history in the "ancient error" as well as in the "new-found truth."

- 47 **McLaughlin, Andrew C.**, "American History and American Democracy," XX, January 1915, 255-276.

American democracy as a point of view in the writing of American history comprises the subject for this presidential address delivered at the American Historical Association's meeting in 1914. American history must do more than hunt facts or catalogue occurrences; it has the task of feeling character and divining living spirit. Since America as a democracy has believed itself endowed with a mission on a path leading to human improvement, its history must be studied fundamentally with that fact in mind. The history of the American democracy must be a history of the development or workings of American self-government.

- 48 **Burr, George L.**, "The Freedom of History," XXII, January 1917, 253-271.

The presidential address of 1916 discusses freedom of action and choice and traces from ancient times to the present the effort to free history and keep it free from traditional matter, rhetoric, and that inertia which discourages the need for research or inquiry. Herodotus, for example, asserted his freedom of initiative when he offered objective truth sought out and verified.

- 49 **Ford, Worthington C.**, "The Editorial Function in United States History," XXIII, January 1918, 273-286.

Worthington Ford, in this presidential address delivered at Philadelphia in 1917, chose the editor of original sources as his subject. He discusses self-editing expressed in autobiography, editing by members of the family, such as Randolph's compilation of Jefferson's letters in 1830; the "introduction" of text mutilation by Eliza Susan Quincy, who in 1825 compiled a "doctored" memoir of her grandfather, Josiah Quincy; and the function of the modern editor. The editor's purpose should be "to give all that may be of service to our host of anxious inquirers and the ever-increasing number of writers of history, and to give it unvarnished, as the documents contain it."

- 50 **Thayer, William R.**, "Vagaries of Historians," XXIV, January 1919, 183-195.

Mr. Thayer's presidential address prepared for the meeting of 1918 deals with the historian and his prepossessions—race, creed, political party, conception of the universe—and the dangers involved when he attempts to adjust history to any special theory. After a discussion of Henry Adams' application of science to history, Thayer recommends that the historian should strive to redeem history from the bonds of scientific formulas and purposes and attempt to humanize it. The historian must try to discover how the human will shapes and directs men's actions. "Man the Measure" should be the guide for those who would write history in human terms."

- 51 **Thayer, William R.**, "Fallacies in History," XXV, January 1920, 179-190.

The interpretation of history as psychologized by such German historians as Treitschke, the use of a priori arguments in the interpretation of history, the use of false logic, and the prediction that the writing of special histories would replace the writing of general history are here considered as fallacies in history.

- 52 Haskins, Charles H., "European History and American Scholarship," XXVIII, January 1923, 215-227.

In this essay, Mr. Haskins notes the fields of European history that have been relatively untouched by American scholars. He emphasizes the need of tying Europe and America together in the popular mind, and of interpreting the world as a unit rather than as several nations.

- 53 Cheyney, Edward P., "Law in History," XXIX, January 1924, 231-248.

Six general laws of history are suggested by Mr. Cheyney: a law of continuity; a law of impermanence of nations; a law of unity of the race, an interdependence among all its members; a law of democracy, a tendency for all government to come under the control of the people; a law of necessity for free consent; and a law of moral progress. A knowledge of the laws of history, he suggests, might give a clue to the future and make history practical.

- 54 Taylor, Henry Osborn, "A Layman's View of History," XXXIII, January 1928, 247-256.

An assertion of the cosmos-embracing concept of history, emphasizing the "twofold unity, that of the time-dimension of past and present, and the pervasive unity of human life through its divers manifestations in religion, philosophy, science, institutions, and conduct." History is the "veritable mirror, the alter ego, of this vibrant whole," and it must show the "multiple significance of every so-called fact."

- 55 Randall, James G., "The Interrelation of Social and Constitutional History," XXXV, October 1929, 1-13.

Mr. Randall emphasizes the interdependence existing between law and the social conditions surrounding it. "Political and constitutional history cannot be adequately treated apart from their social and economic bearings. . . . The social historian finds a reciprocal profit in the study of legal and political data. With his insight into social factors he will be able to illuminate many a subject by exploring legal records for the indirect light they throw upon conditions of society."

- 56 Fox, Dixon Ryan, "A Synthetic Principle in American Social History," XXXV, January 1930, 256-266.

"It is the claim of this paper that the concept of social evolution [using the word as the biologists use it to describe the process of differentiation] . . . offers an available scheme on which to bring an immense number of seemingly discrete facts into an understandable relation. . . . This scheme does not explain facts, but brings many of them into relation which is what the social historian really wants . . . it helps make social history more than a series of panoramic culture pictures; it helps make of it a living whole."

- 57 Becker, Carl, "Everyman His Own Historian," XXXVII, January 1932, 221-236.

In this presentation Mr. Becker aims to reduce history to its lowest terms "first, by defining it as the memory of things said and done, and second, by showing concretely how the memory of things said and done is essential to [Mr. Everyman's] performance of the simplest acts of early life." Mr. Everyman cannot do what he needs to do without recalling past events; he cannot recall them without relating them to what he needs to do. To Mr. Becker, this is the natural function of a history conceived as "memory of things said and done . . . running hand in hand with the anticipation of things to be said and done" enabling Mr. Everyman "to push back the narrow confines of the fleeting present moment" so that what he is doing may be judged in the light of what he has done and what he hopes to do.

- 58 **Bolton, Herbert E.**, "The Epic of Greater America," XXXVIII, April 1933, 448-474.

In his study Professor Bolton indicates some of the larger historical unities and interrelations of the Americas, suggests the need for a larger synthesis of American history and a study of the Western Hemisphere's significant developments as a whole. "Who has written the history of the introduction of European plants and animals into the Western Hemisphere as a whole? . . . Who has tried to state the significance of the frontier in terms of the Americas?"

- 59 **Beard, Charles**, "Written History as an Act of Faith," XXXIX, January 1934, 219-231.

Such conceptions in historiography as the assumption of causation after the method of physics, historical relativity, and history conceived as a succession of cultural organisms rising, growing, competing, and declining after the method of biology are refuted by Professor Beard. He defines history as "thought about past actuality, instructed and delimited by history as record and knowledge—record and knowledge authenticated by criticism and ordered with the help of the scientific method." To Beard, the historian who writes history possesses a philosophy of life or "frame of reference." In this frame three conceptions of history as actuality are possible: history as chaos, history as revolving in cycles, and history which moves in some direction. When writing his history, the historian performs an act of faith as to its order and movement. His faith is a conviction that something true can be known about the movement of history; his conviction is a subjective decision, not an objective discovery.

- 60 **McIlwain, C. H.**, "The Historian's Part in a Changing World," XLII, January 1937, 207-224.

This presidential address is an assertion of a belief in objective history and of the need for detachment from the preconceptions of the present in the study of history. To Mr. McIlwain, the historian in a changing world should try to find lessons in history which are practical and useful, but his real task is to see that the lessons are really lessons in history—that which really happened.

- 61 **Beard, Charles A., and Vagts, Alfred**, "Currents of Thought in Historiography," XLII, April 1937, 460-483.

The authors chide American historians for their failure sufficiently to question their purposes and basic ideas. Much of the article is given to a critique of Friedrich Meinecke's *Die Entstehung des Historismus* (1936), emphasizing the charge that Meinecke, state employee, "belongs to the penultimate generation of historians who uphold and justify by history the rule of that bureaucracy and whatever may be behind it." The conclusion of Beard and Vagts is that historians must shake off the bondage to physical and biological analogies, must explore everything human, and must fulfill their public responsibility by analyzing with insight the trends of domestic and world events.

- 62 **Ford, Guy Stanton**, "Some Suggestions to American Historians," XLIII, January 1938, 253-269.

In this presidential address delivered at Philadelphia in 1937, Guy Stanton Ford is concerned with the historian's approach to the writing of American history of the next fifty years and his approach to the necessary reviews of its background since 1787. The historian depicting the history of America in the present and the immediate future must trace the evolution from an extreme individualism, typical of the national thought since the eighteenth century, to the "growing social awareness" of a need for "common action for the general welfare."

- 63 Taylor, Henry Osborn, "Continuities in History," XLIV, October 1938, 1-19.

Continuities in history are here defined as physical conditions and persistent human qualities which have shaped the role of mankind on the earth. The unceasing activities of human minds, the urge to form and maintain societies, the will to rationalize and reach ultimate conclusions are such continuities. Purpose in the conduct of organisms enters into all continuities of human history. "The evolutionary process resulting in a diversity of organisms and the emergence of mental qualities seems to carry purpose. Such purpose . . . is a directive influence within the active scheme of things and possibly may look to a growth of mind beyond the range of physical ingredients. Sequential dependence throughout the evolution of the more complex from the simpler organic forms, as well as the interdependence holding among contemporary organisms, bears a loose analogy to the order of man's physiological and psychic functions with the animal propensities the earlier. The range of human faculties from the violent to the more rational follows the sequence of evolution and . . . its immanent purpose. All seems to point to the eventual supremacy of those faculties which regard the welfare of the individual as a member of society."

- 64 Becker, Carl, "What Is Historiography?" XLIV, October 1938, 20-28.

Historiography can be little more than the notation of historical works with some indication of the author's purpose, his point of view, and the value of his work. But when regarded as a "phase of intellectual history and not as a balance sheet of verifiable historical knowledge," historiography's main theme becomes "the gradual expansion of this time and space world . . . the items, whether true or false, which acquired knowledge and accepted beliefs enabled men (and not historians only) to find within it, and the influence of this pattern of true or imagined events upon the development of human thought and conduct."

- 65 Farrand, Max, "The Quality of Distinction," XLVI, April 1941, 509-522.

Max Farrand, in this presidential address delivered before the Association in 1940, emphasizes the need for the development and expression of the best that the historian is capable of producing—the need for work which possesses the quality of distinction.

IB. Cross Reference

- 1185 Destler, C. McA., "Wealth against Commonwealth, 1894 and 1944."

C. Archives; Publication of Historical Material

- 66 Haskins, Charles H., "The Vatican Archives," II, October 1896, 40-58.

The article indicates the nature and contents of the collections in the Vatican and shows the direction which research and publication of these collections have taken. Among these collections, the most important are the copies of papal letters from the time of Innocent III and the documents relating to the financial administration of the church.

- 67 Colby, Charles W., "The Jesuit Relations," VII, October 1901, 36-55.

Publication by Reuben G. Thwaites of *The Jesuit Relations and Allied Documents* . . . in seventy-one volumes prompted this comment upon

them. As material for the history of new France, their scope must be recognized as limited. Information in the *Jesuit Relations* is limited to that which would "promote the glory of God." At the time the relations were written they were supplemented by priests' reports and letters giving information which was restricted to members of the Jesuit order.

- 68 **Burr, George L.**, "European Archives," VII, July 1902, 653-662.

In this paper, read at the meeting of the American Historical Association (Dec., 1901), Mr. Burr discusses the contents and organization of some of the European archives. He then offers four ways in which one might use those archives: on the spot, by deputy, by means of transcripts, by loan.

- 69 **Andrews, Charles M.**, "Materials in British Archives for American Colonial History," X, January 1905, 325-349.

This paper is a preliminary report to the Department of Historical Research of the Carnegie Institution of Washington. Mr. Andrews describes in detail the manuscript collections pertaining to colonial history available in the Bodleian Library, the British Museum, the Privy Council Office, the Royal Institution, and the Public Record Office.

- 70 **Jameson, J. Franklin**, "Gaps in the Published Records of United States History," XI, July 1906, 817-831.

Beginning with the colonial period, specific suggestions are made for the orderly publication of necessary records dealing with American history through the Civil War.

- 71 **Bolton, Herbert E.**, "Material for Southwestern History in the Central Archives of Mexico," XIII, April 1908, 510-527.

This is a preliminary report of a survey made for the Department of Historical Research, Carnegie Institution of Washington. The article discusses source material relating to Southwestern history before 1821 available in the Archivo General y Público de la Nación, the Museo Nacional and the Biblioteca Nacional. The author also briefly suggests material available for the period after 1821 in the archives of the secretariats of Foreign Relations, War, and Public Improvements.

- 72 **Caron, Pierre**, "A French Co-operative Historical Enterprise," XIII, April 1908, 501-509.

A brief account of the work of the commission appointed by the French Minister of Public Instruction in 1903 to direct the publication of archive documents bearing upon the economic and industrial conditions of France in 1789 as revealed in the cahiers of the parishes, corporations, professional associations and trade unions, feudal rights, agriculture, manufacturing, mining, domestic, and foreign commerce.

- 73 **Leland, Waldo G.**, "The National Archives: A Programme," XVIII, October 1912, 1-28.

Mr. Leland reveals conditions which emphasize the need for a national archive in the United States. He suggests plans for the building and its administration and discusses problems connected with the preservation of archive material.

- 74 **Swingle, Walter T.**, "Chinese Historical Sources," XXVI, July 1921, 717-725.

A guide to Chinese historical sources emphasizing the thoroughness of Chinese records. It includes a discussion of such works as the Book of History (*Shu Ching*) edited by Confucius, Ssu-ma Ch'ien's Historical Record (*Shih Chi*) covering the history of China for more than three thousand years, the Twenty-Four Dynastic Histories, and the official gazetteers published for China as a whole, its provinces, prefectures, and

most of its districts. For collections of Chinese books, Mr. Swingle suggests those in Newberry Library, John Crerar Library, the Library of Congress, New York Public Library, and the Chinese libraries of the University of California and Columbia University.

- 75 **Steel, Anthony B.**, "The Present State of Studies on the English Exchequer in the Middle Ages," XXXIV, April 1929, 485-512.

This paper briefly indicates what classes of material are available in print and relates the "more recent activities of exchequer specialists as may not yet have penetrated to the bibliographies of the more general historian." Mr. Steel discusses the state of such materials as Pipe Rolls, the King's Remembrancer's Memoranda Rolls, the Receipt Rolls, the Issue Rolls.

- 76 **Thompson, James Westfall**, "The Statistical Sources of Frankish History," XL, July 1935, 625-645.

We shall never know much about the number or density of population or the extent of the revenues of any government before 1300 because many important records have perished with time. Individual research has emphasized the merit of Georg Wolff's work, Frankish tax registers, the Roman census, Roman villa accounts, and the Carolingian statistical practices begun by Pepin and Charlemagne and carried through the reigns of Louis the Pious and Charles the Bald at the end of the ninth century.

- 77 **Irvine, Dallas D.**, "The Fate of Confederate Archives," XLIV, July 1939, 823-841.

A review of what happened to the records of the Confederate Executive Department, State Department, War Department, Navy Department, Treasury Department, Post Office Department, and the Confederate Congress after the government evacuated Richmond.

- 78 **Posner, Ernst**, "Public Records under Military Occupation," XLIX, January 1944, 213-227.

In dealing with the problem of the preservation of archive material in countries under military occupation, Ernst Posner stresses the potential value of such records to the authorities administering the government of occupation. Such records are a continuous source for propaganda material and for accurate information of the country occupied. They may also furnish information which helps the invader to determine the friendly or unfriendly elements of the country he has invaded.

IC. Notes and Suggestions

- 79 **Pease, T. C.**, "A Caution Regarding Military Documents," XXVI, January 1921, 282-284.
- 80 **Beller, E. A.**, "Contemporary Printed English Sources for the Thirty Years' War," XXXII, January 1927, 276-282.
- 81 **Karpinsky, L. C.**, "Manuscript Maps Relating to American History in French, Spanish, and Portuguese Archives," XXXIII, January 1928, 328-330.
- 82 **Perkins, Dexter**, "Aids to Historical Research and Publication," XXXIV, January 1929, 274-280.
- 83 **Newsome, A. R.**, "Unprinted Public Archives of the Post Colonial Period: Their Availability," XXXIX, July 1934, 682-689.

- 84 **Morris, Richard B.**, "The Federal Archives of New York City," XLII, January 1937, 256-272.
Opportunities for historical research.
- 85 **Cappon, Lester J.**, "The Collection of World War I Materials in the States," XLVIII, July 1943, 733-745.
- 86 "Plans for the Historiography of the United States in World War II," XLIX, January 1944, 243-251.
- 87 **Campbell, Edward G.**, "The National Archives Faces the Future," XLIX, April 1944, 441-445.

IC. Cross References

- 194 **Barton, G. A.**, "The Historical Results of Recent Exploration in Palestine and Iraq."
- 197 **Westermann, W. L.**, "New Historical Documents in Greek and Roman History."
- 517 **A British Officer**, "The Literature of the South African War, 1899-1902."
- 519 **Notestein, Wallace**, "Retrospective Reviews: Recent British Biographies and Memoirs."
- 1209 **A British Officer**, "The Literature of the Russo-Japanese War."
- And items 295, 296, 442, 1178, and 1179.

D. Fields for Research

- 88 **Adams, Charles Francis**, "The Sifted Grain and the Grain-Sifters," VI, January 1901, 197-234.

This is an address given at the dedication of the building of the State Historical Society of Wisconsin in 1900. "God sifted a whole nation that he might send choice Grain over into this Wilderness." In a eulogy to Wisconsin, Adams elucidates that state's position concerning the issues of slavery and nationalism—two problems foremost in men's thoughts in 1848 when Wisconsin became an organized unit. Wisconsin's sifted grain—its politically energetic, democratic population—furnished a thoroughly distributed popular backbone. From such grain planted in the West Adams hoped would evolve the grain-sifter or historian who would possess learning, judgment, and literary sense. From it should evolve the historian who could permeate the masses with his historical thought.

- 89 **Cheyney, Edward**, "The England of Our Forefathers," XI, July 1906, 769-778.

Because of its special significance to American history, Mr. Cheyney urges the study of English history from 1580 to 1660. Normal conditions need investigation. Typical rather than great men should be studied. Widespread institutions rather than casual occurrences should be the historian's concern.

- 90 **Dodd, William E.**, "Profitable Fields of Investigation in American History, 1815-1860," XVIII, April 1913, 522-536.

This paper includes specific subjects in economic, social, and religious history which needed investigation at that time. Biographical studies and

studies in local sections are recommended. A history of the period 1815-1860 should be "one in which all the people of the country, all the groups of the self-seeking classes, all the important official acts of responsible leaders would have their due place . . . and which would see in all important groups some large social and political causes."

- 91 **Thompson, James Westfall**, "Profitable Fields of Investigation in Medieval History," XVIII, April 1913, 490-504.

As an introduction to a review of material needing investigation in German, French, and Spanish medieval history, Mr. Thompson suggests the importance of re-examining old subjects in the light of improved methods or a new point of view. He briefly indicates an interesting parallel which could be drawn between American westward expansion and German eastward expansion in the Middle Ages when considered from Frederick Jackson Turner's point of view concerning the significance of the frontier in American history.

- 92 **Cross, Arthur Lyon**, "Legal Materials as Sources for the Study of Modern English History," XIX, July 1914, 751-771.

Mr. Cross shows, by examination of numerous articles, that a study of the reports of the common law courts, of the records of the quarter sessions, and of the rolls of the manor may greatly enrich the knowledge of political, social, and industrial conditions of the times. The court reports furnish evidence of the application of political thinking, the evolution of judge-made law, and the life of the period. "[In] the trial of Lord Mohun for the murder of Mr. Mountford, we may learn at what time plays began in the reign of William and Mary." From the county and quarter session records, the session rolls, we get the clearest view of the workings of the central authorities, (*e.g.*, the increasing activities of justices of the peace from Edward III's reign to the establishment of county councils in 1889), and of the real life of the people.

- 93 **Lingelbach, W. E.**, "Historical Investigation and the Commercial History of the Napoleonic Era," XIX, January 1914, 257-281.

Mr. Lingelbach here notes the comparatively little work that has been done on the Napoleonic era approached from the economic standpoint. He suggests many studies needed in this commercial area; he gives the location of much of the material, mentioning the primary sources to be found in America; he drives home the importance of the commercial records for an understanding of Napoleon; finally, he discusses the repercussions of the Napoleonic Wars on the commerce of the entire world with special mention of the United States.

- 94 **Adams, James T.**, "The Unexplored Region in New England History," XXVIII, July 1923, 673-681.

New England from 1713 to 1763 is cited as the "unexplored region." To understand the growth of revolutionary radicalism in subsequent years, Mr. Adams suggests tracing economic processes producing discontent in these years, such as the increasing pressure on land due to the increase in population and the wearing out of the soil, and the decreasing opportunity for the man without capital to advance against concentrated wealth and changed methods and control in business. He recommends a study of parts of New England other than eastern Massachusetts.

- 95 **Webster, Charles K.**, "The Study of British Foreign Policy (Nineteenth Century)," XXX, July 1925, 728-737.

The scientific study of nineteenth century British foreign policy has been comparatively neglected. Mr. Webster here reviews and evaluates the archives and papers available for that study, covering the Foreign Office papers, those of the War Office, Admiralty, Colonial Office, Treas-

surey, Board of Trade, etc. The important evidence to be found in foreign archives and the problem of the press conclude this brief survey.

- 96 **Hansen, Marcus L.**, "The History of American Immigration as a Field for Research," XXXII, April 1927, 500-518.

Mr. Hansen treats comprehensively the innumerable phases of American immigration in which there is much need of investigation. He lists topics, areas of study, and source material, and suggests where other source material might be found. Immigrant newspapers and church activities have scarcely been touched. There are great possibilities of research in the relatively little explored field of American immigration.

- 97 **Nute, Grace L.**, "The Papers of the American Fur Company; A Brief Estimate of Their Significance," XXXII, April 1927, 519-538.

The papers of the American Fur Company for the years 1834 to 1847 including original letters received from factors, letters from foreign and domestic agents, and records of the company's transactions are here described as valuable in that they afford information concerning practically every phase of American life—commerce, banking, domestic markets, domestic manufactures, transportation, politics, religious conditions, education, settlement of the West, Indian policy, foreign relations. Miss Nute has supervised the cataloguing of these papers through the co-operation of various historical agencies and here suggests the value of the catalogue to the student.

- 98 **Neilson, Nellie**, "English Manorial Forms," XXXIV, July 1929, 725-739.

"A study of the material available for English manorial history—of court rolls, charters, surveys, and bailiffs' accounts of the thirteenth century . . . and of photographs of ancient fields taken from the air—will show on even cursory examination striking differences in the form and structure of village units in Medieval England. This paper is a plea for the vigorous study of local customs and arrangements, after the fashion set by Professor Stenton and others, and a protest against yielding to a . . . temptation to cover England too generally with the Seebohm types of manorial organization." The variations in village forms and manorial organization are considered from the following points of view: the general organization of the manor and its relation to the village; the classes of society within the manor; the tenemental units—the normal holdings of different classes within the manor; assarts and approvements; rents and services; the demesne; and judicial arrangements.

- 99 **Randall, J. G.**, "Has the Lincoln Theme Been Exhausted?" XLI, January 1936, 270-294.

A review of some of the unfinished tasks and current problems of Lincoln scholarship suggesting the need for a definitive edition of Lincoln's works and the need for an adequate full-length biography.

- 100 **Beale, Howard K.**, "On Rewriting Reconstruction History," XLV, July 1940, 807-827.

After briefly indicating and criticizing the traditional interpretations of Reconstruction, the author elaborates the new "objective" view which has arisen with the younger historians. Reconstruction is viewed not as a sectional conflict between North and South but as a manifestation of the great social and economic changes which occurred throughout the United States, and which affected the North as much as the South. Indeed, Reconstruction is only one phase of the clash of capitalist and small farmer which reached its climax in the Populist movement. Reconstruction must be studied from an economic and social orientation intimately associated with the rise of the new industrialism.

- 101 Hyslop, Beatrice F., "Recent Work on the French Revolution," XLVII, April 1942, 488-515.

This article is not a listing of works produced in the last decade, but a critical survey with suggestions for new research on certain newly developed aspects of the French Revolution. It includes works which contribute to a new understanding of the financial factors of the Revolution, such as C. E. Labrousse's *Esquisse du mouvement des prix et des revenus en France au XVIII^e siècle* (1933), which affords light on the condition of the urban and rural classes on the eve of the French Revolution, and Henri Hauser's work on the study of French prices. The rise of a new political interpretation is found in François Olivier-Martin's *L'organisation corporative de l'ancien régime* (1938). France of the Old Regime is not considered an absolute state with declining efficiency but a state in which the power of the king was checked by the corporative privileges of the various bodies making up the state. The king was not an absolute power but a force which maintained balance between the various bodies. *The Anatomy of Revolution* by Crane Brinton (1938) introduces a psychological explanation of the Terror.

ID. Notes and Suggestions

- 102 Westermann, W. L., "The Trades of Antiquity as a Field of Investigation," XXIII, October 1917, 102-104.
- 103 Bourne, Henry E., "The Economic History of the French Revolution as a Field of Study," XXXIII, January 1928, 315-322.
- 104 Bemis, Samuel Flagg, "Fields for Research in the Diplomatic History of the United States to 1900," XXXVI, October 1930, 68-75.

ID. Cross References

- 581 Coolidge, Archibald Cary, "A Plea for the Study of the History of Northern Europe."
- And item 114.

E. Teaching and Study of History

- 105 Haskins, Charles H., "Opportunities for American Students of History at Paris," III, April 1898, 418-430.

Justification for this discussion of opportunities for American students of history at Paris is found in the fact that in Mr. Haskins' time (according to his opinion) no report upon the historical advantages at Paris had been made since Professor Fredericq's (University of Ghent) report which was translated and published in the *Johns Hopkins University Studies*, May-June 1890. In Mr. Haskins' enumeration of opportunities, made in 1897, he suggests four institutions—the École des Chartes, Faculty of Letters, École des Hautes Études, and École Libre des Sciences Politiques—which would benefit the mature student of history. Rich experiences and study are to be found in medieval and modern French history.

- 106 **Adams, George B.**, "Methods of Work in Historical Seminars," X, April 1905, 521-533.

To train historical investigators and develop critical judgment no one method has been proved the best. Three methods are here discussed—intensive analysis method, involving minute comparison of closely related material; comparison and combination method, in which a group of connected sources is the foundation for a series of studies; and the essay method, in which work is done in essays on assigned topics. A successful seminary allows for continuous active participation by all its members. Each experiences the processes and steps of the historical method and is subject to severe but kindly criticism.

- 107 **Shotwell, J. T.**, "The École des Chartes," XI, July 1906, 761-768.

A description of the École des Chartes—formally a technical school for training archivists and librarians with a three year curriculum. Development of discipline and practice in methods of research are the institute's most valuable contributions.

- 108 **Jernegan, Marcus W.**, "Productivity of Doctors of Philosophy in History," XXXIII, October 1927, 1-22.

A discussion of the results of a questionnaire prepared by the Committee on Preparing a Programme for Research and Publication of the American Historical Association in order to discover why there is not more productive research on the part of Ph.D.'s in history, and to learn what obstacles hinder the publication of such research. Professor Jernegan bases his conclusions on the 260 replies received from the 500 questionnaires which were sent to the holders of the Ph.D. degree in history. To remedy a situation of having less than twenty-five per cent of the Ph.D.'s in history producers, he suggests the following: the development of a greater passion for research, a more careful selection of candidates, encouragement to those Ph.D.'s who have a "flair" for research, the founding of research professorships, and the granting of social recognition to scholars.

- 109 **Hesseltine, William B., and Kaplan, Louis**, "Doctors of Philosophy in History," XLVII, July 1942, 765-800.

This statistical study discusses the development of the American Ph.D. in history. It includes discussions and statistical tables analyzing departments of history, fields of historical research, and the productivity of those holding the degree.

IE. Notes and Suggestions

- 110 **J. F. J.**, "Historical Scholars in War-Time," XXII, July 1917, 831-835.
- 111 **Magoffin, Ralph van D.**, "Historical Work by Army General Staffs," XXIV, July 1919, 630-636.
- 112 **J. F. J.**, "The University Centre for Research in Washington," XXVIII, January 1923, 259-262.
- 113 **J. F. J.**, "A 'Pure History Law,'" XXVIII, July 1923, 699-701.
The Wisconsin law of 1923.
- 114 "On the Relation of the Schools to Military History," XXVIII, July 1923, 701-704.
- 115 "History in the School Curriculum," XXIX, October 1923, 73-74.

- 116 Dawson, E., "The History Inquiry," XXIX, January 1924, 299-300.
- 117 Mendenhall, Thomas C., "The Introductory College Course in Civilization," XLIX, July 1944, 681-684.
- 118 Johnson, Richard A., "Teaching of American History in Great Britain," L, October 1944, 73-81.

IE. Documents

- 119 Schmitt, Bernadotte E., "'War Guilt' in France and Germany," XLIII, January 1938, 321-341.

"Resolutions Adopted by a Committee of French and German Historians for the Improvement of Textbooks in Both Countries."

F. Historical Associations and Activities

- 120 Hart, Albert Bushnell, "The Historical Opportunity in America," IV, October 1898, 1-20.

Professor Hart is concerned with the enumeration of what had been done in 1898 to further historical science in America. When suggesting practical steps for its future development, he emphasizes the importance of preserving and marking historical sites, of preserving and printing colonial and other records, and of utilizing new tools such as slides, for transmitting knowledge. Mr. Hart suggests local historical societies as proper organizations to co-ordinate various historical activities.

- 121 Adams, Charles Francis, "An Undeveloped Function," VII, January 1902, 203-232.

To improve the level of political discussion, Mr. Adams recommends that organizations such as the American Historical Association participate in debate on questions of public conduct and policy which are uppermost in the minds of the community. He questions the value of the Association's unwritten law that politics should find no place in its meetings, because in such a meeting an issue could better be considered from the historical point of view. Failure to consider such issues at special meetings is the "undeveloped function."

IF. Notes and Suggestions

- 122 Dawson, E., "National Council for the Social Studies," XXVII, April 1922, 491-492.
- 123 Nichols, Roy F., "History and the Social Science Research Council," L, April 1945, 491-499.

G. History and Allied Disciplines

- 124 Burgess, John W., "Political Science and History," II, April 1897, 401-408.

Defining history as the "progressive realization of the ideals of the human spirit in all of the objective forms of their manifestation" and political science as "the science of the national country state," the author

concludes that while there is an element in political science which is not history, the two spheres so overlap one another that they cannot be separated.

- 125 **Huntington, Ellsworth**, "Changes of Climate and History," XVIII, January 1913, 213-232.

The theory of pulsatory changes in climate is presented to demonstrate the influence of rapid changes in climate upon the course of historical events. Mr. Huntington concludes and illustrates by chart that climatic changes have occurred in both the Eastern and Western hemispheres and that such changes have been characterized by pulsations whereby certain periods have been exceptionally dry and others moist. Any interpretation of history must take the effect of these changes into account as factors influencing the movements of peoples and influencing periods of invasion and anarchy.

- 126 **Roosevelt, Theodore**, "History as Literature," XVIII, April 1913, 473-489.

To Mr. Roosevelt, history and literature should be inseparable. The literary historian as distinguished from the historical investigator is one who not only has mastered the science of history and accumulated a knowledge of the facts of the past; he is one who possesses the imagination and vision to depict the past vividly as if it were the present. He possesses the power "to take the science of history and turn it into literature" or that which has permanent interest because of its substance and form.

- 127 **Aubrey, Edwin E.**, "Social Psychology as Liaison between History and Sociology," XXXIII, January 1928, 257-277.

Both sociologists and historians have used historical data for the purpose of reaching generalizations concerning social institutions and collective behavior. Such a combination has been declared a confusion of two methods; it has been called neither good history nor sound sociology. In this study the author seeks to resolve the difficulty by discussing the use of social psychology as a liaison between the sociological and the historical approach.

- 128 **Shryock, Richard H.**, "Medical Sources and the Social Historian," XLI, April 1936, 458-473.

Medical literature frequently affords more trustworthy evidence of social conditions than travel literature, which has been religiously consulted by social historians. Medical men's contacts with society are intimate and continuous; their accounts of it frequently demonstrate a better knowledge of social conditions than those of casual observers. Medical surveys prepared by physicians portray the living conditions of an area. Reports issued by local or national health institutions are official documents for the study of the public health movement. Works on public hygiene reveal the habits of a people; popular health journals afford light on the habits and customs of their time. Introductions to medical works reflect the intellectual tone of a period.

- 129 **Heaton, Herbert**, "Recent Developments in Economic History," XLVII, July 1942, 727-746.

An intensive study of old fields, an extension of the ground covered, and a shift of interest and of emphasis characterize the research done in economic history in the last decade. The present trend, following that of Clapham, Unwin, Gay, Pirenne, Sée and Strieder, continues to move away from "politico-institutional economic history" and is aided by the appearance of new kinds of material and by the adoption of new tools, the chief of which are geography, technology, and statistics.

IG. Cross References

- 1102 Ambler, Charles H., "The Cleavage between Eastern and Western Virginia."

And items 62, 122, and 1197.

II. HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION MEETINGS**A. Meetings of the American Historical Association**

- 130 "The Annual Meeting of the American Historical Association," III, April 1898, 405-417.

At the thirteenth annual meeting of the American Historical Association, held at Cleveland in December, 1897, discussion centered more around practical topics than around "formal contributions to knowledge." Examples of problems are: to what extent sources could be profitably used in the teaching of history below the graduate school, the relation of the teaching of economic history to the teaching of political economy, and the function of local historical societies.

- 131 "The New Haven Meeting of the American Historical Association," IV, April 1899, 409-422.

Several "steps of progress" are recorded in the account of the New Haven meeting of the American Historical Association in December, 1898. Such "steps" included the permanence of the *American Historical Review*, the formation of a committee for the historical study of colonial dependencies, a committee to supervise the bibliographical work of the Association and a "General Committee" which was to supervise activities concerning membership, local interests, and historical inquiries. Mention is also made of the report from the important "Committee of Seven" which had been organized to investigate the teaching of history in secondary schools.

- 132 "The Boston Meeting of the American Historical Association," V, April 1900, 423-437.

The Boston meeting of the American Historical Association, held in 1899, was concerned chiefly with "modern American problems." Papers were presented by Henry E. Bourne, James Ford Rhodes, Charles Francis Adams, and others.

- 133 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Detroit and Ann Arbor," VI, April 1901, 413-428.

Of the six sessions of the Detroit and Ann Arbor meeting of the American Historical Association in December 1900, one was devoted to addresses by Richard T. Ely, who spoke upon "Competition its Nature, Permanency and Beneficence," and by James Ford Rhodes, who spoke upon the "Writing of History." Other sessions were devoted to the history of the Crusades and the East, Church history, Western history, and British and American history.

- 134 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Washington," VII, April 1902, 421-436.

Arrangements to visit the State and War Department libraries and the Library of Congress were made for those attending the meeting of the American Historical Association at Washington in 1901. One of the most valuable sessions of the meeting considered topics in Southern history. Lyon G. Tyler of William and Mary College recounted the history of the records of the London Company. John S. Bassett of Trin-

ity College, North Carolina, described relations between the Virginia planter and London merchants. The place of Nathaniel Macon in Southern history was discussed by William E. Dodd of Randolph-Macon College. An informal discussion on the teaching of history in the South concluded the session.

- 135 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Philadelphia," VIII, April 1903, 409-425.

At the first evening session of the eighteenth annual meeting in 1902, Captain A. T. Mahan, President, discussed the subject "Subordination in Historical Treatment." The Saturday morning session was devoted to American history. James Schouler discussed the social and industrial conditions of the Revolutionary Period in his paper, "The American of 1775." James Sullivan discussed "The Antecedents of the Declaration of Independence." J. Franklin Jameson's contribution was a paper on "Letters from the Federal Convention of 1787." European history was represented by such discussions as "Some French Communes in the Light of their Charters" by Earle W. Dow, "Municipal Problems in Medieval Switzerland" by John M. Vincent. Diplomatic history was emphasized in subjects suggested by the then proposed Isthmian Canal.

- 136 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at New Orleans," IX, April 1904, 437-455.

The nineteenth annual meeting of the Association in 1903 was influenced by the centennial anniversary of the acquisition of Louisiana. The papers of the first session held at the Cabildo dealt chiefly with the Louisiana Purchase. William M. Sloane of Columbia University discussed "World Aspects of the Louisiana Purchase." Honorable William Wirt Howe of New Orleans read a paper on "The Civil and the Common Law in the Louisiana Purchase." "New Orleans and the Aaron Burr Conspiracy" was the subject of Walter F. McCaleb's paper. Other sessions discussed topics bearing on the history of the South or Southwest. At the business meeting, a Pacific Coast Branch of the American Historical Association was established.

- 137 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Chicago," X, April 1905, 489-510.

At the meeting in Chicago, the discussions of the round-table conferences dealing with the teaching of history in elementary schools, the coordination of activities of local historical associations, the doctor's degree, and the doctoral dissertation in history were of particular interest. The last session—a joint meeting with the American Economic Association—was concerned chiefly with discussion of plans for the writing of an economic history of the United States under the supervision of Carroll D. Wright, who was then Head of the Department of Economics of the Carnegie Institution.

- 138 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Baltimore," XI, April 1906, 491-514.

"Good as several of the papers were and large as was the general audience which they elicited, it seems probable that the four round-table conferences awakened a keener interest on the part of the members." Discussion at these conferences centered chiefly around history in the elementary schools, history in the college curriculum, and problems of state and local historical societies.

- 139 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Providence," XII, April 1907, 483-506.

Comment upon the meeting of the American Historical Association meeting at Providence described it as having a too full program. Simeon E. Baldwin, President of the Association, chose "Religion Still the Key to History" as the subject for his inaugural address. European history was represented by discussions of Protestantism and tolerance, the Ren-

naissance of the twelfth century, the Greek renaissance in Italy, and others. At the sessions devoted to American history, the impressment of seamen preceding the War of 1812, the attitude of Thaddeus Stevens toward the conduct of the Civil War, and the activity of William Penn were subjects for discussion. Claude Van Tyne read a paper on "Sovereignty in the American Revolution." George L. Beer discussed the colonial policy of Great Britain from 1760 to 1765. A joint session with the New England Teachers Association was devoted to considering a report prepared by a "Committee of Eight" on history in elementary schools.

- 140 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Madison," XIII, April 1908, 433-458.

At the twenty-third annual meeting, J. Franklin Jameson, as President of the American Historical Association, delivered the inaugural address, "The American Acta Sanctorum." Frederick J. Turner presided at one of the conferences of the second session which was concerned with the relation of geography and history. "Geographical Location as a Factor in History" introduced by Ellen Churchill Semple and "Physiography as a Factor in Community Life" introduced by Orin Grant Libby were subjects which fostered discussion. "The Co-operation of State Historical Societies in the Gathering of Material in Foreign Archives" was the topic of foremost discussion at the conference devoted to the problems of state and local historical societies. Five fields of work—medieval European history, modern European history, Oriental history and politics, the constitutional history of the United States, and United States history since 1865—were discussed at round-table conferences. During the Madison meeting, the Mississippi Valley Historical Association was formed.

- 141 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Washington and Richmond," XIV, April 1909, 429-452.

The sessions of the twenty-fourth annual meeting held at Washington, D. C. and Richmond in 1908, were concerned with discussions of materials suitable for future research as well as with the presentation of formal papers. The value of census materials to the study of American economic and social history was discussed by Joseph A. Hill of the U. S. Census Bureau. James Ford Rhodes and men of the press discussed the historical use of American newspapers. Other conferences dealt with the relation of geography to history, teaching of history in the secondary schools, research in English history, and in Southern history. The final session of the Association at Richmond was of unusual interest because of the discussion of the Wilderness Campaign by Northern and Southern scholars.

- 142 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at New York," XV, April 1910, 475-495.

To mark their twenty-five years of existence, the American Historical Association and the American Economic Association planned a joint celebration at New York in 1909. Meetings were held at the Hotel Waldorf-Astoria, Columbia University, the New York Historical Society and at Carnegie Hall. The report describes both the festive and more serious activities of the meeting.

- 143 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Indianapolis," XVI, April 1911, 453-475.

The sessions held at Indianapolis combined the activities of the American Historical Association, the Mississippi Valley Historical Association, the Ohio Valley Historical Association and the North Central History Teachers' Association. Discussions were devoted to ancient history, modern European history, Latin American diplomatic relations, and local historical societies. The presidential address "Social Forces in American History" was delivered by Frederick J. Turner. At the public sessions emphasis was placed upon political events of 1860-1861, marking the fiftieth anniversary of the winter of Secession.

- 144 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Buffalo and Ithaca," XVII, April 1912, 453-476.

Sessions of the meeting at Buffalo and Ithaca in 1911 were held in concert with the American Political Science Association. "Some Frontier Problems" was the topic for discussion at a joint session held with the Mississippi Valley Historical Association. A conference for archivists dealt mainly with the problem of protecting archives from fire and with the administration of the archives of Canada. At one session Herbert E. Bolton of the University of California outlined the importance of the Southwest in national and international history; the problems and available materials for the study of the history of the Southwest were also discussed. Canadian history was emphasized. The American Historical Association's adoption of the *History Teacher's Magazine* was described as an important new step.

- 145 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Boston and Cambridge," XVIII, April 1913, 449-472.

Discussion of practical problems pertaining to the work of archivists, to historical bibliography, to military history, to ancient, medieval, modern, and American history was a characteristic feature of the twenty-eighth annual meeting of the Association in 1912. The delivery of the presidential address, "History as Literature," by Theodore Roosevelt was an outstanding event.

- 146 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Charleston and Columbia," XIX, April 1914, 467-493.

"In quality the programme was excellent, in quantity, as is usually the case, excessive." Two general sessions, a joint session with the Mississippi Valley Historical Association and eleven conferences dealing with varieties of historical materials; social and industrial aspects of modern history, American religious history, military history, the relations of the United States and Mexico, and colonial commerce constituted the meeting held in 1913. Among those addressing the conferences was Franklin D. Roosevelt, then Assistant Secretary of the Navy.

- 147 J. F. J., (J. Franklin Jameson), "The Meeting of the American Historical Association in Chicago," XX, April 1915, 503-527.

The sessions of the meeting of December, 1914, held at the Auditorium Hotel, the Fine Arts Building, and the Art Institute of Chicago were devoted to ancient history, American history, the medieval history of England, modern English history, the history of Napoleonic Europe, and the history of the relations between Europe and the Orient. James H. Breasted's illustrated lecture on the "Eastern Mediterranean and the Earliest Civilizations in Europe" and Frederick J. Turner's analysis of the "Significance of Sectionalism in American History" were notable contributions.

- 148 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association in California," XXI, October 1915, 1-11.

An additional or intercalary meeting was held in the summer of 1915, the time of the Panama-Pacific International Exposition. All papers and discussions were related to subjects concerning the Pacific Ocean or Panama. Papers of distinguished value in the evening session included those of H. Morse Stephens, "Conflict of European Nations in the Pacific Ocean"; of Señor Don Rafael Altamira y Crevea, representative of the Spanish government, "Spain and the Pacific Ocean"; of Hon. John F. Davis, "History of California"; and of Mr. Taussig, "The American Inter-oceanic Canal; an Historical Sketch of the Canal Idea." Briefer papers dealt with the Philippine Islands and their history as a part of the history of the Pacific Ocean area; the Northwestern states, British Columbia, and Alaska in their relation with the Pacific Ocean; Spanish America and the Pacific; exploration of the Northern Pacific Ocean; and the settlement of California, Japan, and Australia.

- 149 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Washington," XXI, April 1916, 441-467.

Sessions of the meeting of the American Historical Association at Washington, D. C. in 1915, extended over a period of four days. Headquarters were at the New Willard Hotel. Meetings devoted to special fields of history were concerned with the "Economic Causes of International Rivalries and Wars in Ancient Times," "Medieval Colonization," "The Historical Aspects of Nationalism," and various aspects of American history. In addition to these sessions, a meeting was held to promote interest in and demonstrate the needs and possibilities for a National Archive Building in Washington, D. C. Business matters were unusually important at this meeting because of the interest in the report of the "Committee of Nine" which had been appointed the previous year "to consider the constitution, organization, and procedure of the Association, and the relationship between the Association and the *American Historical Review*."

- 150 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Cincinnati," XXII, April 1917, 509-534.

The program of the thirty-second annual meeting of the American Historical Association held December 27-30, 1916, was comprised of seventeen formal sessions, conferences of archivists, of state and local historical societies, a conference for the discussion of the field and method of the elementary course in college history and a conference of teachers of history in the secondary schools. Especial attention was assigned to the history of recent periods. These sessions were devoted to "Recent Phases of the European Balance of Power," "Great Peace Congresses of the Nineteenth Century," "The American Period in the Philippines," and the modern and medieval history of Constantinople, China, and Japan. An informal conference was held by members interested in the foundation of a center for university studies in history, political economy and political science in Washington, D. C.

- 151 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Philadelphia," XXIII, April 1918, 505-530.

Reflecting the influence of the World War, the following comment was made on the Association's meeting at Philadelphia in 1917: "A national historical society with no thoughts above the level of antiquarianism might better not convene in such days as these, but a national historical society with the right spirit could not hold an annual meeting without sending its members home heartened to the performance of every patriotic duty, nor without extending in some measure throughout the nation the inspiring and clarifying influence of sound historical thinking and right patriotic feeling." Other reflections of the influence of current events upon the course of the meeting were seen in the choice of subjects discussed at the conferences and sessions. "The Collection and Preservation of War Records" was the theme of the conference of archivists. "The Russian Revolution," a topic uppermost at that time in most minds, was introduced by Alexander Petrunkevitch's description of the role of the intellectuals in the movement in Russia, by Samuel N. Harper's paper, "Forces Behind the Russian Revolution of March, 1917," and an account of the "First Week of the Revolution of March, 1917," by an eye-witness, Frank A. Golder.

- 152 "The American Historical Association, 1919," XXIV, April 1919, 349-357.

A report of the meeting of the Executive Council of the American Historical Association held in New York in 1919 is included instead of the usual account of the sessions which were postponed because of the epidemic of influenza in Cleveland.

- 153 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Cleveland," XXV, April 1920, 369-390.

At the meeting held in 1919 at the Hollenden Hotel educational problems took an important place. The teaching of economic history, the use of sources in teaching, the opportunities for historical study in Europe, and the functions of state and local historical societies were subjects considered. A joint conference of representatives of state and local historical societies and of state organizations formed to deal with each state's part in the history of the World War, discussed the preservation and publication of war materials. The sessions concerned with contemporary politics were significant. Charles H. Haskins and Robert H. Lord, who had assisted at the Paris Conference, took part. The organization of the American Catholic Historical Association was an achievement of the Cleveland meeting.

- 154 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Washington," XXVI, April 1921, 413-439.

The thirty-fifth annual meeting was the twelfth held in Washington, D. C. When describing its activities, the writer comments upon the unusual interest shown in the luncheon conference planned for informal discussion. Of special interest were those devoted to Latin America, the study and teaching of economic history, and a discussion of opportunities for historical research in Washington, D. C. Papers read at the formal meetings are described as being of less importance and excellence than the average. Sessions included ancient Russian history, modern and contemporary European history, and American history. One session was devoted to commemorating the tercentenary of the Pilgrim Fathers.

- 155 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at St. Louis," XXVII, April 1922, 405-425.

This survey of the meeting of 1921, in accordance with customary form, describes the business meeting, the practical conferences, and formal sessions. Topics for discussion at the luncheon conferences included the history of science, the World War, English history, American colonial history, Hispanic-American history, and the history of the Far East. Formal sessions were devoted to the history of civilization, economic history, agricultural history, military history, the history of France, the history of the American Revolution, and Europe after the Congress of Vienna.

- 156 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at New Haven," XXVIII, April 1923, 417-439.

In this account depicting the Association's activities at the meeting held in 1922, a comparison with the meeting held in 1898 is made. The address "Some Aspects of Our Foreign Relations" delivered by the Secretary of State, Mr. Hughes, was described as the most striking event of the whole meeting. Comments concerning the papers read reveal an emphasis upon American and ancient history.

- 157 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Columbus," XXIX, April 1924, 423-448.

The American Historical Association meeting held at Columbus in 1923 was comprised of seventeen sessions. These sessions, characterized by much diversification, dealt with problems in legal history, English history, French history, diplomatic history of the World War, early diplomatic history of the United States, history of individual states, influence of Christian missions in history, and subjects related to the Monroe Declaration of 1823.

- 158 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Richmond," XXX, April 1925, 451-477.

Considerable comment is made upon the unusual social entertainment provided by the residents of Richmond in addition to the usual summaries

of the papers read and the account of the business meeting. Papers read at the formal sessions dealt with ancient history, medieval history, English history, the history of the Far East, American colonial history, the history of Virginia, the history of the Confederacy, and the question—"What remains to be done for the development of the history of the British Empire?"

- 159 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Ann Arbor," XXXI, April 1926, 415-442.

This report of the Ann Arbor meeting of December, 1925, includes the usual report of the business meeting and the summaries of the papers read. Sessions were occupied with studies in ancient and medieval history, personalities of Tudor-Stuart Restoration in France, American colonial history, Union problems of the Civil War, Canadian-American relations chiefly of the time of the Panama Congress, and agricultural history. A general meeting at which Guy S. Ford considered the purpose and future of the American Historical Association is described as one of the most important.

- 160 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Rochester," XXXII, April 1927, 429-454.

The report of the meeting held at Rochester, New York, in 1926, emphasizes the practicality of the problems discussed. Among such problems were Professor Burr's "Word of Caution," which warned medievalists from false estimates of the Middle Ages based on sentimental considerations, W. E. Lingelbach's discussion of the use of modern diplomatic documents, Henry E. Bourne's treatment of "Problems of Research in the Economic and Social History of France during the Revolution," and M. W. Jernegan's report on "Productivity on the Part of Doctors of Philosophy in History."

- 161 J. F. J., "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Washington," XXXIII, April 1928, 517-543.

General aspects of history were discussed in Henry Osborn Taylor's address, "A Layman's View of History," and in a session which included papers grouped under the title "History and Science." At luncheons and dinner conferences, various subjects were discussed, the promotion of research, the teaching of history in the public schools, British history, "Untilled Fields" in the history of the Far East, Hispanic-American history, modern European history, the "Dictionary of American Biography." Papers at the formal sessions included subjects in ancient history, the Middle Ages, Hispanic-American history of the eighteenth century, a revaluation of the period immediately preceding the Civil War, American diplomatic history and contemporary Slavonic history.

- 162 "The Meeting of the American Historical Association at Indianapolis," XXXIV, April 1929, 455-484.

The summary of the meeting of the Association compares the 1928 meeting with that held in 1910. Special features were the recognition given to prehistory, Oriental history, and the sessions devoted to the American Revolution.

- 163 H. E. B. (Henry E. Bourne), "The North Carolina Meeting of the American Historical Association," XXXV, April 1930, 481-506.

A review of the twenty-two sessions and seven luncheon conferences of the meeting held at Chapel Hill and Durham in 1929, includes significant details concerning the activities of the Commission on Social Studies, the results of the experimental session devoted to the discussion of one theme—Dixon Ryan Fox's "Synthetic Principle in American History," and the papers read on ancient history, the Middle Ages and the

Renaissance, modern Europe, recent Russia-American foreign policy, American colonial history, Jacksonian democracy, and the history of the South.

- 164 H. E. B., "The Boston Meeting of the American Historical Association," XXXVI, April 1931, 495-514.

When reviewing the activities of the forty-fifth annual meeting, the writer comments upon the sessions concerned with the problem of productive scholarship, the two sessions devoted to a single theme—one, the French Revolution, the other, Simon Bolívar, and the sessions devoted to ancient history, the Middle Ages, a survey of the most important tasks still to be completed in English history, Europe in Africa, recent events in the Far East or the Pacific area, New England in the eighteenth century, organized religion in American life, new viewpoints in Southern history, and American maritime history.

- 165 H. E. B., "The Minneapolis Meeting of the American Historical Association," XXXVII, April 1932, 429-450.

The writer has made the following comment: "It was appropriate that a meeting held in a state where the agrarian interest is strong enough to elect a Farmer-Labor senator, a state whose history illustrates the problems of the frontier and of immigration, should deal primarily with these aspects of American history." In addition to these problems, aspects of nineteenth century liberalism, American foreign relations, medieval culture, European economic history, nineteenth century England, and diplomacy in the World War were discussed.

- 166 H. E. B., "The Toronto Meeting of the American Historical Association," XXXVIII, April 1933, 431-447.

The program of the meeting at Toronto included many topics of mutual interest to Canadians and Americans such as "Boundary Provisions of the Quebec Act" or "Canada and the Peace Settlement of 1782." Among other topics, the question of international indebtedness gained recognition because of current analogies. Problems involved in instruction in history, in the assembling of material and in the publication of documents, were also discussed at the meeting.

- 167 H. E. B., "The Urbana Meeting of the American Historical Association," XXXIX, April 1934, 423-441.

This account of the forty-eighth annual meeting notes the emphasis placed upon general sessions and the aim to achieve greater unity of thought in the special sessions. Themes illustrative of such aims included "Depressions and Recoveries," "Dictators and Dictatorships," the "Advance of Civilization into the Middle West," "Foreign Interests in the Caribbean," "Public Opinion and Foreign Affairs."

- 168 H. E. B., "The Fiftieth Anniversary Meeting," XL, April 1935, 423-438.

The program of the "Fiftieth Anniversary Meeting" was concerned almost as much with problems of the present as those of the past. American historiography and history and philosophy were appropriately discussed and emphasized.

- 169 H. E. B., "The Chattanooga Meeting of the American Historical Association," XLI, April 1936, 439-457.

At the meeting in 1935, a variety of papers were devoted to Southern history. A general session was addressed by David E. Lilienthal, director of the Tennessee Valley Authority, but the relationship of Chattanooga to the "T.V.A." did not focus equal attention on problems of the New Deal. Studies in ancient, medieval, modern, English, Church and Hispanic-American history were also presented at the sessions.

- 170 **The Editors, "The Association at Providence," XLII, April 1937, 419-442.**

The program of the fifty-first annual meeting was not built around a central theme. The papers presented dealt with subjects in social, economic, cultural, religious, educational, literary, scientific, political, constitutional, diplomatic and military history. They ranged chronologically from ancient Athens to the present. "Prehistory" was represented by discussion of the Mayas.

- 171 **"The Philadelphia Meeting of the American Historical Association," XLIII, April 1938, 727-728.**

The American Historical Association meeting held at Philadelphia in 1937 was part of a national celebration of the sesquicentennial anniversary of the framing and adoption of the Constitution. With that event in view, the program was centered around the Constitution's background, its interpretation, and its influence. In view of the fact that arrangements had been made for the publication of the papers read at the meeting, no special account of them was published in the *Review*, but only a brief summary in the "Historical News" section.

- 172 **The Editors, "History and Historians at Chicago," XLIV, April 1939, 481-507.**

The program of the fifty-third annual meeting embodied no philosophy of history. The round-table discussions were the novel and most distinctive feature of the program; they included discussion in the following historical fields: ancient, medieval, early modern (to 1789), recent modern, English, Far Eastern, Slavonic, Latin-American, United States 1492-1865, and United States 1865-1938.

- 173 **The Editors, "Educating Clio," XLV, April 1940, 505-532.**

In a general summary of the papers read at the 1940 meeting in Washington, D. C., the authors give a detailed condensation of the various discussions. The greatest emphasis, throughout the meeting, was laid on the relation between history and the other social sciences, and particularly the contributions which the latter can make in broadening the historian's perspective.

- 174 **Clarkson, Jesse Dunsmore, "Escape to the Present," XLVI, April 1941, 523-559.**

The account of the fifty-fifth annual meeting of the American Historical Association in New York discusses the details of its program's four dominant themes: "The Historical Profession," "War and Society," "The Common Man," and "New Interpretations."

- 175 **Sachse, William L., "Echoes from Chicago," XLVII, April 1942, 459-487.**

"Echoes from Chicago" is an account of the annual meeting held in Chicago, December, 1941, and includes abstracts of the papers read and accounts of co-operative reporters who attended the sessions. Papers dealt with America's role in war and peace, world-wide modern developments, Pan-American problems and the study, teaching, writing, and popularization of history.

- 176 **Ford, Guy Stanton, "Your Business," XLVIII, April 1943, 459-494.**

"Your Business," a substitute for the usual report of the American Historical Association's annual meeting, was an account of the Association's current affairs. Mr. Ford commented upon the cancellation of the Columbus meeting at the request of the federal transportation authorities and included an account of the "abnormal" meeting held at Washington, D. C.

- 177 **Mendenhall, Thomas C., and Ford, Guy Stanton, "Carrying On, Echoes from New York,"** XLIX, April 1944, 564-597.

A report of the Association's fifty-eighth annual meeting held at New York. Postwar reconstruction was the general topic of discussion. The difficulties of the postwar world and the use of historical knowledge to solve them were avenues explored.

- 178 **Stearns, Raymond P., and Ford, Guy Stanton, "The Year's Business,"** L, April 1945, 635-664.

Mr. Stearns gives a summary account of the program carried through in the various sessions and conferences of the two-day meeting, December 28-29, 1944. Mr. Ford reports as Executive Secretary on the business of his office and the actions taken by the Executive Committee and the Council. The latter had elected ten foreign scholars as honorary members. As editor, Mr. Ford recounts the story of the founding of the *Review* fifty years ago.

B. International Historical Meetings

- 179 **Haskins, Charles H., "The International Historical Congress at Berlin,"** XIV, October 1908, 1-8.

The Congress was divided into eight sections: Oriental history, history of Greece and Rome, political history of the Middle Ages, and modern times, medieval and modern "Kulturgeschichte," legal and economic history, Church history, archaeology and auxiliary sciences.

- 180 **Jameson, J. Franklin, "The International Congress of Historical Studies Held at London,"** XVIII, July 1913, 679-691.

The meeting of the International Congress of Historical Studies held in April, 1913, arranged by the British Academy in co-operation with universities and other institutions was organized into nine sections: Oriental history including Egyptology; Greek and Roman history and Byzantine history; medieval history; modern history, including the history of colonies and dependencies and naval and military history; religious and ecclesiastical history; legal and economic history; history of medieval and modern civilization; archaeology; and related and auxiliary sciences. English, French, German, and Italian were the recognized languages of the meeting. General sessions for the reading of papers were held at Lincoln's Inn and the University of London. Topics discussed were generally such as would be of interest to an audience prevalingly English.

- 181 **Chapman, Charles E., "The American Congress of Bibliography and History at Buenos Aires,"** XXII, October 1916, 83-86.

The Congress met in July, 1916, as a part of a program arranged to celebrate the one hundredth anniversary of the declaration of independence of the Spanish colonies of the Rio de la Plata. Outstanding in the meeting's achievements were the organization of the Congress as a permanent body and the establishment of the American Institute of Bibliography whose aim is the collection and distribution of data concerning books and articles about the Americas.

- 182 **Jameson, J. F., "The Anglo-American Conference of Professors of History,"** XXVII, October 1921, 58-63.

Brief treatment of the Conference, and its practical nature, which accompanied the opening of the Institute of Historical Research at the University of London—July 11-16, 1921.

- 183 Leland, Waldo G., "The International Congress of Historical Sciences, held at Brussels," XXVIII, July 1923, 639-655.

Invitations to participate in the International Congress of Historical Sciences held in 1923 were extended to scholars of countries which were members of the League of Nations, to countries which were neutral in the World War and to the United States. Material for discussion including over three hundred papers was divided into thirteen principal divisions: Oriental history, Greek and Roman history, Byzantine studies, history of the Middle Ages, modern history, history of religions, history of ancient, medieval, and modern law, economic history, history of civilization, history of art, historical method, auxiliary sciences, documentation of the history of the world during World War I, and archives and publications of historical texts.

- 184 Leland, Waldo G., "The International Committee of Historical Sciences," XXXI, July 1926, 726-731.

- 185 Leland, Waldo G., "The Anglo-American Conference of Historians, London, July 12-16, 1926," XXXII, October 1926, 56-61.

- 186 Jameson, J. F., "The International Historical Congress at Oslo" (1928), XXXIV, January 1929, 265-273.

- 187 Fling, Fred Morrow, "Seventh International Congress of Historical Sciences, Warsaw, August 21-28, 1933," XXXIX, January 1934, 269-274.

The author in this report of the meeting expresses his reaction to it: "I have a feeling that something is fundamentally wrong with the organization. The Congress certainly reflects faithfully the present state of historical research; it has become atomized. Atomized at a time when humanity is perishing for a vision of history as a whole, which the historian alone can give."

- 188 Leland, Waldo G., "The Third Anglo-American Conference of Historians, London, July 13-18, 1931," XXXVII, October 1937, 58-64.

- 189 Leland, Waldo G., "The Congress of Historical Sciences at Zurich," XLIV, January 1939, 290-293.

An account of the Eighth International Congress of Historical Sciences held at Zurich in 1938. The following sections comprised the program: pre-history, ancient history and classical archaeology, auxiliary sciences and archives, numismatics, medieval and Byzantine history, modern history to 1914, history of non-European countries, religious and ecclesiastical history, history of law and institutions, economic and social history, military history, history of philosophy, fine arts, and literature, history of science, historical method, theory, and teaching, historical demography.

III. EUROPEAN HISTORY (INCLUDING ALSO THE NEAR EAST)

A. Ancient History

1. Miscellaneous and General

- 190 Breasted, James Henry, "The New Crusade," XXXIV, January 1929, 215-236.

A survey of the plans, organization, and accomplishments of the Oriental Institute. Professor Breasted suggests that the monuments of

the ancient East are calling for a "New Crusade," and the task of saving them for science is the greatest responsibility confronting the historian anywhere in the range of historical research.

- 191 **Westermann, William Linn**, "The Ptolemies and the Welfare of Their Subjects," XLIII, January 1938, 270-287.

Two divergent judgments have arisen among scholars concerning the Ptolemaic dynasty and its three hundred years of rule over Egypt. One group of scholars asserts that the Egyptians were bitterly oppressed; and "as if in condemnation" that the Ptolemies as rulers made no provision for the education of the Egyptians; that no legislation was passed in the interest of public health affecting them; that the oppressed Egyptians seldom demanded redress for their grievances; and that Greeks and other aliens were afforded a privileged position acting as overseer of Egyptian labor. The other group adopts different conclusions regarding the treatment of the Egyptians and the direction and results of Ptolemaic legislation; it considers more the social and economic factors involved behind these issues. Westermann, representing the latter group, discusses to what extent the rulers identified their own interests with the welfare of their Egyptian subjects. He finds evidence of "benevolent paternalism guided by common sense" in some of the rulers' concessions.

- 192 **Jasny, N.**, "Competition Among Grains in Classical Antiquity," XLVII, July 1942, 747-764.

A discussion of the struggle between grains, chiefly barley and wheat, for acreage and consumption in the ancient world markets of the Mediterranean area. "The victory of naked wheat in the classical world . . . was attained not so much by the strength of wheat as by the weakness of its rivals."

- 193 **Olmstead, Albert T.**, "Land Tenure in the Ancient Orient," XXXII, October 1926, 1-9.

Regarding land tenure in the ancient Orient, Professor Olmstead concludes that there can be no simple formula to explain its whole development, that a large part of the territory was farmed under conditions approaching those found on the manors of medieval Europe, but with many variations in detail, and that there was no little ownership in fee simple.

- 194 **Barton, George A.**, "The Historical Results of Recent Exploration in Palestine and Iraq," XXXIII, July 1928, 759-783.

New light was shed on old problems as the result of the explorations and excavations carried on in Palestine and Iraq from 1919 to 1927. Mr. Barton's study lists these excavations and discusses their contribution to an understanding of such problems as the origin of the Hebrew people, the authenticity of the Biblical dating of Abraham, the possibility of historical bases for the Biblical account of the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah, and the origin of the Phoenician alphabet.

- 195 **Rostovtzeff, Michael I.**, "South Russia in the Prehistoric and Classical Period," XXVI, January 1921, 203-224.

The author gives a short account of the political, social and artistic development of South Russia during the prehistoric and so-called classical period, that is, till the epoch of the great migrations. His aim is not to depict historical life as it developed on the shores of the Black Sea, but to point out, in the light of evidence furnished by archaeological excavations, classical authors, and epigraphical and numismatic monuments, the most important problems which arise from the study of these documents.

- 196 **Olmstead, Albert T.**, "Oriental Imperialism," XXIII, July 1918, 755-762.

"Restatement of our ideals in government and especially with reference to that phase which deals with smaller, backward, or dependent

peoples is imperatively demanded by the present world-crisis." To secure the foundation for such restatement, Mr. Olmstead recommends a study of the history of the ancient Near East, for in it existed the elements from which arose present-day conceptions. In the ancient states of the Egyptians, Babylonians, and Assyrians existed imperialism. "There is a direct line of apostolic succession from the priest-god of the early Orient to the divine right of the twentieth century rulers, from the first feeble attempt to enforce tribute from the conquered rival to our own enlightened government of dependencies."

- 197 Westermann, William Linn, "New Historical Documents in Greek and Roman History," XXXV, October 1929, 14-32.

A summary describing the contents and suggesting the importance of documents brought to light by excavations conducted shortly after 1918. Among them are: seven inscriptions from Cyrene ranging in date from 4 B.C. to 3 A.D. (one of which contains a list of donations made to the cities of Hellas by the Cyreneans during a period of food scarcity) published by Silvio Ferri and Ulrich von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff; an instrument of loan made by an Egyptian-Greek capitalist to five men engaged in trade to ancient Punt, published in 1925 and shedding light upon the penetration of the Eastern Mediterranean area by Western traders, and a Greek inscription published by G. Oliverio in 1927 and containing four edicts of Augustus 7-6 B.C. and a fifth edict in which he published a decree of the Roman Senate of 4 B.C. All are important to the study of problems connected with the provincial administration and legal organization of the Roman Empire under Augustus Caesar.

- 198 Westermann, William Linn, "Between Slavery and Freedom," L, January 1945, 213-227.

The President of the American Historical Association, in this address to the Chicago meeting of 1944, talks of that group of men who through history have stood between the wholly slave and the wholly free, and of the methods by which increased freedom was won. Chief criterion of freedom is analyzed as personal mobility. Examples are chosen largely from ancient history, but some from recent times bring the idea up to date.

- 199 Tambllyn, W. F., "British Druidism and the Roman War Policy," XV, October 1909, 21-36.

In this study of British Druidism and its influence upon the Roman invasion and annexation of Britain, Tambllyn concludes that evidence found in ancient writings such as Tacitus' *Annals*, supporting the existence of druids in Britain, is insufficient to prove that they ever existed there. Such evidence does not prove that there was a British order of druids, nor that it was united with the Gallic druids in a pan-Celtic religion which determined the Roman invasion.

IIIA1. Notes and Suggestions

- 200 Olmstead, A. T., "The Reform of Josiah and Its Secular Aspects," XX, April 1915, 566-570.

IIIA1. Cross References

See items 102 and 1083.

2. Greece

- 201 Smith, Goldwin, "The Age of Homer," VII, October 1901, 1-10.

After attempting to determine the date of the age of Homer, the author concludes that "the perfection of his art, the advance of national culture which the existence of such art implies, the refinement of his sentiment, the picture of civilization which he presents and his treatment of the popular religion, point to a later date and one nearer to the Ionian lyricists and philosophers than Herodotus believed." Herodotus had placed Homer and Hesiod four hundred years before his own time.

- 202 Hudson, Harris Gary, "The Shield Signal at Marathon," LXII, July 1937, 443-459.

"It is the object of this paper to suggest that the Persians, having failed to induce the Athenians by means of cavalry assaults to leave a sheltered position and accept battle in the plain, re-embarked a part of their forces including the cavalry, and that it was a signal from an Athenian outpost informing Miltiades of the Persian movement that indicated to him the opportune moment for attack."

- 203 Perrin, Bernadotte, "The Rehabilitation of Theramenes," IX, July 1904, 649-669.

Prevalent misjudgment by modern writers of Greek history prompted this "rehabilitation" of Theramenes, the Athenian statesman and patriot. Judging from activities in four great events: the revolution of the Four Hundred (411 B.C.), the restoration of the Athenian supremacy in the Aegean Sea (410-407 B.C.), the battle of the Arginusae (406 B.C.) and the establishment of the Thirty in Athens (404-403 B.C.), Theramenes in this rehabilitation is described as a sincere patriot and good citizen. Two principles governed his policy—a limited democracy and financial reform.

- 204 Ferguson, William S., "Legalized Absolutism En Route from Greece to Rome," XVIII, October 1912, 29-47.

Deification of Greek kings and Roman emperors is here regarded as a political device adopted to legalize absolutism rather than as a manifestation of religious life. To conciliate city autonomy with a powerful protective government, Alexander the Great had requested each city in his empire to list him among its gods in order to secure the right to interfere in its affairs. The practice was adopted by the Roman government. By exploiting the positions and rights conveyed to it by deification, the Roman Republic escaped the need of forming permanent treaties with the Greek states.

- 205 Ferguson, W. S., "Polis and Idia in Periclean Athens," XLV, January 1940, 269-278.

A study of the relationship between the Athenian's public service to his city-state, and his private activities.

- 206 West, Allen Brown, "The Tribute Lists and the Non-Tributary Members of the Delian League," XXXV, January 1930, 267-275.

"The purpose of this paper is to reexamine in the light of the so-called Athenian tribute lists the ancient evidence for the acceptance of tributary status by such members of the Delian League as had originally agreed to furnish ships for the allied fleet. This form of commutation was an important step in the transition by which the Athenian Empire was created out of the Delian League."

- 207 Ferguson, William S., "Greek Imperialism," XXIII, July 1918, 763-771.

This brief digest of Ferguson's book *Greek Imperialism* was one of the papers read at the Philadelphia meeting of 1917. It deals primarily with

the problems of the objects of imperialism. Here, it is "the Greek peoples [who] persisted to the end in refusing to submit to unauthorized external authority"—thus preparing for general subjugation by Rome. "The gist of the whole matter seems to be that the Greeks could not get along without urban autonomy, for that meant without democracy; nor with it, for that meant sooner or later its loss; but that they got along uncommonly well and far notwithstanding."

- 208 Knipfing, John R., "German Historians and Macedonian Imperialism," XXVI, July 1921, 657-671.

Aiming to investigate the spirit and historical accuracy of German historians of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, Dr. Knipfing examines their treatment of history dealing with Philip II and Macedonian imperialism from 358 to 338 B.C. He shows how the views of Niebuhr and Droysen were influenced by the political thought of their day and how the views of the new generation of historians—Julius Beloch, A. Holm, J. Kaerst, Eduard Meyer, Wilamowitz-Moellendorf, Pöhlmann, Kahrstedt, Kessler, Paul Wendland, C. F. Lehmann-Haupt and E. Drerup have been influenced by their own contemporary nationalistic, imperialistic thought. He concludes that this generation of historians interprets the clash between Philip and Demosthenes in the light of that thought and that the work of these historians is greatly in need of revision.

- 209 Ferguson, William S., "Athens and Hellenism," XVI, October 1910, 1-10.

From the third to the first century B.C. the Athenians lost their distinctive cultural and political characteristics, having few great men to carry on their heritage; in so doing they ceased to receive peculiar honor which was henceforth reserved for their ancestors. Oriental deities and cults began to arise in the second century, and Athens reacted to the innovations of Hellenism in politics, government, and social and religious life.

- 210 Rostovtzeff, Michael I., "The Hellenistic World and Its Economic Development," XLI, January 1936, 231-252.

This paper surveys the growth of Greece and its subsidiaries from the time after Alexander's conquest of the East to the final incorporation of Greece into the Roman Empire and summarizes the achievements of the Hellenistic world in economics—it provided uniformity of economic life, initiated mass production, and took first steps in development of capitalism.

IIIA2. Notes and Suggestions

- 211 Botsford, G. W., "The Construction of a Chapter on the Greek Middle Age," XXIII, January 1918, 350-354.
 212 Robinson, C. A., Jr., "Greek Tyranny," XLII, October 1936, 68-71.
 213 Scramuzza, Vincent M., "Greek and English Colonization" [A comparison], XLIV, January 1939, 303-315.

IIIA2. Cross Reference

- 22 von Fritz, Kurt, "The Historian Theopompos."

3. Rome

- 214 Pais, Ettore, "Amunclae a Serpentibus Deletae," XIII, October 1907, 1-10.

Mr. Pais, when discussing the reasons for the destruction of the ancient city of Amyclae or Amunclae suggests topographical conditions and hostile neighbors as the factors which forced the abandonment of the swampy region.

- 215 Platner, Samuel B., "The Credibility of Early Roman History," VII, January 1902, 233-253.

Numerous practices adopted by the Roman historians such as imitation of Greek models, duplication of events in the same or slightly disguised form, and exaltation of individuals, were fruitful sources for fabrication of Roman history before 440 B.C. Errors resulting from such methods must not encourage wholesale rejection of all material as incredible. To reconstruct early Roman history Mr. Platner suggests a method which he believes would reach an approximation of the truth. All versions of an event must first be treated as having equal validity. Sources must then be tested by archaeological evidence, topographical conditions, comparative law, philology, religion, and the known laws of historical development.

- 216 Frank, Tenney, "Roman Historiography Before Caesar," XXXII, January 1927, 232-240.

Since archaeological discoveries at Rome have confirmed much of the tradition which Mommsen and his successors rejected, Tenney Frank in this discussion of Roman historiography suggests that the conception regarding methods of the Roman historians needs revision. Such archaeological evidence makes it possible to estimate what knowledge was available to the annalists and to judge how they made use of such material. Mr. Frank classifies the historians of the republic into three groups with reference to their methods and their employment of their sources: first, the statesmen in the century before Tiberius Gracchus as Fabius Pictor, Cincius Alimentus, C. Acilius, Calpurnius Piso who wrote for the magistrates, senators, and jurists; second, the story-tellers after the Gracchan revolution who popularized history; and the third group of writers, the professional researchers. To test the scientific attitude of the early annalists, the author analyzes their treatment of the first two centuries of the Republic (500-300 B.C.) and the period after 300 B.C.

- 217 Boak, Arthur E. R., "The Extraordinary Commands from 80 to 48 B.C.: A Study in the Origins of the Principate," XXIV, October 1918, 1-25.

The purpose of this study is to trace the history of all extraordinary commands (extraordinary in that they exceeded in some way the "imperia" and required to be created or defined by a special enactment of the Senate or Comitia) from the reforms of Sulla to Caesar's victory at Pharsalia, in order to bring to light the military character of the foundation of the principate. The author considers three periods: I. The Extraordinary Commands under Senatorial Control, 80-70 B.C.; II. The Rivalry of the Senate and the Comitia for the Control of the Extraordinary Commands, 70-60 B.C.; III. The Rival Commands of Pompey, Caesar and Crassus, 60-48 B.C.

- 218 Westermann, W. L., "The Monument of Ancyra," XVII, October 1911, 1-11.

Mr. Westermann suggests a political motive as one of the factors behind the writing of the *Res Gestae*. The *Res Gestae*, a document describing the deeds of Augustus, found on the walls of the temple of Augustus at Ancyra, was written by Augustus to justify the inheritance of power in his family and to influence the Roman Senate's opinion in favor of Tiberius as his successor.

- 219 Botsford, George W., "Roman Imperialism," XXIII, July 1918, 772-778.

This brief study touches upon a few of the more important problems of the imperial government and administration beginning with Julius Caesar. The protection of the world's civilization from external enemies and internal decay is cited as the sum of all imperial problems. That the problem was too great or the capability of Rome too limited for the task is seen in the decline of the civilization. Decline was due to the co-operation of various disintegrating movements. Professor Botsford briefly considers such factors as soil exhaustion, the degradation of the "coloni" to the condition of serfs, lack of industry, and the dwindling of knowledge and mentality so necessary for the solving of the Empire's problems.

- 220 Frank, Tenney, "Mercantilism and Rome's Foreign Policy," XVIII, January 1913, 233-252.

To determine when and to what degree commercialism and capitalism were the important factors in the territorial expansion of Rome is the problem of this study. After re-examination of material which has been usually regarded as evidence of an extensive Roman commerce during the early republic such as Livy's statement that in the seventh century B.C. a maritime colony was planted at Ostia to serve as a Roman port, or inferences drawn from Rome's early commercial treaties with Carthage, or political measures adopted during the last two centuries of the republic, Mr. Frank concludes that the "commercial lobby of Rome" did not direct the foreign policy of the Senate in the second century B.C. A policy of mercantilism scarcely existed at that time.

- 221 Marsh, Frank Burr, "Roman Parties in the Reign of Tiberius," XXXI, January 1926, 233-250.

In his study of party strife between the lesser nobles and the higher aristocracy from 4 A.D. to 37 A.D., Mr. Marsh determines the character of the party of Germanicus and Agrippina, the party of Drusus, and the party of Sejanus, from evidence found in the consular *fasti* and suggests the significance of such strife when applied to the interpretation of the policies and actions of Tiberius. He concludes that the party of Germanicus and Agrippina found its chief support among the lesser nobles, that of Tiberius and Drusus from the higher aristocracy and that of Sejanus probably from the lesser nobles, and that they were all the direct descendants of the parties of the republic. He suggests that an understanding of this strife furnishes a key to explain the tragedy of Tiberius "without imputing to that emperor an incredible depravity."

- 222 Frank, Tenney, "Race Mixture in the Roman Empire," XXI, July 1916, 689-708.

Basing his study in the main upon a minute analysis of 13,900 inscriptions given in Vol. VI of *The Corpus of Latin Inscriptions*, Professor Frank reaches tentative but significant conclusions: that about 90% of the population of the city of Rome during the Empire was of foreign stock—chiefly Greek and Near Eastern; that the birthrate of the slave and freedmen population was at least as high as that of the patricians, who tended to die out at a surprising rate; that manumission was common. From these data the author decides that the spread of Oriental religious cults in the Empire was due to the infiltration of peoples of Oriental heritage; Christianity was a natural compromise reconciliation of the mysticism of the Easterners and the rationalism of the Westerners.

- 223 Westermann, W. L., "The Economic Bases of the Decline of Ancient Culture," XX, July 1915, 723-743.

Slavery, the decrease in population, the ancient system of taxation, the drain of precious metals to the East, Christianity, and the infiltration of barbarians into the Empire, are here refuted as causes for the decline

of the Graeco-Roman civilization. In the inability of the imperial administration to re-establish in the East a free peasantry, quantitatively and materially strong, and to maintain the old free peasantry in the West, lie the basic causes, first of the economic, then of the intellectual decline of the Graeco-Roman civilization.

B. Medieval History (ca. 600-ca. 1400)

1. England

- 224 Adams, George B., "Anglo-Saxon Feudalism," VII, October 1901, 11-35.

In his *Domesday Book and Beyond* Professor Maitland did not directly argue for the existence of feudalism in Saxon England, but he did create the impression that institutionally the Norman Conquest made no important change; that it introduced no important practical differences; and that at most the Conquest brought in institutions which were not different in kind, but institutions which were in stages further along in a development which had long been underway in England itself. This argument for Anglo-Saxon feudalism rested upon the existence before the Conquest of three groups of institutional facts: dependent tenures, private jurisdictions, and military service as an element in land tenure. Mr. Adams maintains that these characteristics of feudalism are not in the line of ancestry of feudalism proper.

- 225 Painter, Sidney, "Castle-Guard," XL, April 1935, 450-459.

In this study of the arrangements which were made for garrisoning the castle in feudal England the author discusses the following questions: what were the feudal arrangements for the custody of royal and baronial castles and on what bases were the original castle-guard services commuted to money payments? He restricts his study to the service owed by knightly tenants.

- 226 Lapsley, Gaillard, "Cornage and Drengage," IX, July 1904, 670-695.

A discussion of the origin and nature of cornage in Durham, Northumberland and Cumberland and its relationship to drengage in the twelfth, thirteenth, and fourteenth centuries. Cornage by its origin and nature was a seigniorial due and not a mode of tenure.

- 227 Neilson, N., "Boon-Services on the Estates of Ramsey-Abbey," II, January 1897, 213-224.

The article discusses in great detail the services which villeins performed on the manorial estates of England in the thirteenth century. These services consisted of week-work which obliged every villein to work on the lord's demesne during the year for a specified number of days per week, and was supplemented by boon-work whenever the week-work was insufficient to cultivate the demesne.

- 228 Larson, Laurence M., "The Political Policies of Cnut as King of England," XV, July 1910, 720-743.

Cnut's English policy was not a continuous one, but a policy which adjusted itself to the course of events in England and his kingdoms of the North. Three periods characterized his reign: the years from his accession in 1016 (or 1017) to his return from Denmark as Danish king in 1020; the period from 1021 to the Norse war in 1026; and the closing years 1027-1035. In the first period Cnut recognized the "status quo"; after 1020 effort was made to reconcile the Saxon to foreign rule; English influence marked the closing years of his reign.

- 229 Adams, George B., "Henry I's Writ Regarding the Local Courts," VIII, April 1903, 487-490.

The writ of Henry I gave evidence that the county court in England was used at this time as the basis of a local king's court. Its composition was similar to that of the later itinerant justice court.

- 230 Neilson, Nellie, "The Early Pattern of the Common Law," XLIX, January 1944, 199-212.

The medieval pattern of England's law was well formulated in the two hundred years that followed the Norman Conquest. The legal interest of that period centers in the growth of the king's justice and its contact with the existing laws and customs. Common law "was the general law as accepted by the courts, not yet clearly enacted in statute in contact with local customs."

- 231 Cannon, Henry L., "The Character and Antecedents of the Charter of Liberties of Henry I," XV, October 1909, 37-46.

The author refutes the argument of Bishop Stubbs that the Charter of 1100, issued by Henry I, was an amplification of the Saxon coronation oath, a deliberate expression of that oath, and marked a promised return to national government. The writer argues that the Charter promised a regulated feudal government with laws as they were at the death of William I; that it resulted from the particular oaths of the King's Coronation; that it was encouraged by preceding Norman oaths; and that the "charter of liberties" evolved from the borough charter. The Charter of Henry was unmistakably of Norman character, was a product of Anglo-Norman conditions, and faithfully portrayed Anglo-Norman ideals of government.

- 232 Haskins, Charles H., "The Government of Normandy under Henry II," pt. I, XX, October 1914, 24-42; pt. II, XX, January 1915, 277-291.

"The point of view of the present paper is English in the sense that it examines the government of Normandy under Henry II, particularly for the light which may be thrown upon the government of England in the same period."

- 233 Orpen, Goddard H., "The Effects of Norman Rule in Ireland 1169-1333," XIX, January 1914, 245-256.

Norman occupation of Ireland during the twelfth century proved beneficial to the country. Norman establishment of an orderly government provided opportunity for social advance and brought security to the landowner. It stimulated the growth of towns and foreign and inland trade. The church was brought into closer conformity with that of western Europe; its wealth was increased and its status raised. Such occupation and government served to undermine Celtic tribalism.

- 234 Thompson, Faith, "Parliamentary Confirmations of the Great Charter," XXXVIII, July 1933, 659-672.

In this discussion of the character and number of parliamentary confirmations of Magna Carta, Faith Thompson concludes that the traditional list based on the old printed statutes (based on the statute roll) is not a complete count of the confirmations of the Great Charter. The parliament rolls tell a different story. Sir Edward Coke when speaking of the Magna Carta and the Forest Charter in his *Second Institute* mentioned thirty-two confirmations but did not list them in their entirety. Historians following the lead of Charles Bémont and William McKechnie have been content to accept the count and attributed it to Coke.

- 235 White, Albert Beebe, "Was There a 'Common Council' Before Parliament?" XXV, October 1919, 1-17.

The writer shows that there was no "common council" before Parliament, but that *commune consilium* rather than *commune concilium* was the term which came to be recognized as the Common Council. The *concilium* referred to the House of Lords, while the *consilium* meant the smaller councils of the king.

- 236 Baldwin, James F., "Early Records of the King's Council," XI, October 1905, 1-15.

The minutes of the King's Council during the fourteenth century are here described as valuable aids to understanding council procedure. They reveal details in method of petition and response in Council proceedings and serve to show how the acts of Council came to appear on the rolls of the chancery and the exchequer. The reclamation of records earlier than those published in Sir Harris Nicolas' *Proceedings and Ordinances of the Privy Council* in Mr. Baldwin's opinion demands a modification of views regarding the Council.

- 237 Adams, George B., "The Descendants of the Curia Regis," XIII, October 1907, 11-15.

A study in English constitutional history: The *curia regis* is described as the legislative, judicial and conciliar organ of feudal government. The relation of the principal modern institutions to it are illustrated by chart in order to clarify their development from it.

- 238 Adams, George B., "The Origin of the English Constitution," pt. I, XIII, January 1908, 229-245; pt. II, XIII, July 1908, 713-730.

In Mr. Adams' opinion the origin of the English limited monarchy is not to be sought alone in the primitive German state, nor in the idea of an elective monarchy or a coronation oath, nor in the survival of institutions of local freedom to exert increasing influence on the central government. The guiding principle which influenced the formation of a limited monarchy in England is found in the idea that there existed a body of understood rights which the king was bound or forced to observe. Two lines of development (the natural development of Parliament and experimentation in methods of coercing the king) existed and coalesced into one in the latter part of the fourteenth century. The natural development of Parliament became at the same time the development of the limited monarchy.

- 239 Adams, George B., "The Critical Period of English Constitutional History," V, July 1900, 643-658.

The thirteenth century has been considered the critical period of English constitutional history because during that time the course of constitutional growth could have been turned in a different direction. A series of events and circumstances in the thirteenth century saved England from complete absolutism. In this period of early constitutional development the Magna Carta served to define the rights of the king and carried over the controlling principles which shaped the course of the English Constitution. Modification of the *curia regis* laid the foundation for the developmental course of Parliament.

- 240 Strayer, Joseph R., "The Statute of York and the Community of the Realm," XLVII, October 1941, 1-22.

Although the Statute of York of 1322 recognized the importance of Parliament, it gave no indication of sanctioning a representative commons. The statute itself, even while it rendered invalid the restrictions which the magnates had placed on the king, stipulated that all important measures required the assent of "the community of the realm" which was Parliament. That this body was merely a publicity organ for the spread-

ing of the news of the laws, and that as such it never represented the knights of burgesses becomes clear in this article. Thus the phrase "community of the realm" had little constitutional significance.

- 241 Russell, Josiah Cox, "Early Parliamentary Organization," XLIII, October 1937, 1-21.

In this discussion of parliamentary organization during the period from the Conquest to the reign of Edward II, the author suggests certain theses which, in his opinion, differ from the usual explanations of parliamentary development:

"The English Assembly was organized according to the normal pattern which social custom prescribed for the arrangement of persons in meetings: the separation of social groups (*ordines gradus*) and precedence according to personal dignity. . . . Attendance at first varied, according to the business of the meeting, as social custom and royal descretion might direct. Lesser folk might and did attend before they were summoned by writ. . . . Writs not merely regularized their attendance . . . [they] enabled them to form separate groups and to develop their ideas of organization. The influence of lesser folk probably accounts for the modification of the organization of Parliament along lines which approach those of our modern assemblies."

- 242 Stephenson, Carl, "The Origin of the English Towns," XXXII, October 1926, 10-21.

In dealing with the origin of the English town during the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth centuries, Mr. Stephenson applies to the English borough Henri Pirenne's point of view that true urban life was based on trade and industry and that the medieval town was the product of a commercial revival. Evidence suggests that under influence of trade the older borough which was not a town often grew into a newer mercantile borough which was one.

- 243 Sweet, Alfred H., "The English Benedictines and Their Bishops in the Thirteenth Century," XXIV, July 1919, 565-577.

In this study Mr. Sweet considers the contacts which existed between the monks and the bishop. The houses of the monks of St. Benedict were not exempt from episcopal jurisdiction. By such activities as the confirmation of abbatial elections and visitations to determine whether the life of a community was in accordance with church and monastic rule, the bishop kept in contact with the Benedictines and asserted his jurisdiction over them.

- 244 White, Albert Beebe, "The First Concentration of Juries: The Writ of July 21, 1213," XVII, October 1911, 12-16.

It has been generally supposed that the writ of July 21, 1213, recorded the first instance of jury concentration. But the language of the writ appeared to contain expression of at least two ideas at variance with the known practices and conceptions of the time. Scholars lost faith in the writ and regarded its text as hopelessly corrupt. Mr. White accounts for the variance by discussing these two ideas: why the king should have directed his summons to royal demesne juries since his purpose was to assess the damages and losses inflicted on the church by the king; and how to account for the word *alios* before *ministros suos* where it clearly implied that the reeve and four men were royal ministers.

- 245 White, Albert Beebe, "Some Early Instances of Concentration of Representatives in England," XIX, July 1914, 735-750.

Mr. White's study of concentration (which was one of the three essential practices which together constituted the origin of the House of Commons) aims to show that the earliest known general concentration of popularly elected knights of the shire was in 1227. Concentration—

the bringing together of popularly elected representatives at one time and place—during the first half of the thirteenth century was a common device used by the king for various purposes among which was the obtaining of unofficial information or the peoples' side of questions.

- 246 **Lunt, W. E.**, "The First Levy of Papal Annates," XVIII, October 1912, 48-64.

This paper, undertaken as a part of a study of the financial relations between England and the papacy during the thirteenth century and the early part of the fourteenth century, is concerned with the causes and difficulties involved in the first imposition of annates by Clement V in the British Isles in 1306. Clement V's letters found in the register of Simon of Ghent, Bishop of Salisbury, reports made by William Testa, one of the collectors of annates, and letters from the collectors to English prelates concerned with the collection of annates have been used as sources. A deficit in the papal treasury was the immediate cause for the papal annates. They are important as a precedent to the bulls of John XXII dealing with annates.

- 247 **Ferris, Eleanor**, "The Financial Relations of the Knights Templars to the English Crown," VIII, October 1902, 1-17.

The military achievement of the Knights Templars in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries has overshadowed their service as financiers. A close relation existed between them and the English crown. Handling of money was one of their important services to the crown. The Knights Templars served as custodians of treasure, administered trusts, advanced loans and negotiated for payments between London and the Continent. They were pioneers in the development of instruments to negotiate credit.

- 248 **Perkins, Clarence**, "The Wealth of the Knights Templars in England and the Disposition of It after Their Dissolution," XV, January 1910, 252-263.

The wealth which was the immediate cause of the attack on the Templars by Philip IV has been computed but always in large and indefinite figures, owing partly to the difficulty in getting reliable statistics. The detailed accounts rendered by the royal keepers of Temple lands have enabled this author to elaborate an estimate. The Temple lands in England were only slightly more valuable than those of the Hospitallers according to this author. And the value of the movable property was much less than usually assumed. The Templars were arrested in 1308-09 to replenish the royal treasury as they had so much wealth. By the Council of Vienne the lands of the Templars were ordered to be given over to the Knights Hospitallers. Much difficulty arose over this matter.

- 249 **Putnam, Bertha H.**, "Maximum Wage-Laws for Priests after the Black Death 1348-1381," XXI, October 1915, 12-32.

Immediately following the Black Death, a scarcity of priests and manual laborers existed in England. To check the enormous rise in the salaries of the unbeneficed priests, church authorities enacted canons that were close analogies to the secular labor laws passed by Parliament to check the rise in wages. From such ecclesiastical sources as the episcopal registers, Miss Putnam traces the church's administrative enforcement of these ecclesiastical laws as applied to the economic crisis of 1348-1381 dealing with the ecclesiastical administration of the labor legislation primarily for the laity, the ecclesiastical administration of the laws enacted for the unbeneficed clergy and the conflicts between the king's courts and the courts Christian.

- 250 **Trenholme, Norman M.**, "The Risings in the English Monastic Towns in 1327," VI, July 1901, 650-670.

Although the democratic character of English municipal government prevented the formation of hostile opposition, the history of monastic towns reveals the townsman's struggle against his lord to obtain liberties

and franchises. Such risings as at St. Albans, Bury St. Edmunds, and Abingdon were forceful, yet fruitless. No permanent gain was made in civil liberty or self-government. The struggles revealed the strength and influence of the English monastic system in 1327.

- 251 **Bigelow, Melville M.**, "The Bohun Wills," pt. I, I, April 1896, 414-435; pt. II, I, July 1896, 631-649.

The "Bohun Wills" are documents representing an important English family through four generations practically covering the fourteenth century. These documents—five wills and an inventory—are significant not only because they reveal details about the individuals, but because they give insight into the manners and language of fourteenth century life.

- 252 **Kriehn, George**, "Studies in the Sources of the Social Revolt in 1381," pts. I-IV, VII, January 1902, 254-285; pts. V-VI, VII, April 1902, 458-484.

Mr. Kriehn's study aims to show the need of a thorough revision of the generally accepted account of some of the best-known events of the Social Revolt of 1381 in England. For his discussion he selects the two chief crises of the revolt—the conferences between Richard II and the insurgents at Mile End and at Smithfield. For the reconstruction of these events he critically evaluates the following sources: Sir John Froissart's *Chronicles*, an *Anonymous French Chronicle of the Revolt*, and a *Chronicle* of the monk of Evesham. He regarded the *Anonymous French Chronicle* as most detailed and reliable. He questions the reliability of Froissart's *Chronicles* because of its idealization of knighthood, its moral design to furnish knights with a good example, and its rhetorical propensities.

- 253 **Plucknett, Theodore**, "The Case of the Miscreant Cardinal," XXX, October 1924, 1-15.

Mr. Plucknett identifies Clement VII, the schismatic pope, as the "Miscreant Cardinal." In this case of the miscreant cardinal of 1382-1383 as reported in Fitzherbert's *Graund Abridgement* and in the Hale manuscript in the library of Lincoln's Inn, the king brought an action of *Quare impedit* to recover the right of making a presentation to an unnamed church in the diocese of Durham. It derived its special interest from the speech of a justice of the Court of Common Pleas in which he asserted advanced ideas concerning control over church courts; he declared it to be good law to demand forfeiture of lands for heresy.

- 254 **Cheyney, Edward P.**, "The Recantations of the Early Lollards," IV, April 1899, 423-438.

Most important of the forces which contributed to the recantations of Lollards in the fourteenth century was the collective spirit of the Middle Ages in which they lived. The individual was dominated by society as a whole; his ideas made him incapable of opposing the mass of which he was a part. Ready abjuration can also be explained by the fact that to many Lollards belief was a matter of only academic or political interest.

- 255 **Richardson, H. G.**, "Business Training in Medieval Oxford," XLVI, January 1941, 259-280.

The article discusses the teaching practices of Thomas Sampson at Oxford in the fourteenth century as a reflection of the new commercial interests of the time. Sampson taught accounting, writing, grammar, French (techniques needed to carry on the new economic relationships) and wrote general texts on practical subjects. His writings, too, offer an interesting insight into the mundane and commonplace spirit of the time.

IIIB1. Notes and Suggestions

- 256 Cramer, Alice Carver, "The Jewish Exchequer," XLV, January 1940, 327-337.
Inquiry into its fiscal functions in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.
- 257 Tatlock, J. S. P., "The 'Chronicle' Misunderstood," XLI, July 1936, 703.
The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.
- 258 Morris, William A., "The Lesser *Curia Regis* under the First Two Norman Kings of England," XXXIV, July 1929, 772-778.
- 259 Jenks, Edward, "The Alleged Oxford Council of 1213," XXII, October 1916, 87-90.
- 260 White, A. B., "The Oxford Meeting of 1213," XXII, January 1917, 325-329.
- 261 Vincent, John Martin, "The Battle Abbey Records in the Huntington Library," XXXVI, October 1930, 63-68.
- 262 Baldwin, J. F., "Concilium and Consilium," XX, January 1915, 330-333.
- 263 Adams, G. B., "The King's County Court," XXI, October 1915, 91-92.
- 264 Scott, Jonathan F., "Limitations of Gild Monopoly," XXII, April 1917, 586-589.
- 265 Adams, G. B., "Private Jurisdiction in England: A Theoretical Reconstruction," XXIII, April 1918, 596.

IIIB1. Documents

- 266 Round, J. H., "The First Charter to St. Edmund's Bury, Suffolk," II, July 1897, 688-690.

IIIB1. Cross References

- 98 Neilson, Nellie, "English Manorial Forms."
- 270 Haskins, C. H., "The Early Norman Jury."
- 273 Stephenson, Carl, "French Commune and English Borough."
- 305 Stephenson, Carl, "Feudalism and Its Antecedents in England."
- 313 Magoun, Francis P., Jr., "Football in Medieval England and in Middle English Literature."
- 366 Adams, George Burton, "Magna Carta and the Responsible Ministry."
And item 333.

2. France

- 267 Haskins, Charles H., "The University of Paris in the Sermons of the Thirteenth Century," X, October 1904, 1-27.

Sermons remaining from the popular preaching embodying stories or exempla in the thirteenth century afford details of student society. This study, limited to printed texts and manuscripts which seemed most likely to refer to subjects of academic interest, such as Robert de Sorbon, describes the kinds of teachers, students, courses pursued, nature of examinations and the student's preparation for them.

- 268 Gross, Charles, "The Political Influence of the University of Paris in the Middle Ages," VI, April 1901, 440-445.

Weakness of the French Crown provided the opportunity for the university to assert its authority in the state during the first quarter of the fourteenth century. Being a privileged and independent corporation, conscious of its strength, the university functioned as a mediator in the affairs of the state.

- 269 Haskins, Charles H., "Normandy Under William the Conqueror," XIV, April 1909, 453-476.

The Norman society in 1066 was a feudal society with feudal tenure of land and feudal military organization. It was a feudalism which was held in check by strong ducal power. The income for state and church maintenance came from: mills, salt-pans, fishing rights, monopoly of taking whales and other "great fish," wreck and treasure-trove, profits of coinage, tolls, rights over markets and fairs and other urban "consuetudines," fines and forfeitures of justice, and receipts from feudal dues. In the matter of fiscal organization Normandy was in advance of such neighboring lands as Anjou. In local government the distinctive feature of the Norman system was the presence of a set of officers who were public officials rather than mere domanial agents. The duke was the chief source of law even keeping a firm hand on the Norman church and religion.

- 270 Haskins, Charles H., "The Early Norman Jury," VIII, July 1903, 613-640.

Mr. Haskins bases this essay primarily on the "Old Castulary" or *Livre Noir* of the chapter of Bayeux, and finds therein considerable evidence that the use of the sworn inquest was a regular custom in Normandy prior to the time of the Constitutions of Clarendon. In Normandy, however, there did not appear to be a general law or assize governing the jury method; application was only in specific controversies involving boundaries, tithes, champions, etc. The number of men was usually ten or twelve, but occasionally eighteen. Neighboring Anjou had a less well developed method which used a verdict of neighbors in disputes, and a kind of jury of arbitration. Henry II was not the originator of a system, which went back to his father Geoffrey and even to Henry I, there being a steady recognizable development from 1133 on.

- 271 Dow, Earle W., "Some French Communes in the Light of Their Charters," VIII, July 1903, 641-656.

An analysis of the charter of Beauvais and the concessions to Soissons, Laon, Amiens, and Noyon furnishes the foundation for the study. French communes in the eleventh and twelfth centuries assisted in the maintenance of law and order. They functioned as private corporations serving the personal interests of their members rather than as public institutions. They aimed to provide against acts of violence and unlawful demands of seigneurs, to insure safety of property and to establish, change, or guarantee regulations in civil relations.

- 272 Haskins, Charles H., "Robert le Bougre and the Beginnings of the Inquisition in Northern France," pt. I, VII, April 1902, 437-457; pt. II, VII, July 1902, 631-652.

The ineffectiveness of existing methods to control heresy prompted Gregory IX in 1233 to introduce more rigorous methods. Robert le Bougre's commission to proceed against the heretics was evidence of such action. His career revealed him as a zealous inquisitor who punished both the innocent and guilty.

- 273 Stephenson, Carl, "The French Commune and the English Borough," XXXVII, April 1932, 451-467.

The author takes sharp issue with Tait's and Luchaire's emphasis on technicalities in tracing the history of towns. He stresses the merchant background of the town, and states "that the notion of the town as a body politic emerged in England, as it had on the Continent, along with the formal establishment of municipal self-government." The charter of Henry I, not the commune of 1191, was the great milestone in England.

IIIB2. Notes and Suggestions

- 274 Packard, Sidney R., "The Norman Communes Once More 1189-1223," XLVI, January 1941, 338-347.

Origin and nature of the communes.

IIIB2. Cross References

- 76 Thompson, J. W., "The Statistical Sources of Frankish History."
232 Haskins, C. H., "The Government of Normandy Under Henry II" (2 parts).
290 Joranson, Einar, "The Alleged Frankish Protestants in Palestine."
298 Bitterman, H., "The Influence of Irish Monks on Merovingian Diocesan Organization."

3. Germany

- 275 Thompson, James Westfall, "German Feudalism," XXVIII, April 1923, 440-474.

Professor Thompson in his discussion of German feudalism contrasts Germany's transition to a more feudal form of government and society after the deposition of Charles the Fat in 887 with that of France, Italy, and England. One of the most striking differences between German feudalism and English and French feudalism was the undermining of the German nobility by the *ministeriales* originally a preferred class of serfs, employed for service instead of labor, who rose to the status of nobles.

- 276 Seeliger, Gerhard, "The State and Seigniorial Authority in Early German History," XIV, January 1909, 237-248.

To determine the influence of seigniorial authority upon the origin of the town and the sovereign state *Landeshoheit*, Mr. Seeliger traces the "development of the economic organism of seigniorial authority" and

shows its "development into a politically significant community . . . keeping the fundamental legal elements distinct from those of historical fact."

IIIB3. Notes and Suggestions

- 277 Baron, Hans, "Imperial Reform and the Habsburgs, 1486-1504," XLIV, January 1939, 293-302.

IIIB3. Cross Reference

- 314 Levy, E., "Reflections on the First 'Reception' of Roman Law in German States."

4. Southern Europe

- 278 Bark, William, "Theodoric vs. Boethius: Vindication and Apology," XLIX, April 1944, 410-426.

Obscurity has surrounded the background of the tragedy which suddenly ended the career of Anicius Manlius Severinus Boethius. He rose to an eminent position under Theodoric the Ostragoth; suddenly he fell from favor, was accused of treason and sacrilege, and was executed in 524 or 525. The author reviews the neglected theological side of this affair and concludes that Theodoric's action against Boethius was not a sudden change of mind without a good cause. Boethius fell from Theodoric's favor not because of his theological beliefs, but because his theological activities were part of a program aiming at political unity which meant the destruction of Theodoric's power.

- 279 White, Lynn, Jr., "The Byzantinization of Sicily," XLII, October 1936, 1-21.

Sicily played an important role in the great shift of population from East to West in the seventh century. The island received the full impact of the wave of Greeks and Greek influences which moved westward and temporarily submerged the Latinity of North Africa, Southern Italy, and Rome, and completely replaced the Latin element in Sicily and Lower Calabria. In Sicily as in no other part of the West obliteration of Latin elements was possible because the island's foundations were basically Greek. The Hellenic population enabled the Byzantinism brought by refugees fleeing from Persians, Monothelites, and Moslems to become firmly established and helped to produce a Greek culture which flourished until the Saracenic conquest in the late ninth century.

- 280 Schwill, Ferdinand, "The Podesta of Siena," IX, January 1904, 247-264.

The appearance of the "Podesta" as an official in the government of Italian medieval communes is not regarded by the author as a violent interruption of the democratic regime of consuls, but as a natural development arising from his function to investigate the conduct of the town consuls when their term of office expired. Siena afforded excellent material for study because of its constitution of 1262.

- 281 Wolfson, Arthur M., "The Ballot and Other Forms of Voting in the Italian Communes," V, October 1899, 1-21.

Revival of Greek and Roman forms of voting which were in abeyance for centuries was due to activity by the communes of northern Italy in the thirteenth century. Elections which delegated authority to an indi-

vidual or corporation which had no interest in the welfare of the body politic, indirect elections, elections by lot, and finally elections by ballot, were revived and developed in order to eradicate corruption and fraud.

- 282 Sullivan, James, "Marsiglio of Padua and William of Ockam," pt. I, II, April 1897, 409-426; pt. II, II, July 1897, 593-610.

After comparing the political ideas of William of Ockam and Marsiglio of Padua, two of many fourteenth century writers who were interested in defining the relation between church and state, the author concludes that Marsiglio did not borrow his political ideas from William of Ockam, because essentially in the foundations of their theories they were opposed. They differed in their ideas of the origin of the state, of the right to depose the prince, and of the right of the church head to interfere in the government of the state. Marsiglio, by his political work *Defensor Pacis*, written in 1324, was perhaps the greater influence of the two. Enemies of the pope and friends of reform turned rather to Marsiglio than to Ockam for support.

- 283 Schevill, Ferdinand, "San Galgano: A Cistercian Abbey of the Middle Ages," XIV, October 1908, 22-37.

Mr. Schevill describes the origin and development of the Abbey of San Galgano in Italy from its beginning in the twelfth century to the time of its abandonment in the eighteenth century.

- 284 Niccolini, Marchesa, "A Medieval Florentine, His Family and His Possessions," XXXI, October 1925, 1-19.

Two of Lapo Niccolini's own books describing his private life provide the material for this study of his versatile life in the middle of the fourteenth century. Marchesa Niccolini describes his activities as a statesman, a merchant, and a country squire who managed his own estates.

- 285 Byrne, Eugene H., "Genoese Trade With Syria in the Twelfth Century," XXV, January 1920, 191-219.

Reviewing Genoese commercial expansion in the twelfth century, Professor Byrne regards the twelfth century as the period in which Genoese trade first gained consciousness. Trade with Syria became a source of wealth which compensated for territorial limitation. Three stages are suggested in its development. The first stage extending from 1097 to 1154 is described as one in which the Genoese aimed to make their city the staple town of the northern half of the western Mediterranean. The second stage, 1154-1164, characterized by rapid commercial development, was marked by a shift of the controlling interests from Syrians and Jews to Genoese families—della Volta, Burone Mallone, Usodimare and Vento. The third stage, extending to the end of the century, was introduced by a period of declining trade resulting from the city's chaotic political and financial condition. Its trade was marked by an advance in trading methods and freer participation by all citizens in it.

IIIB4. Cross Reference

- 301 Haskins, C. H., "The Greek Element in the Renaissance of the Twelfth Century."
302. Haskins, C. H., "Science at the Court of the Emperor Frederick II."
- 427 Merriman, Roger B., "The Cortes of the Spanish Kingdoms in the Later Middle Ages."

5. Eastern and Northern Europe

- 286 Bugge, Alexander, "The Origin and Credibility of the Icelandic Saga," XIV, January 1909, 249-261.

Professor Bugge of the University of Christiania in 1908 presented this discussion of the Icelandic saga's origin at the International Congress of the Historical Sciences at Berlin. The *märchen* and not the *sage* (story) was considered the mother of the saga. The peaceful life on the island, remembrance of the forefathers who fought in Britain and Ireland and who were chieftains in Norway, the duty of the chieftain to know his ancestral lineage, the long winter evenings in the chieftain's hall, were conditions responsible for the creation of the art of the Icelandic saga. The Icelanders in the second half of the eleventh century began to collect oral traditions.

- 287 Larson, Laurence M., "The Household of the Norwegian Kings in the Thirteenth Century," XIII, April 1908, 459-479.

For information concerning the organization of the king's household, Mr. Larson uses such sagas as Snorre's *Heimskringla* (1178-1241) the *Flateyrbok* (1370-1380) and *Fagrskinna* (1230-1240). He describes four groups or guilds—the hirdmen, the gests, the candle-swains and the house-carles—all organized to guard and serve the king. Serving in the king's garth was not a financial gain, but was a mark of great distinction.

- 288 Beazley, C. Raymond, "The Russian Expansion Towards Asia and the Arctic in the Middle Ages (to 1500)," XIII, July 1908, 731-741.

The article limits its discussion to Russian expansion under Novgorodian and Muscovite initiative toward European and Asiatic Siberia from the twelfth through the fifteenth centuries.

IIIB5. Cross Reference

- 228 Larson, L. M., "The Political Policies of Cnut as King of England."

6. Byzantium and the Near East

- 289 Boak, Arthur E. R., "Byzantine Imperialism in Egypt," XXXIV, October 1928, 1-8.

The author regards the story of Byzantine imperialism during the period from Diocletian to the capture of Alexandria in 641 A.D. as one of progressive disintegration. Economic and cultural decadence of Egypt and the development of a hostile Egyptian nation are described as the fruits of this imperialism. Adherence to the Roman idea of exploiting the Egyptians as subjects and the overdevelopment of bureaucracy are cited as some of its weaknesses.

- 290 Joranson, Einar, "The Alleged Frankish Protectorate in Palestine," XXXII, January 1927, 241-261.

Mr. Joranson concludes that Charlemagne never established a protectorate in Palestine. In his study of the problem, he considers the contributions made to the solving of the problem by the Russian scholars Barthold and Vasiliev and by the Frenchman Bréhier and examines the evidence upon which the theory was founded. Barthold had denied that diplomatic intercourse between Frankish monarchs and the caliphs of

Bagdad ever existed. Vasiliev concluded that the caliph Hārūn ar-Rashīd had retained his sovereignty over Palestine, but that Charlemagne had received the right of protection over Christians and pilgrims and the right to construct hospices and churches at Jerusalem.

- 291 **Duncalf, Frederic**, "The Peasants' Crusade," XXVI, April 1921, 440-453.

The Peasants' Crusade of 1096 has been generally regarded as a disorderly movement of misguided and unprepared rustics. In proving the falsehood of this view, the author discusses the work of the leaders—Peter, Walter the Penniless, Fulk, Gottschalk, and Ernicho. The relative success of the different bands was determined by the amount of money they possessed. The first two bands failed primarily because of their premature arrival in the East. According to the author, this movement was not preceded by the period of exceptional famine and distress which so many believe to have been its chief cause.

- 292 **Munro, Dana C.**, "The Children's Crusade," XIX, April 1914, 516-524.

Regarding the accounts of Röhricht (*Hist. Zeitschrift*, XXXVI, 1876), Janssen ("Étienne de Cloyes et les Croisades d'Enfants" *Bulletin de la Soc. Dunoise*, 1891), and Gray (*Children's Crusade*, 1870) as inadequate, Mr. Munro constructs the history of the French movement of the Children's Crusades in 1212 from the anonymous chronicles of Laon, Mortemer, Jumièges, and Andres, and the history of the German children from accounts written at Cologne, Treves, Spire, Marbach in Alsace, Ebersheim, Admunt, Cremona, Piacenza, and Genoa.

- 293 **Langer, William L.**, and **Blake, Robert P.**, "The Rise of the Ottoman Turks and Its Historical Background," XXXVII, April 1932, 468-505.

In this critical evaluation of the confused sources and conflicting secondary accounts of early Turkish history, the authors emphasize the geographical, political and linguistic disruption of Asia Minor, and the symbiosis of nomad Turk and sedentary native cultures. Warfare was only spasmodic and inconclusive. The Christians of Asia Minor tended to accept rather easily, without pressure, at least the external forms of Islam, influenced by its mysticism and the work of the dervishes. In the thirteenth century, during loose Mongol overlordship, Ertoghrol was made guardian of the border region of Süğüd in the sultanate of Rum. Osman started from there on his conquests at the very end of the century. The early sultans evidently had an organization of warriors based on merchant and religious orders. Several suggestions are made for further research.

IIIB6. Notes and Suggestions

- 294 **Munro, D. C.**, "Did the Emperor Alexius I Ask for Aid at the Council of Piacenza, 1095?" XXVII, July 1922, 731-733.
- 295 **Miller, William**, "Recent Publications on Medieval and Modern Greek History, 1928-1931," XXXVII, January 1932, 272-279.
- 296 **Miller, William**, "Recent Publications on Medieval and Modern Greek History, 1932-1935," XL, July 1935, 688-693.

IIIB6. Documents

- 297 Beazley, C. R., "Directorium ad Faciendum Passagium Transmarinum," pt. I, XII, July 1907, 810-857; pt. II, XIII, October 1907, 66-115.

An appeal in 1330 for a new crusade, directed to Philip VI of Valois. The more thorough introduction came in connection with the second instalment—XIII, 66-79.

IIIB6. Cross References

- 285 Byrne, E. H., "Genoese Trade with Syria in the Twelfth Century."
316 Munro, D. C., "The Speech of Urban II at Clermont, 1095."
And item 25.

7. General and Cultural History

- 298 Bittermann, Helen R., "The Influence of Irish Monks on Merovingian Diocesan Organization," XL, January 1935, 232-245.

Columban and his Irish monks came to Burgundy about 591. He was followed by other *peregrini*. These Irish monks have been accused of introducing into Gaul the monastery bishop and the privilege which permitted monks to apply for spiritual functions to bishops other than their diocesan. They have been accused of effecting the dissolution of the Merovingian system of diocese organization. The author suggests reasons to refute these accusations: the majority of Irish monasteries were not released from the spiritual authority of their dioceses. Andoën, disciple of Columban, did not recognize any independence of his spiritual jurisdiction on the part of monasteries in his diocese; the first privilege of release was granted fifty years before Columban entered Burgundy. The influence of the Irish monks on the organization of the Merovingian diocese was confined to the work of the *episcopi peregrini* or wandering bishops. Their actions brought confusion but their appearance was the result and not the cause of the disintegration of the church in Gaul.

- 299 Burr, George L., "The Year 1000 and the Antecedents of the Crusades," VI, April 1901, 429-439.

Evidence of the belief that the world was to end in the year 1000 and the possibility of such belief as a cause of the Crusades is here considered and rejected.

- 300 Thorndike, Lynn, "The True Roger Bacon," pt. I, XXI, January 1916, 237-257; pt. II, XXI, April 1916, 468-480.

In presenting the true Roger Bacon, Lynn Thorndike endeavors to refute common misconception concerning Bacon's life and thought. Bacon's thought is presented not as being far in advance of his times, but as reflecting medieval thought, revealing some of its back currents, summarizing its most advanced stages and including much that was characteristic of its age. In the discussion of Bacon's biography, such problems as the composition of the *Opus Maius*, *Opus Minus*, and the *Opus Tertium*, and Bacon's relationship with the Franciscan order are considered. In the discussion of Bacon's thought, Mr. Thorndike discusses both those elements which were constructive contributions to modern thought and those which were common to the age in which Bacon lived.

- 301 Haskins, Charles H., "The Greek Element in the Renaissance of the Twelfth Century," XXV, July 1920, 603-615.

The Renaissance of the twelfth century was characterized by a revival of the Latin classics and Roman law and a widening of the field of knowledge by the introduction of the science and philosophy of the ancient Greeks into western Europe. Greek learning was transmitted through Arabic intermediaries; yet direct contact with Greek sources existed in Italy and the East. Translations made directly from Greek originals were an important and a more faithful vehicle for this transmission of ancient learning. The Norman kingdom of southern Italy and Sicily, where Greek, Latin, and Arabic civilization existed side by side, was the most important meeting-point of Greek and Latin culture in the twelfth century. Professor Haskins presents a brief survey of these Sicilian translators and their labors.

- 302 Haskins, Charles H., "Science at the Court of the Emperor Frederick II," XXVII, July 1922, 669-694.

Frederick's active interest in astronomy, medicine, animal study; his pursuit of scientific knowledge by means of observation and experimentation; his use of the questionnaire to obtain information from scholars abroad; the work of his two chief scientific advisers, Michael Scot and Master Theodore—are all considered by Professor Haskins in order to illustrate Frederick's methods and the working of his mind.

- 303 Haskins, Charles H., "The Life of Medieval Students as Illustrated by Their Letters," III, January 1898, 203-229.

Although the letters of medieval students are usually not actual correspondence but models often preserved in rhetorical manuals for future letter writers, they do reflect the conditions of the age in which they were composed. Those described in this article are limited to the printed works and to the manuscripts of Paris, Munich, London, and Oxford. Chiefly, the letters were concerned with the commonplace aspects of life. A student's request for money, the announcement of his arrival at school, and a discussion of his books and study were frequent subjects and would sound familiar to present-day parents.

- 304 Stephenson, Carl, "The Origin and Significance of Feudalism," XLVI, July 1941, 788-812.

Various historical interpretations of the rise of feudalism are discussed, chiefly the view that feudalism arose in the eighth century as a result of the necessity for the Carolingians to pay their mercenaries, and that they therefore handed over church lands to the soldiers in return for military pledges, and the view that feudalism originated from the ancient German tribal communities. The author's own explanation is that feudalism "was a phase of government developed by the Frankish kings on the basis of a pre-existing barbarian custom of vassalage."

- 305 Stephenson, Carl, "Feudalism and Its Antecedents in England," XLVIII, January 1943, 245-265.

The author applies the following conclusions concerning the origin and significance of feudalism to the feudalism of England: Feudalism proper was essentially political and was a phase of government developed by the Frankish kings through the granting of benefices of their vassals. Originally the fief was not just any benefice, but a military benefice; the vassal was not any man of a lord, but a military retainer. Vassalage was directly descended from the Germanic custom that Tacitus called the "comitatus." Land tenure was wholly feudal in that the fief was a benefice held by a vassal. The Carolingians sought to provide themselves with a force of heavy-armed cavalry by rewarding their vassals with fiefs. By insisting that all great officials should be their vassals, they hoped to strengthen the royal administration. They gave numerous powers of local government to the feudal aristocracy by extending the privi-

lege of immunity to all fief-holders. The disintegration of their empire resulted from its inherent weakness, not from the feudalizing policy of its rulers.

- 306 **Krey, August C.**, "The International State of the Middle Ages: Some Reasons for Its Failure," XXVIII, October 1922, 1-12.

In this study of the church as an international force for peace in the days from Gregory VII to Boniface VIII, Mr. Krey traces its international control from the beginning in the tenth century by the joint effort of churchmen and laymen to re-establish peace and order in a chaotic Europe through the founding of Cluny, the invention of the Peace of God, and the Truce of God to the height of its power. The rise of national states, the loss of support from the commercial interests are suggested as factors contributing to its downfall. In the Balance of Power, the Holy Alliance, the Hague Tribunal, the League of Nations, and the Conference on the Limitation of Armament, the author sees attempts toward international control similar to those made in the Middle Ages.

- 307 **Emerton, Ephraim**, "Altopascio—A Forgotten Order," XXIX, October 1923, 1-23.

When considering the purpose and function of the Order of Altopascio (dissolved in 1459), Mr. Emerton chiefly discusses the meaning of the brethren's "T" symbol and the belief that their special function was to build roads and bridges. As revealed in the Rule of Altopascio, the purpose of the order was to provide organized hospital care for the sick; the actual building of roads and bridges was no more a special function for these brethren than for any other landowner.

- 308 **Lapsley, Gaillard T.**, "The Origin of Property in Land," VIII, April 1903, 426-448.

This study summarizes Professor Maxime Kovalevsky's views concerning the origin of medieval institutions connected with the ownership or occupation of land. Kovalevsky studied the nature and proportion of the Roman and German elements in the institutions as well as the forces that served to fuse them.

- 309 **Gross, Charles**, "Mortmain in Medieval Boroughs," XII, July 1907, 733-742.

Local controversies arose over lands in mortmain during the thirteenth, fourteenth and fifteenth centuries and by breaking down the fiscal and jurisdictional barriers of the church helped to prepare the way for the reformation of the church in the sixteenth century. This study limits itself to the attitude of the burgesses towards gifts or bequests of burgage lands to the clergy. Land alienated in mortmain was regarded in disfavor by the burgesses of the town because such grants of land in the church diminished the total amount of taxable property and tended to increase the tax-rate or to curtail the total municipal revenue.

- 310 **Pijper, Frederik**, "The Christian Church and Slavery in the Middle Ages," XIV, July 1909, 675-695.

In this article discussing the condition of slaves and the extent to which the church fostered the abolition of slavery during the Middle Ages, Professor Pijper of the University of Leyden maintains that the Christian church made no effort to abolish slavery or serfdom. The church rather seemed to approve of it. Free men unable to pay fines imposed upon them for acts against the church were frequently made slaves to it.

- 311 **Burr, George L.**, "Anent the Middle Ages," XVIII, July 1913, 710-726.

Medieval history is that period when Christian theocracy was the accepted ideal. The Middle Ages is a period beginning with Constantine.

overlapping into ancient history at one end, and ending after Luther and Calvin when the ecclesiastical City of God was replaced by the lay state.

- 312 **Carlyle, Alexander J.**, "The Sources of Medieval Political Theory and Its Connection with Medieval Politics," XIX, October 1913, 1-12.

In this brief survey of sources for medieval political thought, the distinction between "nature" and "convention" found in the philosophy and thought of the period is presented as the framework of all medieval thought. To the man of medieval times institutions of society such as government, slavery, or property were not natural (representative of the primitive characteristics of human nature). They were necessary adjustments caused by man's loss of his original innocence through the Fall. The divine character of political authority and the distinction between church and state are other political ideas whose sources are traced.

- 313 **Magoun, Francis P., Jr.**, "Football in Medieval England and in Middle English Literature," XXXV, October 1929, 33-45.

The first completely unambiguous reference to football is found in a "Proclamation Issued for the Preservation of the Peace" which was issued in the reign of Edward II during the mayoralty of Nicholas Farn-don described as characteristic of many in that it described the game as violent and one which disturbed the peace and had to be placed under the ban of official disapproval. The author in addition to this reference cites others appearing in Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* and other literature of medieval England.

- 314 **Levy, Ernst**, "Reflections on the First 'Reception' of Roman Law in Germanic States," XLVIII, October 1942, 20-29.

The reception or adoption of Roman law by the Visigoths was not a wholesale or indiscriminate adoption. The process was a gradual blending of Roman and Germanic cultures. In some instances, a device of Roman law was rejected; in others it was entirely accepted or blended with the native culture.

- 315 **Brandt, Walther**, "Pierre Dubois: Modern or Medieval," XXXV, April 1930, 507-521.

With a view to determining to what extent Pierre Dubois' principal ideas were unique and to what extent they appeared in the writings of his contemporaries and predecessors, Mr. Brandt presents a summary of Dubois's views—chiefly as embodied in the *De recuperatione*—and points out how few of them can be regarded as new or original. Concerning these ideas Mr. Brandt concludes that nearly all of them except Dubois' plan for a court of international arbitration and his proposal for a system of schools regularly admitting women to professional training can be found in the writings of his contemporaries and predecessors. "Dubois's title to fame rests principally on the fact that he absorbed ideas previously expressed by others, elaborated on some of them and combined the whole into a unified system. A thirteenth century lawyer, representative of his age, he attempted to solve the problems of his day in much the same spirit in which similar problems of our day are being met by the men of our own generation."

- 316 **Munro, Dana C.**, "The Speech of Urban II at Clermont 1095," XI, January 1906, 231-242.

Pope Urban II has been regarded as the instigator of the first crusade. To determine the subjects discussed in Urban's speech at the Council of Clermont, Mr. Munro examines various versions of it—chiefly those of Fulcher of Chartres, Robert the Monk, Baldric of Dol, Guibert of Nogent and William of Malmesbury. Some of the subjects discussed by the pope were: the necessity of aiding the brethren in the East, the

appeals for aid from the East, the victorious advance of the Turks, the sufferings of the Christians in the East, and the granting of plenary indulgences.

IIIB7. Notes and Suggestions

- 317 Burr, G. L., "How the Middle Ages Got Their Name," XX, July 1915, 813-814.
- 318 Burr, G. L., "'Medieval,'" XXXII, July 1927, 789-792.
- 319 Koht, Halvdan, "Medieval Liberty Poems," XLVIII, January 1943, 281-290.

IIIB7. Documents

- 320 Mackay, Dorothy Louise, "Advertising a Medieval University," XXXVII, April 1932, 515-516.
From Naples.

IIIB7. Cross References

- 91 Thompson, J. W., "Profitable Fields of Investigation in Medieval History."
- 275 Thompson, J. W., "German Feudalism."
- 279 White, Lynn, Jr., "The Byzantinization of Sicily."

C. Early Modern History (ca. 1400-1789)

1. England

- 321 Baldwin, James F., "The King's Council and the Chancery," pt. I, XV, April 1910, 496-508; pt. II, XV, July 1910, 744-761.

The article traces the history of the separation of the Court of Chancery and the King's Council in the fourteenth, fifteenth, and sixteenth centuries. The author concludes that the chancellor was not free of all association with the Council until the sixteenth century.

- 322 Rezneck, Samuel, "Constructive Treason by Words in the Fifteenth Century," XXXIII, April 1928, 544-552.

Mr. Rezneck refutes the assertion that English courts of the fifteenth century regarded spoken words as treason, on the basis of a common-law doctrine of treason by words which was then revived in defiance of the statute of 1352. He concludes that only by misreading evidence can words by themselves be regarded as amounting to treason. When spoken words were charged as treason they did not stand by themselves, but were part of a narrative which conspired against the king. Spoken words constituted a sufficiently overt act to prove a treasonable intent.

- 323 Baldwin, James F., "The Privy Council of the Time of Richard II," XII, October 1906, 1-14.

Richard II's reign affords excellent opportunity to study the Privy Council, because during that reign it became a virtual board of regency. Parliament's attempt to elect and direct the Privy Council in the early part of Richard's reign failed because the Council was mature and well-

established. Nevertheless, the fact that the Privy Council was never again as large, that its members were generally of a respectable estate, and that the councillors felt responsible for their actions may be attributed to Parliament's effort.

- 324 **Cheyney, Edward P.**, "The Court of Star Chamber," XVIII, July 1913, 727-750.

"The object of this paper is . . . to describe . . . the Court of the Star Chamber during the seventy-five years in which its place and time of meeting, its constitution, functions, and procedure were all well settled and to point out its connection with the life of that period." The author shows the Court as having open session, with a regular procedure, before its abolition by Parliament in 1641. It had jurisdiction over cases of breach of public order, and cases of violation of royal commands. Cases were brought as matters of public concern or personal relief. Camden, in 1586, said: "If we look to its age it is most ancient; if we look to its dignity it is most honorable." Antagonism to the royalist system brought about the fall of Stafford and Laud, and Parliament decreed the end of the Court of Star Chamber.

- 325 **Dunham, William Huse, Jr.**, "Wolsey's Rule of the King's Whole Council," XLIX, July 1944, 644-662.

During the years 1515 to 1529 Wolsey, as chancellor, controlled the king's whole council. It was in this position that he did most of his work to build up the unity of the English state and to increase the royal prerogative of Henry VIII. As the head of the whole council Wolsey's policy was determinative of the work of that council. He had as his goal three objectives: ". . . security for the king and his official family . . . the protection of the subjects from wrongdoers, and finally an extension of the king's control over privileged institutions—the church, the city of London, and the feudality."

- 326 **Hart, Albert B.**, "John Knox as a Man of the World," XIII, January 1908, 259-280.

To delineate Knox as a "man of the world" Mr. Hart considers Knox's personality, his literary methods and works, his work as a reformer overturning an old order of things, and his place as a constructive statesman. Knox was represented as a man who believed himself a prophet with a mission to establish a Protestant church and community in Scotland. He was able to arouse the world, but was incapable of organizing it.

- 327 **Colby, Charles W.**, "Chatham 1708-1908," XIV, July 1909, 723-730.

Mr. Colby in this biographical sketch describes Chatham "as the last in time of those leaders whose deeds and memory recall to Englishmen everywhere their common origin." Imbued with an idealism derived from his reading of literature and a political creed favoring a government wherein public affairs were conducted by all for general benefit, Chatham strove for the freedom, greatness, and unity of the English people.

- 328 **Laprade, William Thomas**, "William Pitt and Westminster Elections," XVIII, January 1913, 253-274.

Mr. Laprade here throws light on the means by which the overwhelming majority in favor of Fox and North in the Parliament of 1783 was transformed into a working majority for Pitt in the new House. He questions the popular notion that Pitt came into power as the choice of a majority of the English people in 1784. The methods used by Pitt and his party in futile attempts to win Westminster elections between 1784 and 1790 are submitted as evidence that Pitt did not have a popular majority in 1784.

- 329 **Becker, Carl**, "Horace Walpole's *Memoirs of the Reign of George III*," pt. I, XV, January 1911, 255-272; pt. II, XVI, April 1911, 496-507.

Carl Becker, by demonstrating to what extent Walpole's *Memoirs* of the reign of George III were contemporaneous with the events they described, produces evidence which enables the reader to evaluate the *Memoirs* as a source reflecting a "Whig view of the reign of George III." The greater portion of Walpole's original draft was written in 1768-1769 and 1771-1772, but was revised as late as 1784. Mr. Becker attempts to determine the extent and value of such revision. During the interval between the writing of the original draft and the revision, Walpole's views regarding the reign changed. Such change was reflected in the revision of his work; in the original draft Walpole was interested in describing himself and other particular persons; in the revision of 1784 he was intent on general tendencies and aimed to depict George III's reign "as a lesson to posterity."

- 330 **Smith, Goldwin**, "Burke on Party," XI, October 1905, 36-41.

Beginning with Edmund Burke's definition of "party," Mr. Smith presents a brief interpretation of Burke and his works. He summarizes by saying: "Burke's works are a school of political wisdom as well as of noble sentiment, but it is always to be borne in mind that he is an orator and a pamphleteer."

- 331 **Turner, Edward R. and Megaro, Gaudens**, "The King's Closet in the Eighteenth Century," XLV, July 1940, 761-776.

In this discussion of the political significance of the king's closet, emphasis is placed upon the following topics: the importance to ministers of access to the closet and of influence or favor in it; the privilege of access to it; its power with the revival of royal authority under George III; the confidential and informal character of the work done by the king and ministers in it; instances of friction in the closet.

- 332 **Bowden, Witt**, "The English Manufacturers and the Commercial Treaty of 1786 with France," XXV, October 1919, 18-35.

The influence of the new capitalistic manufacturers in England in the formulation of the treaty with France, and the significance of the treaty as an indication of this new industrial group is here noted. The author shows how important the work of the industrialist was in introducing free trade.

- 333 **Magoun, Francis, Jr.**, "Scottish Popular Football 1424-1815," XXXVII, October 1931, 1-13.

In this "pre-historic prelude" to R. J. Phillips' *The Story of Scottish Rugby* Mr. Magoun traces the history of football from the earliest records to the point where Mr. Phillips' narrative begins, 1424-1815. (See also 313 above.)

- 334 **Kirby, Chester**, "The English Game Law System," XXXVIII, January 1933, 240-262.

Mr. Kirby depicts the country gentleman's game system in the eighteenth century as part of the political and social structure of the time. The game laws which defined and protected sporting rights evolved from the Norman forest laws. A measure enacted in 1671 supplemented by later legislation formed the basic law for the system for a hundred and sixty years. By its provision the taking of game was limited more to the landed classes, thus creating a system of privilege. The country gentleman reigned supreme and aroused the antagonism of the excluded classes—the laborers, most farmers, tradesmen, and the unqualified game eaters of the towns.

- 335 Read, Conyers, "The Fame of Sir Edward Stafford," XX, January 1915, 292-313.

Martin A. S. Hume in his edition of the *Spanish State Papers, Elizabeth*, noted evidence in the correspondence of the Spanish ambassador at Paris which seemed to prove that Sir Edward Stafford, English Ambassador to France (1583-1587) had sold valuable information to Philip II of Spain. Professor A. F. Pollard, after examining Hume's evidence, concluded that Hume had not proved his case (*English Historical Review* XVI, 1901, pp. 572-577). Conyers Read in this study investigates the problem anew in order to reach some final conclusion as to Stafford's honesty while ambassador to France. He concludes that Stafford in the various guises of "new friend," "new confidant," "Julius," and "Julio" was evidently supplying the Spanish Ambassador Mendoza in Paris with news of English and French affairs. Since the news concerned such important action as Sir Francis Drake's expedition against Philip II, Conyers Read concludes that Stafford's action must be regarded as treason.

- 337 Van Dyke, Paul, "Reginald Pole and Thomas Cromwell: An Examination of the *Apologia ad Carolum Quintum*," IX, July 1904, 696-724.

John Foxe in his *Book of Martyrs* depicted Thomas Cromwell as one who greatly served "the Gospel." Reginald Pole in the *Apologia ad Carolum Quintum* denounced him as a false counselor who contributed to Henry VIII's irreligion. Neither, in Mr. Van Dyke's opinion, presents a true picture. Cromwell must be judged from his acts as recorded in calendared letters and papers. Evidence demonstrates that Pole allowed his moral judgments to be altered by circumstances; his memory was many times confused and produced an inaccurate and biased account.

- 338 Lapsley, Gaillard T., "The Problem of the North," V, April 1900, 440-466.

One of the problems with which Henry VIII was confronted was that of consolidating England's northern border counties. Because circumstances had differentiated the northern counties from the rest of England, the task was a difficult one. The northern counties had not actually become part of the kingdom until late in the reign of Henry II. The development in the thirteenth century of the special jurisdiction of the marches which extended its control over Northumberland, Cumberland, and Westmoreland and its influence over Lancaster, Durham, and York, had helped to differentiate these areas. War with Scotland during the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries tended to force their administration directly under the king. Local influence, expressing itself in a revival of feudalism, created a feeling of local independence and segregation. Such a situation forced Henry VIII to place the counties under the direct control of the king and his council and to some extent place them beyond the reach of Parliament and common law.

- 339 Read, Conyers, "Good Queen Bess," XXXI, July 1926, 647-661.

The author recognizes Queen Elizabeth's greatness and reveals her character as it affected political and social problems. Queen Bess was cherished by persons who were enemies and friends alike. Living in an atmosphere of conspiracy and intrigue in her early years led her to be evasive and an opportunist. She gained the good will of everyone this way, even of the Cavaliers and the Puritans. Her counsellors and courtiers were a part of her machine, which was run for the happiness of the common people. Queen Bess took every advantage to further commercial enterprises, and believed in keeping herself on the throne, England at peace, and her subjects happy. Her plan of action was good because she had no plan of action and England was left rich and powerful where it was weak before her reign.

- 340 Merriman, Roger B., "Some Notes on the Treatment of the English Catholics in the Reign of Elizabeth," XIII, April 1908, 480-500.

Leniency characterized Queen Elizabeth's policy toward the English Catholics. Political, financial, and economic national prosperity were regarded as more essential than unity of the faith. Anti-Catholic measures were primarily adopted and enforced at times when the safety of the kingdom was threatened—1571-1572, 1581, and 1585-1587. Distinction was made between the active Catholics who endeavored to promote Roman authority in England and the Catholics who refused to attend the services in the Anglican Church. Government penalties consisted chiefly of fines and confiscations rather than death penalties and banishment. Elizabeth and her government tended to encourage the exile of Protestant nonconformists but aimed to retain Catholics under close observation within the realm.

- 341 Baumer, Franklin LeVan, "Christopher St. German," XLII, July 1937, 631-651.

The political philosophy of the Tudor lawyer St. German, his theory of law as revealed in his *Doctor and Student* and his attitude toward the problem of "regnum" and "sacerdotium" as revealed in tracts—*A Treatise concerning the Division Between the Spirituality and Temporality, Dialogue betwixte two englyshemen, whereof one was called Salem, and the other Bizance, A treatyse concerninge the power of the clergie and the lawes of the realme, A treatyse cōcernynge divers of the constitucyons prouynciall and legatynes, and An Answer to a Letter* are discussed.

- 342 Gross, Charles, "The Early History of the Ballot in England," III, April 1898, 456-463.

In this discussion of the thesis that the ballot existed in England long before its general introduction in 1872, Mr. Gross reveals evidence to prove that officers were elected by ballot since the sixteenth century. Possibility of the ballot being utilized in the fourteenth and fifteenth century is also suggested.

- 343 Kittredge, George L., "A Case of Witchcraft," XXIII, October 1917, 1-19.

This report of a case of alleged witchcraft which occurred in Devonshire in 1601 and 1602 involving a fisherman Michael Trevisard, his wife, and son is derived from eleven examinations which were taken before Sir Thomas Ridgeway, a Devon justice of the peace. The case was significant in that it revealed the substance of the witchcraft creed as held by the common people. The sum and substance of this creed was always *maleficium*—injury to the property and the health of the victims amounting to ruin and death.

- 344 Willson, David Harris, "The Earl of Salisbury and the 'Court' Party in Parliament, 1604-1610," XXXVI, January 1931, 274-294.

A study of the Earl of Salisbury's attempt to control the Parliament of James I. "The failure of Salisbury to control the House [of Commons] from 1603 to 1610 was more than the failure of a single minister. It was the failure of a system. Salisbury prepared for Parliament as in the reign of Elizabeth but nevertheless the royal faction remained in the minority and was divided against itself. The power of the privy council in the House shrank to pitiable weakness; Salisbury's attempts at lobbying and his use of conferences proved useless, and the king himself hindered rather than helped. The Elizabethan system, without Elizabeth, had broken down and was not to be restored. . . . He [Salisbury] presents the tragic picture of a great statesman striving to continue outworn institutions and fighting desperately to maintain a political system which the majority . . . would no longer tolerate."

- 345 Usher, Roland G., "Nicholas Fuller: A Forgotten Exponent of English Liberty," XII, July 1907, 743-760.

Nicholas Fuller in 1604-1607 questioned the authority of the High Commission, declared it illegal, denied the existence of the royal prerogative under which the letters patent to the commissioners had been issued. He maintained his contentions against the law courts and the king. "The name of Nicholas Fuller thus deserves to live not as that of a victim of the petty tyranny of a querulous government, but as one of the earliest of those great men who freed Parliament from the yoke of the Crown."

- 346 Willson, David Harris, "Summoning and Dissolving Parliament, 1603-25," XLV, January 1940, 279-300.

Hostility between king and Parliament broke out with sudden sharpness under James I. Such hostility produced angry dissolutions of Parliament and long interparliamentary periods. In these matters, the Privy Council informed James that parliaments were essential and had to be conciliated, summoned frequently and not dissolved in fits of anger. James I ignored such advice and accepted the opinions of individuals. As his reign advanced, the opinion of the Council carried less weight; its independence was crushed. Personal government by the king and Buckingham replaced government by the advice of a council.

- 347 Strateman, Catherine, "Expedicio Billarum Antiquitus," XLII, January 1937, 225-243.

Internal and external evidence is presented to establish the fact that a tract entitled in manuscript copies *Expedicio Billarum Antiquitus* and *Expeditionis Billarum Antiquitas* was written by Henry Elsynge as the fifth chapter—"Petitions & bills, & their proceedings anciently"—of an intended second book to his published treatise *Modus tenendi Parliamentum apud Anglas*, completed in 1625. The author discusses the contents of the *Expedicio*, and indicates its contribution to the study of English constitutional history.

- 348 Basye, Arthur Herbert, "The Secretary of State for the Colonies, 1768-1782," XXVIII, October 1922, 13-23.

The theory of the British secretariat is that "although there is but one secretariat, there may be as many secretaries as the business of state demands, each of whom may exercise the full powers of the secretariat." The question as to whether the secretary of state for colonies was a full-fledged "principal" secretary or merely an official in charge of colonial matters aroused much debate. Lord Germain succeeded in having the original theory of the secretariat recognized.

- 349 Guttridge, George H., "Lord George Germain in Office, 1775-1782," XXXIII, October 1927, 23-43.

Mr. Guttridge interestingly interrelates the life of the British colonial secretary with his career as a politician. No superficial explanation can account for the longevity of Lord Germain's position; the extent and bitterness of his unpopularity is inconsistent with his holding office for six and a half years. Though his prosecution of the war with the American colonies was faulty, he seems to have been the only minister closely connected with the war to agree with the king's idea of coercion; hence, he was given a peerage at retirement.

- 350 Kirby, Ethyn William, "Sermons before the Commons, 1640-42," XLIV, April 1939, 528-548.

Sermons preached before the House of Commons by such divines as William Bridge, Thomas Goodwin and Thomas Fuller in the critical years 1640-42 were intended to influence their hearers and to arouse hatred of the Laudian regime and zeal for reform of the church along Puritan lines. They were not constructive sermons but served their purpose as

incentives for reform. They helped to create a public opinion hostile to episcopacy. In them was a grim demand for vengeance.

- 351 **Hexter, J. H.**, "The Problem of the Presbyterian Independents," XLIV, October 1938, 29-49.

The parliamentary history of the early years of the Interregnum in England has been traditionally depicted as a struggle between the Presbyterians and the Independents as mutually exclusive groups. Such an interpretation is dependent upon a sharp distinction between the Presbyterians and the Independents. Mr. Hexter's investigation of political groups in the Parliament reveals a more complicated picture. No ideal black or white existed; rather an infinite "variety of greys." There were "Independents" who were not Independents adhering in a larger proportion than 'Presbyterians' who were not Presbyterians to a 'Presbyterian Church' that was not really Presbyterian." The Long Parliament was not simply an arena for a struggle between real Presbyterians and real Independents.

- 352 **Notestein, Wallace**, "The Establishment of the Committee of Both Kingdoms," XVII, April 1912, 477-495.

England's need for Scottish assistance in 1643 in the great rebellion, resulting in an alliance with Scotland, prompted the establishment of the Committee of Both Kingdoms as an executive body which could jointly control their military action. It replaced a less powerful body, "The Committee of Safety." Mr. Notestein describes the Committee as a prototype of the modern cabinet system. "The Committee of Both Kingdoms was the executive expedient of a government that wanted a Privy Council."

- 353 **McGovney, Dudley O.**, "The Navigation Acts as Applied to European Trade," IX, July 1904, 725-734.

The principle that no European commodities could be brought into England except in English vessels or in vessels of the country of which the goods were the growth, production or manufacture, found in the ordinance of 1651, was not entirely reenacted in the Navigation Acts of 1660. The Acts of 1660 imposed no restrictions upon the importation of European commodities into England by any ships except the products of Russia and Turkey and the enumerated articles.

- 354 **Catterall, Ralph C. H.**, "The Failure of the Humble Petition and Advice," IX, October 1903, 36-65.

Mr. Catterall shows that the Humble Petition and Advice was defective in several particulars and contained clauses dealing with religion and certain to provoke opposition from the sectaries. The petition also made no provision for Cromwell's successor's successor; it failed to define precisely the legislative functions of a second or "new house," and failed to provide for nominations to the "new house" after Oliver Cromwell's death.

- 355 **Catterall, Ralph C. H.**, "Sir George Downing and the Regicides," XVII, January 1912, 268-289.

Mr. Catterall narrates Sir George Downing's effort to capture the Regicides—men connected with the execution of Charles I—who had sought refuge in the United Provinces upon Charles II's restoration to the English throne. Because the United Provinces were known as a place which granted freedom to all, Downing's task was a difficult one. Only after many hindrances was he able to secure from the Estates of Holland warrants for the arrest of the fugitives.

- 356 **Grose, Clyde L.**, "England and Dunkirk," XXXIX, October 1933, 1-27.

In his discussion of Dunkirk's importance to English foreign policy, Professor Grose concludes that its sale in 1662 was caused primarily by

the need for ready cash and was furthered by Charles II's desire to live at peace with Louis XIV. Selling the city to France was a great mistake, for the transaction outraged a national tradition for the sake of temporary financial gain. Dunkirk had been acquired by a hard fought battle in 1658, only four years previous to its sale. Regard for moral values should have dictated its retention. In French hands it would again in peacetime become a haven for pirates to prey upon English shipping and in time of war it would be a refuge for privateers.

- 357 **Barbour, Violet**, "Consular Service in the Reign of Charles II," XXXIII, April 1928, 553-578.

The decline in English trading companies and factories encouraged merchants trading in western Europe to turn to the king for protection of their commercial privileges abroad. Consular service afforded the means for such protection. The service expanded rapidly in Charles' reign in spite of the difficulties which the consuls encountered from London merchants, the native merchants, the local officials, and the inefficiency of the consuls themselves as public servants. Rapid development of English trade and the government's need of the consulates to supply political, naval and commercial information were factors which increased the number of consuls after 1664.

- 358 **Abbott, Wilbur C.**, "English Conspiracy and Dissent, 1660-1674," pt. I, XIV, April 1909, 503-528; pt. II, XIV, July 1909, 696-722.

A chronological study of the nonconformists' plots and activities against the Restoration government from 1660 to 1674 aiming to depict the Restoration as a connecting link between two revolutions rather than as an interlude.

- 359 **Turner, Edward R.**, "Committees of Council and the Cabinets, 1660-1688," XIX, July 1914, 772-793.

A discussion of Conciliar development in England during 1660-1688. The Privy Council by the latter half of the seventeenth century had not lost its prestige but much of its real advisory power. Its work had been gradually taken over by Committees of Council consisting of members of the larger body—the Privy Council. Important among these committees in the development of cabinet government was the committee dealing with foreign affairs. Charles II had informally adopted one in 1660, but had constituted the "Committee of Forraine Affayres" in 1668. In the activity of the foreign committee was seen the working of a group of councillors in the interest of the king and not of Parliament, which led to the temporary defeat of the king and the rehabilitation of the Council in 1679 and to the final defeat of the king in 1688.

- 360 **Abbott, Wilbur C.**, "The Origin of English Political Parties," XXIV, July 1919, 578-602.

Three elements—a theory of government, a stable and continuous organization, and a purpose to control administration by means of a majority in a representative assembly—are considered essentials for a modern political party. Mr. Abbott places the origin of English political parties in the years between the Restoration and the Revolution of 1688. To describe their evolutionary development, he traces the course of political alignments resulting from conflicting points of view.

- 361 **Dudley, Albert Cassell**, "Nonconformity Under the 'Clarendon Code,'" XVIII, October 1912, 65-78.

In this study, the author rejects the view that Clarendon instituted a religious persecution against Dissent. Basing his opinions on the Devonshire House (London) records of English Quakers, he concludes that the extent of suffering endured under the Clarendon Code has been greatly overestimated, that the Code as a rule was a hardship only

to those who openly defied it, and that the suffering of the Presbyterians and Independents was not comparable to that of the "Fanatics"—the Quakers, Anabaptists and the Fifth Monarchists.

- 362 **Turner, Edward R.**, "The Development of the Cabinet 1688-1760," pt. I, XVIII, July 1913, 751-768; pt. II, XIX, October 1913, 27-43.

The English cabinet made its appearance in the seventeenth century at a time when the Privy Council was losing its importance. During the period 1688-1714 the double development of the cabinet and the Committee of Council was significant, while in 1714-1760 the development of the private meeting of ministers and the emergence of the inner cabinet was important. In the development of the cabinet the Privy Council as it enlarged gave over its initiative to the Committee of Council and the cabinet. The cabinet then became the important advisory body but as it enlarged it forfeited the greater part of its importance to the private meeting or inner cabinet.

- 363 **Cross, Arthur L.**, "The English Criminal Law and Benefit of Clergy During the Eighteenth and Early Nineteenth Centuries," XXII, April 1917, 544-565.

Benefit of clergy consisted originally in the right of the clergy in graver crimes to be exempt from the jurisdiction of the secular courts and to be subject only to the church courts. Later this right was given to all persons to use once. Since the church could not punish a crime with death, benefit of clergy became the means of tempering the severe criminal laws. By 1830 Sir Robert Peel had reduced the number of capital penalties to about a score; consequently, benefit of clergy was abolished.

- 364 **Turner, Edward R.**, "English Coal Industry in the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries," XXVII, October 1921, 1-23.

Mr. Turner's investigation of the vicious tactics of the barons of coal in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries discloses the unfair practices, monopolistic tendencies, attempts at combination in restraint of trade, and ruthless exploitation of labor that pervaded the entire British coal industry of those days. The lot of the oppressed workingmen is contrasted to the great power wielded and the huge profits extorted by the controllers of the arteries of transportation, the hostmen, lightermen, wharfingers, and the coal operators on the notorious Newcastle to London run. It was the day before the laborer had been given a voice in the way his own life was to be lived, the day of subjection, silence, and suppression. The few strikes were stamped out with barbarous ferocity.

- 365 **Bowden, Witt**, "The Influence of the Manufacturers on Some of the Early Policies of William Pitt," XXIX, July 1924, 655-674.

Mr. Bowden explains the evolution of William Pitt's policy towards the rising class of manufacturers in the mid-eighties of the eighteenth century. At first hostile to the demands of the newly organized General Chamber of Manufacturers, Pitt later surrendered to the insistent demands for a repeal of the ruinous excise taxes on manufactured goods (especially textiles) and a revision of the Anglo-Irish policy. The "Great Commoner," brought to his knees in 1785 by threat of an adverse vote in Parliament, came at last to recognize the identity of British economic interests with this rising class of industrialists. From 1786 onward, therefore, the new manufacturers usurped the seats of the mighty in the British Parliament. The era of the unchallenged supremacy of the old landed gentry had passed.

- 366 **Adams, George Burton**, "Magna Carta and the Responsible Ministry," XX, July 1915, 744-760.

The idea of the responsible ministry was known and even partly realized

in fact in the Middle Ages. Yet "Modern ministerial responsibility has nothing in common with medieval beyond the name and the mere idea." The modern principle began to develop when in the seventeenth century Parliament won clear supremacy over the king. The people of England wanted the monarchy but demanded that sovereignty rest in Parliament. Hence the compromise of 1660 and its gradual evolution. William III insisted on his right to appoint what ministers he pleased, but found that he could most easily obtain his will by appointing leaders in Parliament. Thus, without understanding what was happening, he and his successors established precedents for a responsible ministry. After 1688 the question of the seat of sovereignty was settled, and therefore controversies between king and Parliament were on matters of policy only, not fundamental constitutional differences. As a result impeachment of ministers became obsolete. North and Pitt challenged the new system, but Pitt's very success made impossible a renewal of the conflict. By the nineteenth century the English saw and understood what they had created.

- 367 **McIlwain, C. H.**, "The English Common Law, Barrier Against Absolutism," XLIX, October 1943, 23-31.

English common law, which defines the rights of individuals, serves as a barrier against absolutism. In its definition of individual rights is found the principal background of modern constitutionalism. Parliament's importance in constitutional development is not found in its representative character, but rather in its ability to preserve individual rights in the continuous struggle against absolutism.

- 368 **Clarke, Mary P.**, "The Board of Trade at Work," XVII, October 1911, 17-43.

Aiming to reveal the inner life of the English Board of Trade and Plantations, this study traces its development from 1696 through the eighteenth century. It describes the Board's function, its meeting places, its membership and its records. The Board enlightened the government on colonial affairs and occupied a place between the king in council and the outlying divisions of the empire.

- 369 **Clark, Dora Mae**, "The Office of Secretary to the Treasury in the Eighteenth Century," XLII, October 1936, 22-45.

This discussion of the British governmental position—Secretary to the Treasury—indicates the importance of the office in the eighteenth century and suggests the course of its evolution. It includes a summary of the secretary's necessary qualifications, his personal, administrative, and political functions, his tenure of office and the fees he received.

- 370 **Riker, Thad W.**, "The Politics Behind Braddock's Expedition," XIII, July 1908, 742-752.

Mr. Riker depicts the course of Cumberland's and Newcastle's personal and political differences arising over the question of dispatching troops to America to support the colonists in 1754.

- 371 **Ogden, H. V. S.**, "The State of Nature and the Decline of Lockian Political Theory in England 1760-1800," XLVI, October 1940, 21-44.

The article traces the transition in political thought from the abstract theory of natural rights as elaborated by Locke to the utilitarian position of Bentham. This was accomplished by Rousseau's historical conception of the state of nature which forced writers to modify their views to a more concrete conception of the pre-political state. The result of this modification was that the supporters of Locke were led into a frankly utilitarian position while those who were more conservative denied altogether a primitive state of nature as opposed to civil society.

- 372 **Laprade, William T.**, "The Stamp Act in British Politics," XXXV, July 1930, 735-757.

To show how the questions of the day were so involved that no issue was considered singly on its merits, Mr. Laprade reviews the political events and alignments attending the passage and repeal of the Stamp Act. British politicians, because they were divided on other questions, were unable to unite and do what they knew should be done for the salvation of the empire.

- 373 **Mantoux, Paul**, "French Reports of British Parliamentary Debates in the Eighteenth Century," XII, January 1907, 244-269.

The French reports of British parliamentary debates, consisting of lists of business transactions, decisions, and abstracts of the debates in the English parliament during the eighteenth century, supplement previously printed collections of the debates and contemporary periodicals for the study of British parliamentary history. Mr. Mantoux reviews the extent, contents, and credibility of the reports included in the *Correspondance Politique Angleterre*.

IIIC1. Notes and Suggestions

- 374 **Turner, E. R.**, "The Keelmen of Newcastle," XXI, April 1916, 542-545.
- 375 **Turner, E. R.**, "Early Opinion about English Excise," XXI, January 1916, 314-318.
- 376 **Gerson, Armand J.**, "The English Recusants and the Spanish Armada," XXII, April 1917, 589-594.
- 377 **Cross, Arthur Lyon**, "Puritanical Tendencies on the Part of Local Authorities, Lay and Ecclesiastical, in the Later Tudor and Early Stuart Period," XXI, January 1916, 312-314.
- 378 **Kittredge, G. L.**, "James I and Witchcraft," XX, April 1915, 570.
- 379 **Read, Conyers**, "The Fame of Sir Edward Stafford," XXXV, April 1930, 560-566.
- 380 **Cross, A. L.**, "An Unpopular Seventeenth Century View of Magna Carta," XXIX, October 1923, 74-76.
- 381 **Grose, Clyde L.**, "Charles the Second of England," XLIII, April 1938, 533-541.
- 382 **Turner, Raymond**, "Charles II's Part in Governing England," XXXIV, October 1928, 44-47.
- 383 **McCutcheon, Roger P.**, "Pepys in the Newspapers of 1679-1680," XXXII, October 1926, 61-64.
- 384 **Turner, E. R.**, "The Lords of the Committee of Council," XXII, October 1916, 90-94.
- 385 **George, Robert H.**, "A Note on the Bill of Rights," XLII, July 1937, 670-679.

Municipal liberties and freedom of parliamentary elections.

- 386 **Basye, A. H.**, "The Earl of Carlisle and the Board of Trade, 1779," XXII, January 1917, 334-339.

IIIC1. Documents

- 387 **Ferguson, Wallace K.**, "An Unpublished Letter of John Collet, Dean of St. Paul's," XXXIX, July 1934, 696-699.
- 388 **Tilton, W. F.**, "A Memorial of Lord Burghley on Peace with Spain, 1588," I, April 1896, 490-493.
The document shows Lord Burghley considering conditions of a peace with Spain after the Armada had sailed from Lisbon.
- 389 **Tilton, W. F.**, "Lord Burghley on the Spanish Invasion, 1588," II, October 1896, 93-98.
- 390 **Scofield, C. L.**, "Accounts of Star Chamber Dinners, 1593-1594," V, October 1899, 83-94.
- 391 **Sims, Catherine Strateman**, "The Speaker of the House of Commons, an Early Seventeenth Century Tractate," XLV, October 1939, 90-95.
Concerning the "speakers dutie."
- 392 **Higham, C. S. S.**, "The Accounts of a Colonial Governor's Agent in the Seventeenth Century," XXVIII, January 1923, 263-285.
- 393 **Catterall, R. C. H.**, "Two Letters of Richard Cromwell, 1659," VIII, October 1902, 86-89.
- 394 **Firth, C. H.**, "Emigration from Yorkshire to West Jersey, 1677," II, April 1897, 472-474.
Two letters from the letter-book of Sir John Reresby.
- 395 "Debates on the Declaratory Act and the Repeal of the Stamp Act, 1766," XVII, April 1912, 563-586.
- 396 "Letter of the Marquis of Rockingham Respecting Defense Against John Paul Jones, 1779," XV, April 1910, 567-571.
- 397 **Burnett, E. C.**, "Observations of London Merchants on American Trade, 1783," XVIII, July 1913, 769-780.

IIIC1. Cross References

- 237 **Adams, G. B.**, "The Descendants of the Curia Regis."
- 417 **Lingelbach, William E.**, "The Merchant Adventurers at Hamburg."
- 444 **Lubimenko, Inna**, "The Correspondence of Queen Elizabeth with the Russian Czars."
- 457 **Baumer, Franklin L.**, "England, the Turk, and the Common Corps of Christendom."
- 462 **Grant, William L.**, "Canada versus Guadeloupe, an Episode of the Seven Years' War."

- 465 Lowery, Woodbury, "Jean Ribaut and Queen Elizabeth."
 - 466 Scott, W. R., "The Constitution and Finance of the Royal African Company of England From Its Foundation till 1720."
 - 467 Strong, Frank, "The Causes of Cromwell's West Indian Expedition."
 - 470 Buffinton, Arthur H., "The Canada Expedition of 1746."
 - 471 Hall, Hubert, "Chatham's Colonial Policy."
 - 473 Andrews, Charles M., "The American Revolution: An Interpretation."
 - 475 Lingelbach, Anna L., "The Inception of the British Board of Trade."
 - 477 Schuyler, Robert L., "The Recall of the Legions: A Phase of the Decentralization of the British Empire."
 - 494 Aydelotte, Frank, "Elizabethan Seamen in Mexico."
 - 500 Smith, Goldwin, "English Poetry and English History."
 - 673 Preston, Richard A., "Fishing and Plantation: New England in the Parliament of 1621."
 - 686 Root, Winifred T., "The Lords of Trade and Plantations, 1675-1696."
 - 693 Carpenter, A. H., "Naturalization in England and the American Colonies."
 - 703 Cheyney, Edward P., "Some English Conditions Surrounding the Settlement of Virginia."
 - 707 Butler, James D., "British Convicts Shipped to American Colonies."
 - 738 Farrand, Max, "The Indian Boundary Line."
 - 765 Wead, Eunice, "British Public Opinion of the Peace with America in 1782."
 - 847 Howland, Henry R., "A British Privateer in the War of the American Revolution."
 - 849 Clark, Jane, "Responsibility for the Failure of the Burgoyne Campaign."
- And items 261, 264, 487, 503, and 702.

2. France

- 398 Baird, Henry Martyn, "Hotman and the 'Franco-Gallia,' " I, July 1896, 609-630.

The Massacre of Saint Bartholomew occurred as somewhat of a climax in French resistance to the Huguenots and their Protestantism. Protestants in France then realized that direct resistance to the king's authority was necessary. Justification had to be made for direct resistance against authority in view of past utterances which seemed to have demanded passive obedience to the legitimate sovereign, except in demands which

were forbidden by God. Francis Hotman in his *Franco-Gallia* met the demand. He aimed to prove that royalty in France always had been elective and that the king's subjects possessed, through their assemblies, the authority to remove the prince whom they had elevated to the throne. The king was a guardian of his subjects' liberties; when he became a tyrant his authority could be questioned. The idea promulgated by Hotman and his followers failed to retain its hold on men's minds because the hope that a Huguenot king would succeed Henry III restrained the Huguenots, who had accepted as a religious principle the idea that the king is the master of the life and property of his subjects.

- 399 **Thompson, James Westfall**, "Some Economic Factors in the Revocation of the Edict of Nantes," XIV, October 1908, 38-50.

"Economically speaking the revocation of the Edict of Nantes was the triumph of the ancient and immemorial economic régime of France over the modern tendency and more enlightened practices of the new political economy represented by Colbert." Economic prejudice against the Huguenots is emphasized as a factor influencing the revocation of the Edict of Nantes.

- 400 **Nussbaum, Frederick L.**, "The Formation of the New East India Company of Calonne," XXXVIII, April 1933, 475-497.

The political weight of big business in France just before the Revolution was demonstrated in the revival of the East India Company in 1785. The passion for profit liquidated political jealousies and even regimented the rival powers England and France in the service of the London and Paris bankers. The opposition of the provincial merchants to the privileged East India Company was a factor in alienating them from the monarchy.

- 401 **Hauser, Henri**, "The French Reformation and the French People in the Sixteenth Century," IV, January 1899, 217-227.

The early phases of the French Reformation were movements of social protest by the poor artisans of the cities against the manufacturers. Protestantism was associated with the workers, and the new church became an orientation point for strikes. The peasantry, who were a more stable element, resisted Protestantism, and hence France remained Roman Catholic.

- 402 **Palmer, Robert R.**, "The French Jesuits in the Age of Enlightenment," XLV, October 1939, 44-58.

In this statistical study of the contents of the Catholic *Journal de Trévoux* published from 1701 to 1762 to spread the learning of the "enlightenment" to the general reader, the author analyzes the trend or intellectual thought in that period. From the analysis, the "enlightenment" in France emerges as more than a struggle between the *philosophes* who favored new ideas and the clerics who opposed them. It was a readjustment of ideas that affected all persons, including the clergy.

- 403 **Fling, Fred Morrow**, "Mirabeau, A Victim of the Lettres de Cachet," III, October 1897, 19-30.

Mirabeau's father, a stern marquis who was bred to the French tradition of family honor above all, secured *lettres de cachet* on his son who was in danger of being imprisoned by his creditors. From 1773 to 1780, Mirabeau was a victim of these *lettres de cachet*, all secured by his father who looked on his son as a reckless rascal, with no regard for law or family tradition.

- 404 **Fling, Fred Morrow**, "The Youth of Mirabeau," VIII, July 1903, 657-682.

This story of Mirabeau's youth depicts his father's effort to perform his duty to "correct nature." Young Mirabeau's education under his

father's friend M. de Sigras failed. Military training afforded some discipline. No measures were neglected by the Marquis de Mirabeau. He permitted imprisonment by *lettre de cachet*. Mr. Fling does not attempt to explain Mirabeau's attitude toward his son, though the father's fondness for his younger son and his dislike for the elder doubtless influenced his conduct.

- 405 Johnston, R. M., "Mirabeau's Secret Mission to Berlin," VI, January 1901, 235-253.

Henri Welschinger's *La Mission Secrète de Mirabeau à Berlin 1786-1787* (Paris, 1900) is criticized because it fails to follow through the financial interests which were behind the mission, and fails to trace Mirabeau's relation with the secret societies—the Freemasons, the *Illuminés*, the German Union.

- 406 Catterall, R. C. H., "The Credibility of Marat," XVI, October 1910, 24-35.

Marat's own account of the publication of the English edition (1774) of his *Chains of Slavery* is compared with the available historical controls to determine his veracity. A wide divergence indicates his unreliability as an historical source.

IIIC2. Notes and Suggestions

- 407 Potter, John M., "The Conference at Bayonne, 1565," XXXV, July 1930, 798-803.
- 408 Garrett, Mitchell B., "The Call for Information Concerning the States-General in 1788," XXXVII, April 1932, 506-514.

IIIC2. Documents

- 409 "A Letter from de Vergennes to LaFayette, 1780," VIII, April 1903, 506-508.

IIIC2. Cross References

- 23 Thompson, J. W., "The Age of Mabillon and Montfaucon."
- 373 Mantoux, Paul, "French Reports of British Parliamentary Debates in the Eighteenth Century."
- 459 Biggar, H. P., "The French Hakluyt: Marc Lescarbot of Vervins."
- 460 Munro, W. B., "The Office of Intendant in New France: A Study in French Colonial Policy."
- 461 Morgan, William T., "The Expedition of Baron de Pointis Against Cartagena."
- 463 Aiton, Arthur S., "The Diplomacy of the Louisiana Cession."
- 464 Sloane, William M., "The World Aspects of the Louisiana Purchase."
- 698 Van Tyne, Claude H., "French Aid Before the Alliance of 1778."

- 824 Corwin, Edward S., "The French Objective in the American Revolution."
- 825 Van Tyne, Claude H., "Influences Which Determined the French Government to Make the Treaty with America, 1778."
- 827 Duniway, Clyde A., "French Influence on the Adoption of the Federal Constitution."
- And items 819, 836, 855, 862, and 868.

3. Germany

- 410 Rosenberg, Hans, "The Rise of the Junkers in Brandenburg-Prussia 1410-1653," pt. I, XLIX, October 1943, 1-22; pt. II, XLIX, January 1944, 228-242.

The rise of the Junkers to a position of economic, social, and political leadership was part of a European process of social and institutional change. Their rise coincided chronologically with the rise of the gentry in England and with the decline of the "noblesse" of seigniorial rentiers and absentee landlords in France and western Germany. In Prussia, their rise began with the decline of the Teutonic Knights. "Defeat in war and civil rebellion . . . long-run economic depression and fiscal maladjustment, broke the Order but made the Junkers."

- 411 Fay, Sidney B., "The Roman Law and the German Peasant," XVI, January 1911, 234-254.

A study of the effect of the introduction or "reception" of the Roman Law upon the German peasant in the time of Luther. Examination of the writing of Zasius and other sixteenth century jurists does not support the commonly accepted ideas that the introduction of the Roman Law in Luther's time tended to depress the German peasant into the condition of a Roman slave, that there was a "popular opposition" to it, or that it was a grievance of the peasants and one of the causes of the Revolt of 1525."

- 412 Van Dyke, Paul, "The Literary Activity of the Emperor Maximilian I," XI, October 1905, 16-28.

Self-glorification was the motive of Emperor Maximilian's literary activity. Maximilian's "book-making" consisted of writing and supervising the production of works, and the expression of his ideas in illustrations and sets of wood-cuts. Among others, the *Geheimes Jagdbuch*, written to teach his grandchildren the art of hunting, and *Teuerdank* and *Weiss Kunig*, two autobiographical works, are discussed.

- 413 Meyer, Arnold Oskar, "Charles I and Rome," XIX, October 1913, 13-26.

A character portrayal based especially on religious ideals. Charles was aesthetic and ethereal, putting out of his mind inconvenient matters. He was a Roman Catholic, but with reservations: he rejected papal supremacy, the Trent decrees, and believed that pope and king should make mutual concessions. He weakened royal sovereignty by partially suspending penal laws against the Roman Catholics. When his position became insecure the papacy did little to aid him. Charles' lack of understanding was shown in his persistent idea that reunion with Rome was possible.

- 414 Henderson, Ernest F., "Two Lives of the Emperor Charles V," IX, October 1903, 23-35.

Marked differences distinguish Edward Armstrong's study of Charles V in *The Emperor Charles V* (1902) and Robertson's *Charles V* (1769). They represent the new and old in history writing. Armstrong's more critical study does not merely tell a tale. It considers the economic, religious, and social elements behind the events of the emperor's reign. Charles V emerges from it a real person, not an imaginary type. Henderson describes the later work as one of the most dispassionate, most scholarly works on modern continental history.

- 415 Burr, George L., "A New Fragment on Luther's Death, with Other Gleanings from the Age of the Reformation," XVI, July 1911, 723-735.

Notations appearing on fly-leaves and margins of old books are suggested as possibilities for source material on the age of the Reformation. Burr attempts to establish the authorship and comments upon a description of Luther's death which he discovered as a marginal notation in a copy of Luther's German version of the Bible printed at Wittenberg by Hans Lufft in 1546. This description affords details concerning the announcement of Luther's death.

- 416 Daenell, Ernst, "The Policy of the German Hanseatic League Respecting the Mercantile Marine," XV, October 1909, 47-53.

A realization of the importance of a superior merchant marine for the maintenance of an independent and ever expanding sea-trade prompted the Hanseatic League's strict regulation of it. Orders regulating the construction of ships, the conduct of their crews, and the extent of their cargoes improved conditions of navigation. Such orders served as maritime law for the Hanseatic trade district of the North Sea and the Baltic.

- 417 Lingelbach, William E., "The Merchant Adventurers at Hamburg," IX, January 1904, 265-287.

Activities of the Merchant Adventurers at Hamburg shed light upon English commercial life as it developed through the medium of a medieval trading fraternity. The first settlement established at Hamburg in 1567 arose from the insecurity of trade in the Netherlands, the dissatisfaction of Spanish rule, and the loss of trade to Hamburg when the English government refused to allow the Hanse to continue the export of woolen cloth. The society successfully met the opposition of the Hanseatic League by the seventeenth century. By the nineteenth century it had lost its vigor, was unable to resist French opposition, and the Merchant Adventurers Society ceased to be a vital factor in English commercial life.

- 418 Henderson, Ernest F., "The Present Status of the Königsmark Question," III, April 1898, 464-476.

The mysterious circumstances surrounding the intrigue between Sophia Dorothea, electoral princess of Hanover, and Count Philip Königsmark, who vanished on the day (1694) he was to have run away with the princess, have never been completely understood. Research completed by Schaumann in *Sophie Dorothea und die Kurfürstin Sophie* (1879), by Köcher in "Die Prinzessin von Ahlden" in *Historische Zeitschrift*, XLVIII, 1-44, 193-235, and by Horric de Beaucaire in *Une Mésalliance dans la Maison de Brunswick* (1884) clarifies the situation. Schaumann and Köcher sift and sort all available manuscript evidence, thoroughly establish the untrustworthiness of all former authorities such as Sophia Dorothea's memoirs and Fräulein von Kneesebeck's journal, and bring the Königsmark episode into relationship with that which preceded and followed it.

- 419 **Fay, Sidney B.**, "The Beginnings of the Standing Army in Prussia," XXII, July 1917, 763-777.

Professor Fay asserts that the beginnings of the Prussian standing army are not found in the Thirty Years' War, but in connection with the Northern War, 1655-1660. Threatened by the danger of the impending war between Sweden and Poland, Frederick William, Elector of Brandenburg, was forced to form a new army of his subjects in Brandenburg, Prussia, and Cleves-Mark, partially supported by the collection of a land tax collected by military execution. *Landfolge* or general militia levy had proved impracticable even before the Thirty Years' War. Medieval feudal service had fallen into decay. From this new army originated the Prussian standing army; realizing in the Northern War the danger of "unpreparedness," the elector retained about 12,000 of his army which he had raised by necessity in time of war.

- 420 **Tuttle, Herbert**, "The Prussian Campaign of 1758," pt. I, III, October 1897, 1-18; pt. II, III, January 1898, 230-243.

This lost chapter of Professor Tuttle's *History of Prussia* deals with such matters as recruiting of men, funds, tactics, etc., during the campaign of 1758. Shortly after the professor's death, Houghton Mifflin and Company published what was thought to be all that Tuttle had completed of his *History of Prussia*. Mrs. Mary Tuttle discovered this manuscript and permitted the *American Historical Review* to publish it.

- 421 **Haworth, Paul L.**, "Frederick the Great and the American Revolution," IX, April 1904, 460-478.

Sentiment for the American cause did not motivate Frederick the Great's friendly attitude toward the colonies. Hatred for England and a desire to keep the way open for commercial relations with the colonies in case they became an independent power determined his action. Frederick's greatest aid to the American cause was indirect; his relations with Russia and France greatly influenced the course of England's action in America.

IIIC3. Documents

- 422 **Loewenberg, Richard D.**, "A Letter of Major John André in Germany," XLIX, January 1944, 260-261.

Letter from Christophe Lichtenberg to his friend Schernhagen, 1780.

- 423 **Fay, Sidney B.**, "Papers of Count Tisza, 1914-1918," XXIX, January 1924, 301-315.

See also note, XXIX, 522.

IIIC3. Cross References

- 561 **Ford, Guy Stanton**, "The Prussian Peasantry Before 1807."
798 **Kranel, Richard**, "Prince Henry of Prussia and the Regency of the United States, 1786."

And items 86 and 992.

4. Southern Europe

- 424 **Miller, William**, "The Republic of San Marino," VI, July 1901, 633-649.

A chronological development of the surviving example of the Italian medieval republics. Protected first by the Montefeltro family, then by

their successors in the duchy of Urbino, and finally by the popes, it managed to survive.

- 425 **Foster, Herbert D.**, "Geneva before Calvin (1387-1536), the Antecedents of a Puritan State," VIII, January 1903, 217-240.

Mr. Foster traces the development of Genevan political independence (1387-1536), the development of religious reform (1532-1536), and indicates the character of the institutions which resulted from these reforms before Calvin's arrival in Geneva in August, 1536.

- 426 **Ford, Guy S.**, "Wöllner and the Prussian Religious Edict of 1788," pt. I, XV, January 1910, 264-280; pt. II, XV, April 1910, 509-525.

Mr. Ford's study includes a sketch of the religious development during Frederick the Great's reign. It traces the intimate relationship between Frederick William II and the mystic Johann Christof von Wöllner which resulted in the adoption of a religious policy aiming to curb the freedom of thought manifested in the *Aufklärung*. The Religious Edict of 1788 defined the position of the Lutherans, Calvinists, Catholics, and the three tolerated sects—Herrnhuter, Mennonites, and Bohemian Brethren. The article throws light on Rosicrucian influences at the court of the successor of Frederick the Great.

- 427 **Merriman, Roger B.**, "The Cortes of the Spanish Kingdoms in the Later Middle Ages," XVI, April 1911, 476-495.

The purpose of this article is to examine and compare the composition, functions, and procedure of the Cortes of the different kingdoms of Spain from the thirteenth century to the sixteenth century with the English Parliament of the same period. The origin of the Cortes of Castile and Leon may be traced to the Councils of Toledo. Those of Aragon are harder to trace. The Catalanian Cortes developed gradually out of the feudatories of Barcelona. In legislative powers the Valencian Cortes were much the same as the Barcelonans. The Cortes of Navarre were very inefficient but they lasted 100 years after the others.

- 428 **Lea, Henry C.**, "Ferrand Martinez and the Massacres of 1391," I, January 1896, 209-225.

It was this Spanish priest, by his fiery preaching and zealous fanaticism, who fomented the massacres of the Jews, the destruction of their property, and helped create that vast group of Marranos whose existence brought on the Inquisition. Martinez scorned state and even ecclesiastical opposition in his zeal. True it is that the popular temper which made the massacres possible had been in course of development for a generation, but it was Martinez who lighted the powder.

- 429 **Lea, Henry C.**, "The First Castilian Inquisitor," I, October 1895, 46-50.

Ferdinand was opposed to the establishment of an Inquisition in Aragon, because he was jealous of the encroachments of the church on civil power. The author contends that neither Ferdinand nor Isabella asked for the establishment of the Inquisition in Spain but that it was Sixtus IV who attempted to introduce it, without waiting to be asked. A bull from the Vatican Archives is appended to substantiate this point.

- 430 **Lea, Henry C.**, "Lucero the Inquisitor," II, July 1897, 611-626.

This article is chiefly concerned with the career of the Spanish Inquisitor, Lucero, who used his ecclesiastical office at Córdoba to confiscate the wealth of the rich "conversos." A great deal of its discussion centers about the conflicts of political necessity with the zeal of the Inquisitorial office during the reign of Ferdinand. Lucero was at last removed from office because his cruel persecutions had inflamed the

populace to such opposition against Ferdinand that anarchy was threatening.

- 431 Haring, Charles H., "The Early Spanish Colonial Exchequer," XXIII, July 1918, 779-796.

Mr. Haring discusses the organization of the exchequer and the numerous sources of royal income derived from the West Indies in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.

- 432 Loomis, Louise Ropes, "The Greek Renaissance in Italy," XIII, January 1908, 246-258.

In this discussion of the Italian Renaissance, the author questions the importance of the revival of Greek in Italy as a powerful stimulus to the Italian Renaissance. The study of Greek was encouraged but Greek literature was utilized as a "storehouse of pedantic quotations and ethical examples." No attempt was made to understand the Greek point of view. Writing that was produced in Italy showed little effect of the Greek Renaissance except in surface embellishments.

- 433 Ferguson, Wallace K., "Humanist Views of the Renaissance," XLV, October 1939, 1-28.

To discover what were the Italian humanists' conceptions of their own age and past ages, and their conception of the general course and periodization of history, Mr. Ferguson examines the historical, biographical, and critical works of such humanists as Giovanni Villani, Leonardo Bruni, and Flavio Biondo of Forli. Although aware of the danger of forcing individual opinions in a single scheme, Mr. Ferguson notes certain general tendencies. The humanists agreed that there was a decline in ancient civilization with the decline of Rome; that this decline led to a period of barbaric darkness and was followed first by the revival of Italian cities, later by a revival of Italian literature and art. They did not agree upon when the revival occurred; nor did they generally suggest that the revival of culture was a rebirth of antiquity. Italian humanists thought their contemporary civilization an original creation.

- 434 Lea, Henry C., "Molinos and the Italian Mystics," XI, January 1906, 243-262.

An account of the condemnation in 1687 of Miguel de Molinos, a Spanish mystic who had found favor in Rome. Molinos' condemnation marked a change of attitude in the church toward mysticism. Rome had been lenient toward the teaching of mysticism. Molinos had been permitted to teach in Rome for years and had propagated his mystical doctrines. His success caused the church to realize the danger of such leaders who had visions of regenerating the church—leaders who were free from church supervision and control.

- 435 Knowlton, Daniel C., "An Unpublished Manuscript on the Rising of 1647-1648 in Naples," VIII, January 1903, 290-293.

A discussion of Dr. Giuseppe Donzelli's manuscript, *Partenope Liberata*, part II. *Partenope Liberata*, *Parte Prima*, published in 1648, is the first account of the revolution. The second part of the *Partenope Liberata* remained unpublished because of an order which prohibited it. The manuscript here described is located at Cornell University and is a copy of one preserved in the library of Baron Domenico Ronchi at Naples. It is a valuable contribution to the study of the rising because of its impersonal character and because of its descriptions of incidents which were not mentioned by Donzelli's contemporaries.

- 436 Lane, Frederic Chapin, "Venetian Shipping during the Commercial Revolution," XXXVIII, January 1933, 219-239.

Contrary to general thought, neither the advance of the Turk, the supposed exhaustion of Venice in the Italian wars, nor the reputed loss of

the spice trade to the Portuguese can be said to have ruined Venetian commerce. Mr. Lane here maintains that the depletion of the Venetian supply of ship timber was a basic, and hitherto neglected, reason for her decline as the economic leader of Europe. The decline of Venetian shipbuilding was far greater than any decline in her commerce. Tables concerning Venetian shipping are included in this article.

IIIC4. Notes and Suggestions

- 437 Lane, Frederic C., "The Mediterranean Spice Trade," XLV, April 1940, 581-590.
Evidence of its revival in the sixteenth century.
- 438 Fisher, D. H., "The Medici Account-Books," XXXIII, July 1928, 829-831.
- 439 Merriman, R. B., "Charles V.'s Last Paper of Advice to His Son," XXVIII, April 1923, 489-491.

IIIC4. Documents

- 440 Gilbert, Felix, "An Unpublished Machiavelli Letter," XLVII, January 1942, 288-292.
Niccolò Machiavelli to Giovanni Vernacci in Pera, 1520.
- 441 Wright, Irene A., "Spanish Policy toward Virginia, 1606-1612; Jamestown, Ecija, and John Clark of the Mayflower," XXV, April 1920, 448-479.
- 442 Faust, A. B., "Documents in Swiss Archives relating to Emigration to American Colonies in the Eighteenth Century," XXII, October 1916, 98-132.

IIIC4. Cross References

- 283 Schevill, Ferdinand, "San Galgano: A Cistercian Abbey of the Middle Ages."
- 447 Beazley, C. R., "Prince Henry of Portugal and the African Crusade of the Fifteenth Century."
- 448 Beazley, C. R., "Prince Henry of Portugal and His Political, Commercial and Colonizing Work."
- 452 Vignaud, Henry, "Columbus a Spaniard and a Jew."
- 453 Linden, H. vander, "Alexander VI and the Demarcation of the Maritime and Colonial Domains of Spain and Portugal, 1493-1494."
- 457 Baumer, Franklin L., "England, the Turk and the Common Corps of Christendom."
And item 894.

5. Eastern and Northern Europe; Netherlands

- 443 Pirenne, Henri, "The Formation and Constitution of the Burgundian State (Fifteenth and Sixteenth Centuries)," XIV, April 1909, 477-502.

The Burgundian state—that political union in which the seventeen provinces of the Netherlands were joined from the end of the fourteenth century to the middle of the sixteenth century, under the dukes of Burgundy, had neither political, geographic, nor linguistic unity. Yet its formation was not the result of the mere will of princes but of the co-operation of political, social, and economic forces within it.

- 444 Lubimenko, Inna, "The Correspondence of Queen Elizabeth with the Russian Czars," XIX, April 1914, 525-542.

The author attempts to show by the correspondence of Queen Elizabeth with the Russian Czars—Ivan the Terrible, Feodor Ivanovitch, and Boris Godounov—from the year 1554 to 1603, the objects of the parties. Queen Elizabeth protected her Muscovy Company in Russia by various evasive means, while Ivan had political views and plans to further Russia's and his lot, and matrimonial ideas for their fulfillment. In the reign of Feodor, the relations were strictly commercial and friendly. Boris relied on the matrimonial method to effect a union with England, but this was terminated by Elizabeth's death and his three years later. These close relations led to nothing of great significance, except in English influence, which ultimately resulted in the vast reforms of Peter the Great in the seventeenth century.

- 445 Perkins, James B., "The Partition of Poland," II, October 1896, 76-92.

Poland's partition in 1775 was a reflection of the unscrupulous morality of the day. By the final treaty, signed at St. Petersburg, August, 1772, Russia, Prussia, and Austria alone shared in the distribution of the territory. French political prestige had so declined that neither Frederick nor Catherine considered France in the transaction. As a result of this first partition of Poland, about one-quarter of the territory and population was divided among the three powers.

IIIC5. Notes and Suggestions

- 446 Golder, Frank A., "Catherine II and the American Revolution," XXI, October 1915, 92-96.

6. Discovery, Colonization, Diplomacy

- 447 Beazley, C. Raymond, "Prince Henry of Portugal and the African Crusade of the Fifteenth Century," XVI, October 1910, 11-23.

The inner stagnation of Catholicism and general apathy toward crusading did not deter the Infante from devoting himself and his country to intense warfare on Moslem Africa. He received enthusiastic sanction from the Holy See and awakened Portugal to a century of varied enterprise.

- 448 Beazley, C. Raymond, "Prince Henry of Portugal and His Political, Commercial, and Colonizing Work," XVII, January 1912, 252-267.

Behind Prince Henry's commercial and colonial activities was a policy which aimed to establish Portugal as a world power free from Spanish

interests. By establishing a colonial empire he hoped to gain that prestige which it was impossible for him to attain in Europe. Evidence of his political activity is to be seen in the charters which granted him license to colonize the Azores or granted him jurisdiction over the Madeiras and in the bull of Nicholas V prohibiting all Christians from intruding into the Portuguese conquests in Africa. Successful colonies in the Madeiras and Azores in the 1450's give evidence of his ability as a colonizer.

- 449 Nunn, George E., "The *Imago Mundi* and Columbus," XL, July 1935, 646-661.

To determine the influence of the *Imago Mundi* upon Columbus, Mr. Nunn compares the "unquestioned facts of Columbus's voyages" with the text and notes of the *Imago Mundi*. Such comparison reveals that the *Imago Mundi* was of little importance to the plans of the first voyage; and that it influenced the third voyage in that Columbus was curious to determine the truth of the *Imago Mundi* statement—that India approached Ulterior Spain or Africa.

- 450 Nowell, Charles E., "The Columbus Question," XLIV, July 1939, 802-822.

"The problem of Columbus calls for . . . a superscholar," because of the dearth of new documents, and recognition that many known documents are forgeries. Mr. Nowell here summarizes present knowledge on such questions as Columbus' birthplace, illiteracy, aims, geographic concepts, first voyage, etc.

- 451 Vignaud, Henry, "Proof that Columbus Was Born in 1451: A New Document," XII, January 1907, 270-279.

Two deeds of 1470 and 1479 afford evidence that Columbus was born during either the month of September or October of 1451. Passages essential for such a conclusion are reproduced in the article.

- 452 Vignaud, Henry, "Columbus a Spaniard and a Jew," XVIII, April 1913, 505-512.

Henry Vignaud refutes Don Garcia de la Riega's thesis that Columbus was born in Pontevedra, Spain, rather than in Genoa and that he was a Jew. From material in the local archives of Pontevedra, Señor de la Riega discovered the presence in 1434 of a family named Colon in Pontevedra whose forenames were the same as the kinsmen of Christopher Columbus; he attempted to prove that the family at Pontevedra was that of Christopher Columbus. Authentic documents prove that the Columbus family was established in the territory of Genoa from 1429 to the end of the fifteenth century. The testimony of Columbus himself revealed him as a Genoese.

- 453 Vander Linden, H., "Alexander VI and the Demarcation of the Maritime and Colonial Domains of Spain and Portugal 1493-1494," XXII, October 1916, 1-20.

In this article which constitutes part of a study concerning the significance of the bull of demarcation in the history of colonial expansion, Professor H. Vander Linden concludes that the bull of demarcation, like other bulls delivered to Spain in 1493, constituted at first a grant exclusively Spanish. It was to a great degree formulated by the chancery of Ferdinand and Isabella. The line of demarcation was suggested and probably first devised by Christopher Columbus. The bulls were not arbitrary in character, but were favors granted to Spain by Pope Alexander VI. Portuguese rights in the Atlantic were not recognized but rather restricted in the interest of Spain. Friction between Portugal and Spain was rather increased than diminished by the granting of the bulls.

- 454 **Harris, Henry**, "The Outcome of the Cabot Quater-Centenary," IV, October 1898, 38-61.

The author summarizes and criticizes the articles published on the four hundredth anniversary of Cabot's discovery of America. He concludes from them that Cabot was an unmitigated charlatan, a mendacious boaster, a would-be traitor to Spain and to England.

- 455 **Harris, Henry**, "Did Cabot Return from His Second Voyage?" III, April 1898, 449-455.

By virtue of newly discovered documentary evidence, the author reaches the conclusion that Cabot returned from his second voyage before September 29, 1498. The article minutely discusses these new documentary proofs.

- 456 **Angell, James B.**, "The Turkish Capitulations," VI, January 1901, 254-259.

Turkey issued many privileges and powers to European residents on her soil, and gave the earliest "capitulation" to France in 1535. Franks were allowed freedom of travel and liberty of worship. Later Turkey granted England, the Netherlands, and Austria privileges. In 1673 France received the right of protecting under her flag subjects of nations who had received no privileges or capitulations. Turkey made efforts to annul the capitulations, but European powers generally refused to yield (note date of article).

- 457 **Baumer, Franklin L.**, "England, the Turk, and the Common Corps of Christendom," L, October 1944, 26-48.

Basing his conclusions on evidence revealed in peace treaties, diplomatic correspondence, and treatises on international law of the period 1500-1650, Franklin L. Baumer concludes that a Turk was a "political pariah" excluded "from membership in the family of European states." The idea of "the common corps of christendom" in European diplomacy persisted well into the seventeenth century despite the secularization of European politics and the religious schism. "Not until the treaty of Carlowitz in 1699, or perhaps much later, were the European states prepared to regard the Turk as a power not unlike themselves and as worthy of inclusion in the European concert."

- 458 **Harbison, E. Harris**, "French Intrigue at the Court of Queen Mary," XLV, April 1940, 533-551.

The conflict between the French and the Spanish for hegemony in Europe was centered at the English court, where the French and Spanish ambassadors attempted to influence Mary's foreign policy. Since neither of these envoys spoke English, they depended on informants and agents for news of court occurrences and public opinion. But while the Spanish envoy, Renard, had great influence at court, the French ambassador, de Noailles, had little, and it was therefore he who fomented the greatest number of intrigues and plots, and gathered together the most spies. The article considers in detail the machinations of de Noailles and the relation between him and his informants.

- 459 **Biggar, H. P.**, "The French Hakluyt; Marc Lescarbot of Ver-vins," VI, July 1901, 671-692.

Marc Lescarbot represented in France the position occupied by Hakluyt in the history of English geography. Lescarbot left an account of his journey to New France (1606) in his *Histoire de la Nouvelle France contenant les navigations, découvertes, et habitations faites par les François ds Indes Occidentales et Nouvelle France sous l'aveu et autorité de nos Rois Tres-Chrétiens et les diverses fortunes d'iceux en l'exécution de ces choses depuis cent ans jusques à hui* published in 1609. In addition to his account, the work includes descriptions of the voyages of Verrazano, Villegagnon, Ribaut, Laudonnière, and Gourgues.

and accounts of Cartier, Roberval, de la Roche and de Monts. It throws light on the history of New France.

- 460 **Munro, W. B.**, "The Office of Intendant in New France: A Study in French Colonial Policy," XII, October 1906, 15-38.

A study of the office of the intendant in New France from its establishment in 1663 to 1760. The intendant of New France was a reflection of his Old World predecessor. He served as an independent administrative and judicial officer; he was responsible to the king alone. In spite of such privilege the intendants who actually performed their duties exercised their power with moderation, judgment, and honesty.

- 461 **Morgan, William T.**, "The Expedition of Baron de Pointis against Cartagena," XXXVII, January 1932, 237-254.

The career of Baron de Pointis and his capture of Cartagena in 1697 is here cited as evidence of the French concern over naval affairs, commerce, and colonization during the reign of Louis XIV. It has been generally assumed that the king was too engrossed in military affairs to be interested in commerce and that he cherished the army but starved the navy.

- 462 **Grant, William L.**, "Canada Versus Guadeloupe: An Episode of the Seven Years' War," XVII, July 1912, 735-743.

Mercantilism is seen as the central theme of the pamphlets involved in a controversy (1760-1761) dealing with the question whether Guadeloupe or Canada should be retained by Britain (should such a choice be necessary) when making peace with France in 1763. Beginning with *A Letter addressed to Two Great Men, on the Prospect of Peace, and on the Terms necessary to be insisted upon in the Negotiation*, Professor Grant reviews the extent of the pamphlets involved and suggests *An Examination of the Commercial Principles of the late Negotiation between Great Britain and France in 1761*, which is attributed to William Burke, as the one of most importance.

- 463 **Aiton, Arthur S.**, "The Diplomacy of the Louisiana Cession," XXXVI, July 1931, 701-720.

In this study of the diplomacy involved in the transfer of Louisiana to Spain, Mr. Aiton questions the validity of the idea that Louisiana at that time was a colonial "white elephant"; and that the cession was made as a compensation for Spain's loss of Florida in the peace preliminaries of 1762. Louisiana was used by France as a lure to secure the aid of Spain in the Seven Years' War. In the Franco-Spanish negotiations in 1761, Louisiana was suggested as a reward to Spain for its early entry into the war; later it was regarded as a possible nucleus about which France could rebuild its colonial empire in America after the peace. Its cession to Spain was a peace bribe proffered by France to win Spain's consent to an immediate signing of preliminaries of peace in 1762 that promised France all it could hope for under the existing conditions.

- 464 **Sloane, William M.**, "The World Aspects of the Louisiana Purchase," IX, April 1904, 507-521.

Mr. Sloane here discusses the Louisiana purchase as a decisive epoch of general history, and of American history in particular. The bulk of the article centers on Napoleon's motives in selling Louisiana, but the last few pages emphasize the meaning of the purchase to the United States.

- 465 **Lowery, Woodbury**, "Jean Ribaut and Queen Elizabeth," IX, April 1904, 456-459.

Jean Ribaut, a Frenchman who had established a settlement at Port Royal, South Carolina, offered his services to Queen Elizabeth in 1563. He urged Elizabeth to assist him in the conquest of Florida. Mr. Lowery

develops the details arising from this incident which he concludes reveal Elizabeth's serious designs to occupy Florida.

- 466 **Scott, W. R.**, "The Constitution and Finance of the Royal African Company of England from Its Foundation Till 1720," VIII, January 1903, 241-259.

Financial methods of seventeenth century trading companies are revealed in the records of the Royal African Company of England. From detailed statistics, some estimate can be made of the amounts of capital employed by early trading companies. Financial failures necessitated several schemes for reconstruction. Outlines of such schemes as well as a table summarizing the capital, dividends, and prices of stock from 1672 to 1712 have been compiled to demonstrate the financial course of the company.

- 467 **Strong, Frank**, "The Causes of Cromwell's West Indian Expedition," IV, January 1899, 228-245.

The desire for the establishment of religious freedom and the union of the Protestant states of the world, the desire to break through the Spanish trade monopoly in the West Indies in order to make such trade England's gain, and the desire to attack the nation which represented Catholicism all motivated Cromwell's attack on Spain and the expedition to the West Indies.

- 468 **Brown, Vera Lee**, "The South Sea Company and Contraband Trade," XXXI, July 1926, 662-678.

Vera Brown bases this study of the South Sea Company's illegal trade in Spanish America during the early part of the eighteenth century on the papers collected by two of the company's "unfaithful" servants. These were Dr. John Burnet, a factor at Porto Bello and Cartagena, and Matthew Plowes, described as secretary and principal accountant. A Spanish plenipotentiary to the Congress of Soissons in 1728 acquired the sworn testimonies of these two men, and the records of the South Sea Company which were in their hands, in order to procure information necessary to prove the illegality of the South Sea Company's trade. Miss Brown discusses the contents of these records, which reveal the company's exact methods and afford evidence of the Spanish knowledge of English procedure.

- 469 **Andrews, Charles M.**, "Anglo-French Commercial Rivalry, 1700-1750: The Western Phase," pt. I, XX, April 1915, 539-556; pt. II, XX, July 1915, 761-780.

From the writings of the eighteenth century mercantilist pamphleteers Professor Andrews reconstructs the history of Anglo-French commercial rivalry as seen by its contemporaries. France and England were matched rivals in that their policies were similar. They aimed to acquire colonies in the interest of trade, shipping, and manufactures, to exclude foreigners from the colonial market, and to make the mother country the beneficiary of such effort. Rivalry existed in the struggle for the control of the fisheries, in the slave traffic of Africa, and in the sugar trade in the West Indies. English pamphleteers greatly exaggerated the danger of French competition, but their writings served to spread the belief that France was surpassing England; that France was in control of the best markets; and that France was threatening British commercial leadership in America, the West Indies, Africa, and India. To these pamphleteers it seemed a crime against England to allow the northern British colonies to continue their practice of importing sugar, rum, and molasses from foreign colonies and of exporting these goods to England as British products.

- 470 **Buffinton, Arthur H.**, "The Canada Expedition of 1746," XLV, April 1940, 552-580.

Mr. Buffinton places the origin of the Canadian expedition of 1746 and the reason for its failure to sail to America in the political disagree-

ments which existed in English policy toward France. Ever since war with France had begun in 1689, Englishmen had been convinced that French power had to be reduced, but they disagreed as to the method. One faction emphasized the coalition with France's continental enemies; the other encouraged the colonial and maritime aspects of the conflict.

- 471 Hall, Hubert, "Chatham's Colonial Policy," V, July 1900, 659-675.

To save the American Colonies for England, Chatham recommended a policy of reconciliation. His plan, embodied in the "Provisional Act for Settling the Troubles in America" (1775), advocated constitutional reform. A standing army necessary for the protection of the colonies would be under strict control; colonial assemblies would enjoy fullest rights of legislation and taxation in local government. Chatham felt that in dealing with a colony "you must repeal her fears and her resentments and you may then hope for her love and gratitude."

- 472 Bemis, Samuel F., "British Secret Service and the French-American Alliance," XXIX, April 1924, 474-495.

The personnel and actions of the British intelligence service during the American Revolution were under the direction of William Eden. The secret overtures of peace made by Eden's agents to the American Commissioners in Paris contributed to the French concluding an alliance with America. These spies therefore unknowingly helped in the achievement of American independence. Together with a good summary of the character and actions of the British spies, Mr. Bemis includes a remarkable letter of Dr. Edward Bancroft reviewing his services to England.

- 473 Andrews, Charles M., "The American Revolution: An Interpretation," XXXI, January 1926, 219-232.

The American Revolution is here interpreted by using the English, rather than American, background. The Revolution is seen to be the natural outcome of the attempts of a privileged class to conduct affairs according to unchanging rules and formulae; it was primarily a political revolution, says Mr. Andrews, and is best seen in the growth of colonial assemblies into miniature parliaments.

- 474 Clark, Dora M., "The American Board of Customs, 1767-1783," XLV, July 1940, 777-806.

By indicating the reasons for the failure of the Board of Customs, established by Townshend for the purpose of eliminating corruption in revenue collection, the author touches on some reasons for the American Revolution. Thus the colonists were antagonistic to the Board because they saw in it "taxation without representation" and the abolition of their smuggling activities. Also, the confusion of British colonial administration, the conflict between various departments, and the failure of the home office to accept the Board's recommendations accounted for its demise.

- 475 Lingelbach, Anna L., "The Inception of the British Board of Trade," XXX, July 1925, 701-727.

The old Board of Trade and Plantations was abolished in 1782 together with over forty other wasteful and inefficient departments, as a result of the zealous work of Edmund Burke. As Prime Minister, William Pitt in 1784 set up a Committee for Trade to take the place of the old Board and especially to handle the problems concerning trade between British possessions and the United States. This Committee was organized on a sound basis, its members being men of distinction. Charles Jenkinson, presiding officer for nearly twenty years, gave it direction in developing and encouraging British shipping, manufacture, and commerce. Since 1861 the Committee has been known as the Board of Trade.

- 476 **Rose, J. Holland**, "Great Britain and the Dutch Question in 1787-1788," XIV, January 1909, 262-283.

The conflict between the weak Stadholder and his opponents became an episode of significance for all Europe. Britain supported the Stadholder consistently and with increasing vigor; Prussia was sympathetic and finally took action with 25,000 troops because of the insult to the Stadholder's consort, sister of Frederick William II; France strongly favored the opposition Free Corps and tried to aid them by threats against Prussia and Britain. Yet France was at the time quite unable to fight. When, by September, 1787, Russia and Austria became tied up in the East by war with Turkey, it was easy for Prussia and Britain to act decisively in Holland. The result was the complete discrediting of France and the creation of the Anglo-Prussian-Dutch alliance of 1788.

- 477 **Schuyler, Robert Livingston**, "The Recall of the Legions: A Phase of the Decentralization of the British Empire," XXVI, October 1920, 18-36.

A discussion of how Great Britain solved the problem of military colonial defense in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. Mr. Schuyler indicates how the burden of colonial defense was gradually shifted to the colonies in proportion to the amount of their self-government. He suggests that a causal relationship exists between free trade, colonial self-government, and the system of colonial defense.

IIIC6. Notes and Suggestions

- 478 **Aiton, Arthur S.**, "The Later Career of Coronado," XXX, January 1925, 298-304.
- 479 **Quynn, Dorothy M.**, "Recruiting in Old Orleans for New Orleans," XLVI, July 1941, 832-836.
- 480 **Fieldhouse, H. N.**, "A Note on the Negotiations for the Peace of Utrecht," XL, January 1935, 274-278.
- 481 **Mackall, L. L.**, "The Source of Force's Tract 'A Brief Account of the Establishment of the Colony of Georgia, under James Oglethorpe, February 1, 1733,'" XXX, January 1925, 304-308.
- 482 **Baer, Harold M.**, "An Early Plan for the Development of the West," XXX, April 1925, 537-543.

IIIC6. Documents

- 483 **Davenport, Frances G.**, "Texts of Columbus's Privileges," XIV, July 1909, 764-776.
- 484 **Lea, H. C.**, "A Letter of Ferdinand of Aragon to Diego Columbus, 1510," III, October 1897, 83.
- 485 **Read, Conyers**, "Despatches of Castelnau de la Mauvissière (on Frobisher, Gilbert, de la Roche, Drake), 1577-1581," XXXI, January 1926, 285-296.
- 486 **Christy, Miller**, "Attempts toward Colonization: The Council for New England and the Merchant Venturers of Bristol, 1621-1623," IV, July 1899, 678-702.

- 487 Newton, A. P., "A New Plan to Govern Virginia, 1623," XIX, April 1914, 559-578.
- 488 Bingham, Hiram, "Virginia Letters on the Scots Darien Colony, 1699," X, July 1905, 812-815.
- 489 "Narrative of a Voyage to Maryland, 1705-1706," XII, January 1907, 327-340.
- 490 Carter, C. E., "Observations of Superintendent John Stuart and Governor James Grant of East Florida on the Proposed Plan of 1764 for the Future Management of Indian Affairs," XX, July 1915, 815-831.
- 491 Guttridge, G. H., "Adam Smith on the American Revolution: An Unpublished Memorial," XXXVIII, July 1933, 714-720.

IIIC6. Cross References

- 288 Beazley, C. R., "The Russian Expansion Toward Asia and the Arctic in the Middle Ages (to 1500)."
 - 348 Basye, Arthur Herbert, "The Secretary of State for the Colonies, 1768-1782."
 - 349 Guttridge, George H., "Lord George Germain in Office, 1775-1782."
 - 356 Grose, Clyde L., "England and Dunkirk."
 - 357 Barbour, Violet, "Consular Service in the Reign of Charles II."
 - 368 Clarke, Mary P., "The Board of Trade at Work."
- And items 213, 392, 409, 441, 526, 697, 741, and 819.

7. General and Cultural

- 492 Thorndike, Lynn, "The Blight of Pestilence on Early Modern Civilization," XXXII, April 1927, 455-474.
- 493 Loomis, Louise R., "Nationality at the Council at Constance," XLIV, April 1939, 508-527.

To illustrate the widespread effects of pestilence on society from the fourteenth century to the eighteenth, the author cites the deaths of men of learning caused by the plague and indicates the plague's numerous occurrences in France and Germany and its effects upon scholars and institutions of learning. Evidence suggests that for western Europe in general, the plague was a wholesale affliction.

In the course of an Anglo-French dispute at the Council of Constance over the right of one people to rank as a nation in an international assembly, the word "natio" was defined in almost the modern sense of the word. The author suggests that such a definition of the word can be taken as a "presumptive proof" of the existence of nationalism at that time.

- 494 Aydelotte, Frank, "Elizabethan Seamen in Mexico and Ports of the Spanish Main," XLVIII, October 1942, 1-19.

This article is introduced as the first chapter of what is to be a detailed account of the lives of English seamen who experienced the trials of the Inquisition. Among these were men who had served under Sir John Hawkins on this third slavery voyage ending in 1568. The general account is the result of an agreement with G. R. C. Conway, president of Luz Y Fuerza, who was responsible for the translations of the Procesos of these Englishmen examined by the Inquisition in the sixteenth century. The material utilized by Mr. Aydelotte is significant because in the seamen's confessions he finds light upon the character and thought of the common man in Queen Elizabeth's reign.

- 495 Foster, Herbert D., "The Political Theories of Calvinists before the Puritan Exodus to America," XXI, April 1916, 481-503.

In his discussion of political theory, Mr. Foster first reviews such Calvinistic theories as the constitutional resistance to tyranny through the people's representatives, and then presents Calvin's sixteenth century followers—Knox, Hotman, Beza, Mornay, Zanchius, Althusius, Alstedius—as men who developed and extended his theories, combined them on the basis of growing experience, and incorporated them into public law.

- 496 Foster, Herbert D., "International Calvinism through Locke and the Revolution of 1688," XXXII, April 1927, 475-499.

Mr. Foster traces Locke's inheritance of Calvinistic influences, shows to what extent he remained a Calvinist, and shows what of Calvinism passed through Locke to eighteenth century attempts at civil and religious liberty. Locke was in all essentials of doctrine a Calvinist but was not of the narrower, scholastic seventeenth century Calvinists. He rather passed on the moderate liberal Calvinism of the early unembittered Calvin and the early sixteenth century creeds preserved by Huguenots, Independents, sixteenth century Dutch and Anglicans and the early Dutch Remonstrants. Five points of political Calvinism were clarified by Locke in his *Civil Government* and found expression in the Revolution of 1688 and the American Revolution. These points were: fundamental law, natural rights, contract and consent of people, popular sovereignty, and resistance to tyranny through responsible representation.

- 497 Philips, Edith, "Pensylvanie: L'Age d'Or," XXXVI, October 1930, 1-16.

Enthusiasm for Quakerism was at its height in France during the ten years preceding the French Revolution. Writers defended the movement; they glorified its establishment in America under William Penn. Edith Philips' study of this enthusiastic glorification and criticism traces its course in the French literature and journalistic writing of that day. The author concludes that the "defenders of the Quakers in the ten years preceding the French Revolution were not trying to establish a sect in France nor to purify the church by discussions of primitive Christianity. They were seeking for an ideal republic on which to base their hopes for France, and to prove that man could successfully return to a state of comparative simplicity without going back to barbarism."

- 498 Fay, Bernard, "Learned Societies in Europe and America in the Eighteenth Century," XXXVII, January 1932, 255-266.

The learned society or "société savante" is here regarded as one of the most characteristic institutions of the period in that it expressed the inner tendencies, the fundamental needs, and the instinctive beliefs of the eighteenth century. Its prestige was not only dependent upon scientific attainments but was linked with social and political considerations. Beginning with an intellectual type like the Académie Française, the "société

savante" during the eighteenth century became more utilitarian. Lack of intellectual discernment and a naive utilitarianism led the societies to trivial experimentation. Their importance was of a social, moral, and religious character.

- 499 **Wright, John W.**, "Sieges and Customs of War at the Opening of the Eighteenth Century," XXXIX, July 1934, 629-644.

Such customs as the recognition given by a besieging army to a surrendered garrison and the ceremony of the surrender of a fortress are discussed by John Wright of the United States Army.

- 500 **Smith, Goldwin**, "English Poetry and English History," X, October 1904, 28-40.

A discussion of poetry as an expression of the society out of which it was created from the age of Chaucer to that of Tennyson.

IIIC7. Notes and Suggestions

- 501 **Cross, A. L.**, "On Coppering Ship's Bottoms," XXXIII, October 1927, 79-81.
- 502 **Quynn, Dorothy Mackay**, "Civilian Defense and Academic Deferment, Orléans, 1411-1430," XLVII, July 1942, 801-805.
- 503 **Allison, W. H.**, "The First Endowed Professorship of History and Its First Incumbent" (Oxford, 1622), XXVII, July 1922, 733-737.
- 504 **Crane, Verner W.**, "The Philanthropists and the Genesis of Georgia," XXVII, October 1921, 63-69.
- 505 **Pease, Theodore C.**, "The Mississippi Boundary of 1763: a Reappraisal of Responsibility," XL, January 1935, 278-286.

IIIC7. Documents

- 506 "Cartwright and Melville at the University of Geneva, 1569-1574," V, January 1900, 284-290.
- 507 "A Projected Settlement of English-speaking Catholics from Maryland in Spanish Louisiana, 1767, 1768," XVI, January 1911, 319-327.

D. MODERN EUROPE (1789-1945)

1. Great Britain

- 508 **Costigan, Giovanni**, "The Tragedy of Charles O'Connor: An Episode in Anglo-Irish Relations," XLIX, October 1943, 32-54.

Failure to achieve personal success as well as failure to contribute to the cause of Catholic emancipation characterized the tragic life of the Irish Father Charles O'Connor. The privilege, granted to him in 1799, of being chaplain and librarian in the Grenville family in England,

proved to be neither a stepping stone to episcopal rank nor an opportunity to further the cause of Catholicism. The immediate Catholic issue in 1799 centered on the governmental privilege of veto over the nomination of bishops in Ireland. Charles O'Connor neglected to use his position as an influence in this Anglo-Irish relationship. Instead of converting his noble patrons to a cause, he was converted by them.

- 509 **Rose, J. Holland**, "Canning and the Spanish Patriots in 1808," XII, October 1906, 39-52.

Mr. Rose shows on the basis of archival study the complexity of Canning's task in trying to help the Spanish against the French and Napoleon. Although Canning was unsuccessful in furthering the union of the Spanish provinces in 1808, his efforts bore fruit in 1813.

- 510 **Lingelbach, Anna Lane**, "William Huskisson as President of the Board of Trade," XLIII, July 1938, 759-774.

After Canning's death in August 1827, Huskisson succeeded him as leader of the House of Commons; this was a recognition of Huskisson's work at the Board of Trade. This article is a eulogy of Huskisson and his work on the Board of Trade. His dignity, integrity, and sincerity in public life was noteworthy; his work on the Reciprocities Duties Act exemplified these characteristics.

- 511 **Marshall, L. S.**, "The First Parliamentary Election in Manchester," XLVII, April 1942, 518-538.

The importance of the parliamentary members representing the newly enfranchised boroughs is stressed in this analysis of the first parliamentary election (1832) in industrialized Manchester. Out of the radical policies promulgated by some of the men from these boroughs later emanated the principles of English liberalism in the next half century. "The basic issue in the election had been whether 'moderate' liberalism or uncompromising reformism would represent Manchester." The left wing of Manchester's industrial capitalists successfully bid for the leadership of the dominant forces in the city by fusing political propaganda with moral and humanitarian issues.

- 512 **Morehouse, Frances**, "The Irish Migration of the 'Forties," XXXIII, April 1928, 579-592.

Economic conditions in Ireland which led to the great Irish migration to America are described and illustrated in detail. A more favorable picture of the landlords is given, and the extent of migration corrected and explained.

- 513 **Tucker, Gilbert**, "The Famine Immigration to Canada, 1847," XXXVI, April 1931, 533-549.

Mr. Tucker discusses the problems which Canada faced in 1847 as the result of the most "polluted as well as relatively the most swollen stream of immigration" in its history. Its approach to the problems is described as a historical instance of the tendency to regard an economic problem as though it were a political one.

- 514 **Merk, Frederick**, "British Party Politics and the Oregon Treaty," XXXVII, July 1932, 653-677.

The opposition in Parliament and the differences of opinion within the majority had to be reconciled before the Oregon question was settled. On the last days of the Peel (Tory) government the Oregon treaty was announced, but the bellicose Whig, Palmerston, had been previously won over and the settlement assured. Lord John Russell's difficulties with Palmerston are here shown in well-chosen excerpts from letters and articles.

- 515 **Brand, Carl F.**, "The Conversion of the British Trade-Unions to Political Action," XXX, January 1925, 251-270.

This article traces the development of trade unionism in England and the struggle of the laboring classes in town and city to establish their right to a voice in legislation. Through the agency of the Reform League and the Workingmen's Association and the unselfish leadership of George Odger, the expansion of the British electorate was partially accomplished. The efforts of the revolutionary elements culminated in forcing the hand of the conservatives and materialized in the Second Reform Bill of 1867, which enfranchised great masses of the town and city laboring classes.

- 516 **Bryce, James Viscount**, "The Life of Disraeli, V, VI," XXVI, July 1921, 672-682.

A review of volumes V and VI of George Buckle's *The Life of Benjamin Disraeli, Earl of Beaconsfield*, stressing Disraeli's political career and the qualities that made him great as prime minister in 1868 and 1874. Disraeli believed in politics "first, last, and all the time"; he secured passage of the Reform Act of 1867-1868. Siding with the Turks in the Crimean War was the only mistake. As Disraeli's successor said long afterwards, "We put our money on the wrong horse." Disraeli was one of the last statesmen who made his reputation and kept his power by his work in Parliament.

- 517 **A British Officer**, "The Literature of the South African War, 1899-1902," XII, January 1907, 299-321.

A British officer here evaluates the literature concerning the South African War written before 1906. Newspaper articles, official dispatches, and correspondence, popular works of varying sorts, and works of scientific endeavor are reviewed. A bit of biography concerning the authors of various works and some narrative concerning the war is included.

- 518 **Brand, Carl F.**, "British Labor and the War-Time Coalitions," XXXV, April 1930, 522-541.

During World War I British labor gave the country the benefit of its co-operation by participating in the coalitions of Asquith and Lloyd George despite some internal opposition. As soon as the war was over it wisely avoided further association with Lloyd George and refused to compromise Labor principles. Arthur Henderson, secretary of the Labor party, was the central figure in labor-government relations during the war.

- 519 **Notestein, Wallace**, "Retrospective Reviews: Recent British Biographies and Memoirs," XXXII, October 1926, 22-33.

An evaluation of biographies and memoirs published in the 1920's including A. G. Gardiner's *The Life of Sir William Harcourt*, J. A. Spender's *The Life of the Right Honorable Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman G.C.B.*, E. T. Raymond's *Mr. Balfour, a Biography*, and others.

IIID1. Notes and Suggestions

- 520 **Richards, Gerda C.**, "The Creations of Peers Recommended by the Younger Pitt," XXXIV, October 1928, 47-54.
- 521 **Brand, Carl F.**, "An Early Nineteenth Century View of Magna Carta," XXXII, July 1927, 793-794.
- 522 **Klingberg, Frank J.**, "Harriet Beecher Stowe and Social Reform in England," XLIII, April 1938, 542-552.
- 523 **Van Alstyne, Richard W.**, "John F. Crampton, Conspirator or Dupe?" XLI, April 1936, 492-502.

- 524 **Albion, Robert G.**, "Admiralty Prize Case Briefs," XXXIII, April 1928, 593-595.
- 525 **Chang, Y. Z.**, "China and English Civil Service Reform," XLVII, April 1942, 539-544.
The nature and extent of Chinese influence on English civil service reform.

IIID1. Documents

- 526 **Schafer, Joseph**, "Letters of Sir George Simpson, 1841-1843," XIV, October 1908, 70-94.
On the Oregon situation.
- 527 "Dr. John McLoughlin's Last Letter to the Hudson's Bay Company, as Chief Factor, in Charge at Fort Vancouver, 1845," XXI, October 1915, 104-134.
- 528 **Whitelaw, W. Menzies**, "The Financial Plight of a Queen's Consort," XLII, July 1937, 691-699.
Memoranda of Prince Albert to Lord John Russell 1850.
- 529 **Tilley, Nannie M.**, "England and the Confederacy," XLIV, October 1938, 56-60.
Letter of Sir William Henry Gregory on question of Great Britain's recognition of the Confederacy.
- 530 "W. E. Gladstone to Sir Frederick Bruce, 1866," XXIX, April 1924, 517-518.
Request for information on U. S. treatment of the national debt.

IIID1. Cross References

- 92 **Cross, A. L.**, "Legal Materials as Sources for the Study of Modern English History."
- 95 **Webster, C. K.**, "The Study of British Foreign Policy (Nineteenth Century)."
- 342 **Gross, Charles**, "The Early History of the Ballot in England."
- 363 **Cross, Arthur L.**, "The English Criminal Law and Benefit of Clergy During the Eighteenth and Early Nineteenth Centuries."
- 367 **McIlwain, Charles H.**, "The English Common Law, Barrier Against Absolutism."
- 594 **Temperley, H. W. V.**, "The Later American Policy of George Canning."
- 598 **Adams, Ephraim D.**, "Lord Ashburton and the Treaty of Washington."
- 620 **Brand, Carl F.**, "The Reaction of British Labor to the Policies of President Wilson During the World War."
- 621 **Brand, Carl F.**, "The Attitude of British Labor Toward President Wilson During the Peace Conference."

- 622 Stephens, H. Morse, "The Administrative History of the British Dependencies in the Further East."
 - 623 Wrong, George M., "The Growth of Nationalism in the British Empire."
 - 1004 Schafer, Joseph, "The British Attitude Toward the Oregon Question, 1815-1846."
 - 1005 Merk, Frederick, "British Government Propaganda and the Oregon Treaty."
 - 1007 Adams, E. D., "English Interest in the Annexation of California."
 - 1167 Morrow, Rising Lake, "The Negotiation of the Anglo-American Treaty of 1870."
- And items 522, 627, 885, 1022, 1029, 1051, 1085, 1113, 1125, and 1195.

2. France

- 531 Bourne, Henry E., "Municipal Politics in Paris in 1789," XI, January 1906, 263-286.

An account depicting the organization and activities of the provisional government which assumed control of Paris after the municipal revolution in July, 1789, had destroyed the institutions of local government.

- 532 Lincoln, C. H., "The Cahiers of 1789 as an Evidence of a Compromise Spirit," II, January 1897, 225-228.

This article contends that the cahiers reflected neither the revolutionary fervor of the Third Estate nor the stubborn conservatism of the priestly and noble orders that would have made the French Revolution inevitable. Rather there were many among clergy and nobility who sympathized with the peasantry, while among the latter there were many who wished for a peaceful solution, caring little for forms of government if only financial burdens could be equalized.

- 533 Hyslop, Beatrice F., "French Gild Opinion in 1789," XLIV, January 1939, 252-271.

The hitherto ignored cahiers drawn up by the gild assemblies are here extensively used. Some of the outstanding problems dealt with by the gilds in their cahiers are reviewed, and attitudes of gilds in different sized towns are compared. Gildsmen are seen to have defended their privileges like the nobles and clergy, though their demands regarding general economic problems and taxation coincided with those of other members of the Third Estate.

- 534 Bourne, Henry E., "Improvising a Government in Paris in July, 1789," X, January 1905, 280-308.

Paris in July, 1789, afforded a study in the construction of a provisional administration in the midst of defunct institutions and political controversy. The electors to the Assembly were forced to improvise a government. They had to decide whether they should remain in session to direct the affairs of Paris or be replaced by a new assembly of deputies; they were faced with the task of re-establishing normal, peaceful conditions in Paris. Their readiness to assume direction with some respect for established authority avoided confusion and disaster in the early phases of the French Revolution.

- 535 **Fling, Fred Morrow**, "The Authorship of the Journal d'Adrien Duquesnoy," VIII, October 1902, 70-77.

The *Journal d'Adrien Duquesnoy, Député du Tiers État de Bar-le-Duc, sur l'Assemblée Constituante, 3 mai 1789-3 avril 1790*, published by the Société d'Histoire Contemporaine deals with the National Assembly. M. Brette, when reviewing it in the *Revue Critique*, May 11, 1896, questioned the authorship of the bulletins which, with letters, comprise the *Journal*. He asserted that the discovery of the letters in the midst of the bulletins did not prove that Duquesnoy was the author of the bulletins. Continuity of the narrative, reference to statements in early bulletins, personal interests in them, and language all point, in Mr. Fling's opinion, to a common authorship. The personality revealed in them indicates Duquesnoy as author of all.

- 536 **Becker, Carl**, "A Letter from Danton to Marie Antoinette," XXVII, October 1921, 24-46.

A letter seemingly written by Danton to Marie Antoinette at the Conciergerie is here reproduced, analyzed, and discussed. The discussion considers the various hypotheses concerning the letter. Whether Danton was involved in some plot to rescue the queen or whether he wished to guard her against anticipated assassination by the mob remains problematical.

- 537 **Brinton, Crane**, "Revolutionary Symbolism in the Jacobin Clubs," XXXII, July 1927, 737-752.

The Jacobins, even in the regular meetings, followed practices common in churches. They borrowed ritual, symbols, words, and ideas from both Roman Catholicism and Protestantism. Mr. Brinton sees this use of symbolism and ritual as a necessity to the Jacobins to give evidences of their coherence and unity.

- 538 **Brinton, Crane**, "The Membership of the Jacobin Clubs," XXXIV, July 1929, 740-756.

Mr. Brinton uses the membership lists of the Jacobin clubs between 1789 and 1795 and the tax-rolls of the revolutionary period, with all the statistics and information they contain, to draw four conclusions regarding the French Revolution. These conclusions are that (1) Jacobinism was not a class movement; (2) the Jacobins were not failures; (3) the clubs must have had other than an economic interest to hold them together; and (4) the typical revolutionist was not a misfit, but fitted "even in the environment from which he revolted." Enlightening statistical tables are here reproduced.

- 539 **Becker, Carl**, "The Memoirs and the Letters of Madame Roland," XXXIII, July 1928, 784-803.

Where does the real Marie Jeanne end and the ideal Marie Jeanne begin? Mr. Becker tries to answer this question by a resort to Madame Roland's letters and memoirs. He is interested in the working of her mind rather than in her interpretation of French Revolutionary times and sees a logical evolution in the development of her thoughts from those of a precocious young girl to those of a woman ready to take her turn on the guillotine.

- 540 **Bourne, Henry E.**, "American Constitutional Precedents in the French National Assembly," VIII, April 1903, 466-486.

Mr. Bourne traces the influence of American constitutional principles on the French National Assembly. He limits his discussion to the influence of such principles upon decisions concerning a declaration of rights, the grant of a veto to the king, and the organization of the legislature.

- 541 Hill, David J., "A Missing Chapter of Franco-American History," XXI, July 1916, 709-719.

Mr. Hill says it was the initiates of the "Nine Sisters," a secret philosophical fraternity, together with the officers who had returned from service in America and the flood of writers who were inspired by the American example, who gave "both shape and substance to the early period of the French Revolution." The influence of Franklin as presiding officer of the "Nine Sisters" is stressed; his distribution of copies of the American State Constitutions added to the liberal thinking of the time.

- 542 Gershoy, Leo, "Barère in the Constituent Assembly," XXXVI, January 1931, 295-313.

"Two crowded years sufficed to rescue Barère from the ranks of ambitious but comparatively unknown provincial lawyers, and to elevate him to a position of national prominence." The vacillation of his actions and ideas in these two years (1789-91) are here noted, and the political rather than philosophical reasons for his actions are emphasized.

- 543 Andrews, George Gordon, "Making the Revolutionary Calendar," XXXVI, April 1931, 515-532.

This review of the formation of the Republican Calendar in France traces the steps leading up to the law of November 24, 1793, and concludes with a summary of the causes for the failure of the new calendar. The demand for a reform of the calendar was far from unanimous and the resistance of all Catholics to it ultimately contributed to its failure.

- 544 Stephens, H. Morse, "Recent Memoirs of the French Directory," I, April 1896, 473-489.

Since historians of the French Revolution and the Consulate and the Empire have been reluctant to deal with the transition period—the French Directory—partly because of the absence of authentic documents and scarcity of personal memoirs, the publication (1894-1896) of memoirs dealing with the period is significant. They include: *Memoirs of Barras, Member of the Directorate*, edited by George Duruy; *Mémoires de Larevellière-Lépeaux, membre du Directoire de la République Française et de l'Institut National*; *Mémoires du général baron Thiébault*; and *Mémoires du général baron Roch Godart* (1792-1815). Those of two Directors—Paul Barras and Larevellière-Lépeaux—although written twenty years after their political careers had ended, are valuable not in valid evidence as to facts, but in affording clues to the causes of events; in recalling details which have been obscured from neglect at the time; in recording impressions in their true proportions; and in revealing the character of the authors.

- 545 Quynn, Dorothy Mackay, "The Art Confiscations of the Napoleonic Wars," L, April 1945, 437-460.

The most interesting aspects of this article lie not in the mention of many famous pieces of art which were taken to Paris during the French conquests, but in the description of the contemporary attitude toward these acquisitions: the French people generally thought it their right to take what they wished, and after the ultimate defeat they resented bitterly the attempts to restore the great works of Italy, Austria, Belgium, Prussia, Spain, etc. Many items had been damaged, lost, scattered, or had changed hands so that recovery was difficult or impossible. The total effect was a Europe-wide dispersion of art treasures.

- 546 Fay, Sidney B., "The Execution of the Duc d'Enghien," pt. I, III, July 1898, 620-640; pt. II, IV, October 1898, 21-37.

Napoleon, by demanding the execution of the Duc d'Enghien—the last male descendant of the Bourbon-Condé family—on the charges of having borne arms against the French Republic, and having taken part in plots

with England aiming to endanger the safety of the Republic, committed a grave political blunder. The decree dictated in March, 1804, to have the Duc d'Enghien tried by a court-martial resulted in an unjust trial which convicted an innocent man and depreciated Napoleon's prestige at home and abroad. To the French people, who had looked to Napoleon as the ruler who would secure internal peace and safety to France, the execution recalled the Reign of Terror. To rulers of Europe, Napoleon was the ruler who neglected the rights secured by international law and who would upset the peace and safety of Europe. The death of the Duc d'Enghien "hurt Napoleon in public opinion and politically was of no use to him."

- 547 Coffin, Victor, "A Preliminary Study of the Administrative Polity of Napoleon I," XIII, July 1908, 753-778.

This study incorporates Napoleon Bonaparte's confidential communications which indicate his political principles or administrative methods and which disclose the legality or constitutionality of his government. Mr. Coffin maintains that Napoleon recognized his government to be based upon the French Revolution; that he administered France for the most part in harmony with revolutionary principles; and that he normally treated "the law and the constitution as inviolable."

- 548 Coffin, Victor, "Censorship and Literature Under Napoleon I," XXII, January 1917, 288-308.

In 1810 a bureau of the Ministry of the Interior was set up to exercise a formal censorship on publications. Mr. Coffin here examines the principles and practices of this bureau as disclosed in its weekly reports during the period 1810-1814. He groups the material censored under three main heads: political, educational, and literary; the censors directed most of their attention to the last field. Mr. Coffin concludes by saying that the censorship practiced cannot be blamed for the literary sterility of the period; rather it was that France under Napoleon had lost its sense of proportion and was paying the penalty in various ways.

- 549 Sloane, William M., "Napoleon's Plans for a Colonial System," IV, April 1899, 439-455.

Napoleon in his plans for a French colonial empire considered the Far East and the mainlands of North and South America. For French expansion in India, he turned to a joint project (which proved unsuccessful) with Czar Paul in spite of the failure of the Egyptian expedition and the manifestation of increased British power in India. In the New World, Napoleon considered an empire centered in Louisiana or San Domingo. To develop a commercial, social, and political unit of San Domingo, Guadeloupe, Martinique, and the mainland, and to exclude the United States from the commercial benefits, were Napoleon's aims. The Spanish cession of Louisiana to France in 1802 was a part of the colonial plan. Napoleon's last colonial enterprise was his effort to secure ascendancy for the house of Napoleon in the Spanish colonies in South America.

IIID2. Notes and Suggestions

- 550 Bourne, Henry E., "Maximum Prices in France in 1793 and 1794," XXIII, October 1917, 107-113.
- 551 Kent, Sherman, "Two Official Candidates of the July Monarchy," XLIII, October 1937, 65-73.
- 552 Dunham, A. L., "Chevalier's Plan of 1859: The Basis of the New Commercial Policy of Napoleon III," XXX, October 1924, 72-76.

IIID2. Documents

- 553 Gottschalk, Louis R., "Lafayette as Commercial Expert," XXXVI, April 1931, 561-570.
- 554 H. E. B., "The Flight of Capital from Revolutionary France," XLI, July 1936, 710-727.
- 555 "William Jackson on Conditions in France, 1794," IX, April 1904, 525-532.
- 556 Yewdale, R. B., "An Unidentified Article by Talleyrand, 1796," XXVIII, October 1922, 63-68.
- 557 Furber, Holden, "Fulton and Napoleon in 1800: New Light on the Submarine *Nautilus*," XXXIX, April 1934, 489-494.
- 558 "The Escape of Louis Philippe, 1848," XXX, April 1925, 556-560.
- 559 "Paris in 1870: Letters of Mary Corinna Putnam," XXII, July 1917, 836-841.
- 560 Stanton, Theodore, "A Ministerial Crisis in France, 1876," VI, July 1901, 765-769.

IIID2. Cross References

- 72 Caron, Pierre, "A French Co-operative Historical Enterprise."
 - 93 Lingelbach, W. E., "Historical Investigation and the Commercial History of the Napoleonic Era."
 - 101 Hyslop, Beatrice F., "Recent Work on the French Revolution."
 - 107 Shotwell, J. T., "The École des Chartres."
 - 463 Aiton, Arthur S., "The Diplomacy of the Louisiana Cession."
 - 588 Turner, Frederick J., "The Policy of France Toward the Mississippi Valley in the Period of Washington and Adams."
 - 589 Reinsch, Paul S., "French Experience with Representative Government in the West Indies."
 - 591 Driault, Édouard, "The Coalition of Europe Against Napoleon."
 - 607 Carroll, E. Malcolm, "French Public Opinion on War with Prussia in 1870."
 - 667 Curtis, Eugene N., "American Opinion of the French Nineteenth Century Revolutions."
 - 832 Lyon, E. Wilson, "The Directory and the United States."
 - 833 James, James A., "French Opinion as a Factor in Preventing War Between France and the United States, 1795-1800."
- And items 103, 627, 843, and 895.

3. Germany

- 561 Ford, Guy Stanton, "The Prussian Peasantry before 1807," XXIV, April 1919, 358-378.

The conditions of the Prussian peasantry in the eighteenth century are here discussed. Various groups were becoming concerned with the exploitation of the peasants and many edicts after 1749 forbade the further absorption by the lord of the peasant's holdings. The royal interest in the peasantry is here shown to be military: the peasantry, as a class, must be preserved from utter degradation if they were to make acceptable soldiers. The Stein-Hardenberg reforms left obligations that were still being paid off well into the nineteenth century.

- 562 Ford, Guy Stanton, "Boyen's Military Law," XX, April 1915, 528-538.

This essay deals with the importance of Boyen's Military Law of 1814 for Prussia and for the rest of the world. The policy of universal conscription was established by this law in Prussia; by 1914 all the great powers of Europe, except England, had adopted this policy. Mr. Ford believes that universal conscription conditioned every other piece of legislation in these states, and finally became a "philosophy of political life." From Boyen's law in 1814 to the German defeat at the Marne in 1914 is the nineteenth century.

- 563 Hayes, Carlton J. H., "The History of German Socialism Reconsidered," XXIII, October 1917, 62-101.

A review of developments in German Social Democracy between 1848 and 1915. The German socialists failed in their goal of a Marxian society and in the fulfillment of a universal brotherhood of the world's workingmen, but they did more than any other group to preserve for twentieth century Germans a passion for political democracy, a passion for indirect liberties, and for social equality.

- 564 Usher, Abbott P., "Interpretations of Recent Economic Progress in Germany," XXIII, July 1918, 797-815.

Written before the end of World War I, this review relates the economic revival of Germany. Having few natural resources, Germany had to rely on the cunning of her statesmen. She was particularly apt at utilizing foreign inventions. The period of her greatest progress was characterized by liberal thought.

- 565 Langsam, Walter Consuelo, "Emperor Francis II and the Austrian 'Jacobins,' 1792-1796," L, April 1945, 471-490.

Francis II "abhorred political change," and early in his reign the appointment of Colloredo as chief adviser helped to quash even moderate plans for governmental reorganization. Soon the Viennese police turned up a "Jacobin conspiracy" and men like Pergen and Saurau went to work to stamp out subversive clubs and activities. "Red-baiting" flourished, and some real plots were discovered and destroyed. People flocked enthusiastically to executions. One significant effect of governmental activity was to dissuade intelligent Austrians from political interests of any kind.

IIID3. Documents

- 566 Langsam, Walter, "An Imperial Understatement," XLIV, July 1939, 852.

A note from Emperor Francis to Maria Theresa, written in 1805 while he fled from the scene of the *Dreikaiserschlacht* at Austerlitz.

- 567 Curti, Merle E., "John C. Calhoun and the Unification of Germany," XL, April 1935, 476-478.

- 568 "The American Minister in Berlin, on the Revolution of March, 1848," XXIII, January 1918, 355-373.
- 569 Vagts, Alfred, "William II and the Siam Episode," XLV, July 1940, 834-841.
- "Radolin's Report of February 17, 1902, with the Kaiser's Comments."

IIID3. Cross References

- 2 Dow, E. W., "Features of the New History: Apropos of Lamprecht's *Deutsche Geschichte*."
- 8 Guiland, A., "German Historical Publications, 1914-1920."
- 584 Larson, Laurence M., "Prussianism in North Sleswick."
- 605 Lord, Robert H., "Bismarck and Russian in 1863."
- 611 Usher, Roland G., "Austro-German Relations Since 1866."
- 614 Fay, Sidney B., "The Kaiser and the Secret Negotiations with the Tsar, 1904-1905."
- 615 Sontag, Raymond J., "German Foreign Policy, 1904-1906."
- 641 Hayes, C. J. H., "Contributions of Herder to the Doctrine of Nationalism."
- 642 Armstrong, Sinclair W., "The Internationalism of the Early Social Democrats of Germany."
- 1003 Lingelbach, William E., "Saxon-American Relations, 1778-1828."
- 1170 Bailey, Thomas A., "Dewey and the Germans at Manila Bay."

4. Southern Europe; Balkans; Near East

- 570 Greenfield, Kent Roberts, "Economic Ideas and Facts in the Early Period of the Risorgimento (1815-1848)," XXXVI, October 1930, 31-43.

The social and economic changes that took place in Italy between 1815 and 1848 have been curiously underemphasized by Italian historians. The influence of the Industrial Revolution, especially the influence of the railroad and steamship, has not received due attention as a factor leading to Italian unity. "Independence [and unity] is not a cry of revolution but a principle of political economy." This was the feeling of the new intellectual leaders of Italy like Cavour—a feeling upheld by Mr. Greenfield.

- 571 Gay, H. Nelson, "Garibaldi's Sicilian Campaign as Reported by an American Diplomat," XXVII, January 1922, 219-244.

In his examination of dispatches sent by John Daniel to Secretary of State Cass, Mr. Gay does not claim to "throw a flood of new light" upon Garibaldi's Sicilian campaign. The value of the dispatches is in their revelation of such new facts as Garibaldi's visit to the American legation to inquire whether the United States would offer protection to Nice if it revolted against France and Piedmont.

- 572 **Earle, Edward M.**, "American Interest in the Greek Cause, 1821-1827," XXXIII, October 1927, 44-63.

Americans sympathized with the Greeks in their war of independence against Turkey. Not only was lip-service given to the Greeks but genuine relief was given them in the form of money, supplies, and helpful military leaders. Public opinion espoused the Greek cause which seemed similar to the American cause of fifty years earlier.

- 573 **Black, C. E.**, "The Influence of Western Political Thought in Bulgaria, 1850-1885," XLVIII, April 1943, 507-520.

Emphasis is placed upon the influence of Western thought in the Bulgarian struggle against the misrule of the Ottoman government (until 1878) as well as on the establishment of a government (1878-1885) suitable to the traditions and ambitions of the country. Mr. Black's analysis of liberal and conservative groups active in the country demonstrates to what extent both were dependent upon Western Europe for their political views. The adoption by the Bulgarian Constitution of 1878 of such principles as freedom of the press, freedom of association, civil liberties, and prohibition of slavery, clearly demonstrates the reliance on Western political ideas. Karavelov, the Bulgarian liberal, was conscious of the danger of naive imitation when he wrote in 1882: "I believe that the desire of the Europeans to adopt all the English institutions, without carefully investigating their practice, is one of the chief reasons for the many failures which parliamentarianism has suffered."

- 574 **Stavrianos, L. S.**, "The Balkan Federation Movement: A Neglected Aspect," XLVIII, October 1942, 30-51.

In the discussion of the Balkan Federation Movement, the author emphasizes a neglected aspect—namely, the contribution of the Balkan labor and agrarian parties to the movement. Not only did these parties contribute mass support but they constituted the sole effectively organized force during the years between the Balkan League of 1912 and the Balkan Conferences of the 1930's. The federation constituted an integral part of the philosophy and program of the communists, socialists, and agrarians.

- 575 **Hitti, Philip K.**, "The Possibility of Union among the Arab States," XLVIII, July 1943, 722-732.

The Arab world dividing itself into the North Africa block—Morocco, Algeria, Tunis, Libya (excluding Egypt)—and the Western block—Arabia proper, Palestine, Transjordan, Lebanon, Syria, and Iraq—could form a loose federation which would better assure stability in the Near East. In Mr. Hitti's opinion, such union must begin with Syria (including Lebanon, Palestine, and Transjordan) and Iraq as its nucleus.

IIID4. Notes and Suggestions

- 576 **Greenfield, Kent R.**, "The Austrian Government and Italian Conspiracy, 1831-1835," XXIX, July 1924, 716-721.

- 577 **Lee, Dwight E.**, "The Origins of Pan-Islamism," XLVII, January 1942, 278-287.

IIID4. Documents

- 578 **Mosely, Philip E.**, "A Pan-Slavist Memorandum of Liudevit Gaj in 1838," XL, July 1935, 704-716.

- 579 "Henry Adams and Garibaldi, 1860," XXV, January 1920, 241-255.
- 580 Albrecht-Carrié, René, "Italy and Her Allies, June, 1919," XLVI, July 1941, 837-843.
Extract from Minutes of the Council, 1919.

IIID4. Cross References

- 424 Miller, William, "The Republic of San Marino."
- 509 Rose, J. Holland, "Canning and the Spanish Patriots of 1808."
- 602 Riker, Thad W., "The Pact of Osborne—a Controversial Episode in the Making of Rumania."
- 826 Shepherd, William, "Wilkinson and the Beginnings of the Spanish Conspiracy."
- 831 Rives, George L., "Spain and the United States in 1795."
- 908 Gay, H. Nelson, "Garibaldi's American Contacts and His Claims to American Citizenship."
- 998 Robertson, William S., "The United States and Spain, 1822." And items 295, 296, and 647.

5. Eastern and Northern Europe

- 581 Coolidge, Archibald C., "A Plea for the Study of the History of Northern Europe," II, October 1896, 34-39.

The study of Northern Europe helps us to understand the importance of Russia in the world today, clarifies the influence which the Scandinavians and Slavs have had on the Western countries, and enables us to grasp the significance of nationalism in relation to the conflict of the Orthodox and Roman churches.

- 582 Knaplund, Paul, "Finmark in British Diplomacy, 1836-1855," XXX, April 1925, 478-502.

By the treaty of November 21, 1855, Britain and France undertook to protect Sweden and Norway against Russia in return for pledges that no territory should be ceded to Russia and no special rights of pasturage, fishing, or hunting should be given her. This treaty marked the climax of Palmerston's and John Crowe's interest in Finmark, the northernmost county of Norway; these men feared Russia's getting a naval base on the Atlantic coast of Finmark, from which she could attack Britain and develop a large navy and merchant marine. The above-mentioned treaty, guaranteeing the territorial integrity of Norway, put the British at ease.

- 583 Stephenson, George M., "The Background of the Beginnings of Swedish Immigration, 1850-1875," XXXI, July 1926, 708-723.

Mr. Stephenson here correlates some of the conditions and events which set in motion and accelerated the migration from Sweden to the United States between 1850 and 1875. Religious and economic causations are considered most important. The steps taken to "stem the tide" are summarized in conclusion.

- 584 **Larson, Laurence M.**, "Prussianism in North Sleswick," XXIV, January 1919, 227-252.

An account of Prussia's efforts to win Sleswick and Holstein to Prussianism. Both duchies were ceded by Denmark to Prussia and Austria by the Treaty of Vienna, 1864. Austria yielded its rights to these lands to Prussia in 1866. Suppression of the Danish language in Sleswick led to isolation of North Sleswick from Prussia because of hatred and indifference, and also to increasing isolation from Denmark because of the use of the Prussian language.

IIID5. Notes and Suggestions

- 585 **Clark, Chester W.**, "Prince Gorchakov and the Black Sea Question, 1866—A Russian Bomb That Did Not Explode," XLVIII, October 1942, 52-60.

IIID5. Documents

- 586 "Correspondence of the Russian Ministers in Washington, 1818-1825," XVIII, January 1913, 309-345; XVIII, April 1913, 537-562.

In two parts.

IIID5. Cross References

- 12 **Presniakov, A.**, "Historical Research in Russia During the Revolutionary Crisis."
 592 **Perkins, Dexter**, "Russia and the Spanish Colonies, 1817-1818."
 604 **Golder, Frank A.**, "The American Civil War Through the Eyes of a Russian Diplomat."
 612 **Packard, Laurence B.**, "Russia and the Dual Alliance."
 614 **Fay, Sidney B.**, "The Kaiser and the Secret Negotiations with the Tsar, 1904-1905."
 1035 **Golder, F. A.**, "The Russian Fleet and the Civil War."
 1166 **Golder, F. A.**, "The Purchase of Alaska."

And items 635 and 1200.

6. International Relations; Imperialism

- 587 **Coolidge, Archibald C.**, "The European Reconquest of North Africa," XVII, July 1912, 723-734.

A brief account of history and geography of "Africa Minor"—North Africa—is given as introductory material. The story of how Europe recaptured North Africa from Asiatic influence is given in detail. The motive was expansion for colonial trade. The Latin countries and England led the reclamation process.

- 588 **Turner, Frederick J.**, "The Policy of France toward the Mississippi Valley in the Period of Washington and Adams," X, January 1905, 249-279.

French effort centered on the attempt to unite the region beyond the Allegheny mountains with the province of Louisiana and to control the Mississippi Valley. It was an attempt to curb England, to compel the United States to serve the interests of France, and to promote French ascendancy over Spanish America. The region, it was hoped, would serve as a source of supply for the French West Indies. France relied upon the frontiersmen and upon negotiations with the independent Indian tribes of the Southwest to further plans for dominating the trans-Allegheny region.

- 589 **Reinsch, Paul S.**, "French Experience with Representative Government in the West Indies," VI, April 1901, 475-497.

The political institutions of the French West Indies which served as models for colonial representation in the past were the result of two opposite policies. One policy regarded the colonies as an integral part of the national territory; the other regarded them as a special regime governed by special laws and decrees. Colonial representation appeared both in the national parliament and in local assemblies. Neither policy was definitely abandoned for the other. But in the late nineteenth century, a change was taking place. The French West Indies, as models for colonial legislation, were losing their influence. The peculiar needs of the populations in their different stages of development were being given more consideration.

- 590 **Whitaker, Arthur P.**, "The Retrocession of Louisiana in Spanish Policy," XXXIX, April 1934, 454-476.

The retrocession of Louisiana to France by the Treaty of San Ildefonso is considered from Spanish sources. The conclusion is that Spain (and especially Godoy) realized her position was untenable and used Louisiana as a diplomatic pawn to preserve peace and stop American encroachment on New Spain.

- 591 **Driault, Édouard**, "The Coalition of Europe against Napoleon," XXIV, July 1919, 603-624.

Napoleon's forced coalition of Europe against England and Russia turned against him after the Moscow debacle. Mr. Driault summarizes Napoleon's rise to power and his fall; he takes a friendly attitude toward Napoleon, portraying him as the savior of Revolutionary principles against a coalition of kings. Mr. Driault's remarks are especially derogatory to the work of the Congress of Vienna.

- 592 **Perkins, Dexter**, "Russia and the Spanish Colonies, 1817-1818," XXVIII, July 1923, 656-672.

The frequent allusions to the subjugation of South America by the Holy Alliance have been based on mythology, not history. Likewise the attributing of sinister motives to the actions of Tsar Alexander was unjustified. Mr. Perkins here gives a very favorable interpretation of the diplomacy of Alexander. Although the Russian ministers Tatishchev and Pozzo were rash in their sympathies, Alexander's influence tempered Russia's actions.

- 593 **Goebel, Dorothy Burne**, "British Trade to the Spanish Colonies, 1796-1823," XLIII, January 1938, 288-320.

Canning's statement in March, 1824, that Great Britain had received permission from Spain to trade with her colonies is strongly questioned in this article. The events between 1796 and 1823 regarding trade with the Spanish colonies are closely followed. During a great part of this period American shipping predominated in trade with the Spanish colonies especially in the Caribbean. The British merchants, not the government, took most of the initiative involved in opening up the Spanish

colonies for trade. The revolutions in these colonies and the War of 1812 harmed American trade but helped the British a great deal. An abundance of source material is to be found in the footnotes.

- 594 **Temperley, H. W. V.**, "The Later American Policy of George Canning," XI, July 1906, 779-797.

Canning's "last years were spent in endeavoring, by every means of diplomatic skill and ingenuity, to check the pretensions of [the] Monroe Doctrine." In spite of this statement Mr. Temperley views Canning's American policy as unselfish in many respects, and as part of a "larger, more tolerant doctrine."

- 595 **Temperley, H. W. V.**, "Canning and the Conferences of the Four Allied Governments at Paris, 1823-1826," XXX, October 1924, 16-43.

This article deals with attempts to prolong the Ambassadors' Conference of Paris. The decisions of that body had a great influence on European policy since the emperors of Austria and Russia were far away and their ambassadors made the decisions. There is an appendix of the various conferences and the representatives to them.

- 596 **Colby, Charles W.**, "The Earlier Relations of England and Belgium," XXI, October 1915, 62-72.

England was early interested in the status of Belgium because of the proximity of the two countries and the danger of an invasion of England via Belgium. In 1831 England and France virtually set Belgium up as a nation and guaranteed her neutrality. From that time on, says Mr. Colby, English feeling toward Belgium ceased to be determined by self-interest alone. By 1870 Gladstone was saying that a violation of Belgian neutrality would amount to the "extinction of public right in Europe"; by 1914 England was ready to go to war because of a violation of that neutrality.

- 597 **Lingelbach, William E.**, "Belgian Neutrality: Its Origin and Interpretation," XXXIX, October 1933, 48-72.

At the January 20, 1831, session of the London Conference the independence and neutralization of Belgium was voted by the five great powers. The legend that Talleyrand originated the plan is without foundation. Palmerston, Bülow, and others had more to do with it. The importance of Belgian neutrality to England, first as a buffer to France and later as an impediment to Germany, is stressed and threats to the neutrality (up to 1914) are noted.

- 598 **Adams, Ephraim D.**, "Lord Ashburton and the Treaty of Washington," XVII, July 1912, 764-782.

Mr. Adams here commends Lord Ashburton on his work in connection with the Treaty of Washington. He believes the settlement of the northeastern boundary dispute in 1842 was a credit to the British diplomat. The British sources used support that contention.

- 599 **Schmitt, Bernadotte E.**, "The Diplomatic Preliminaries of the Crimean War," XXV, October 1919, 36-67.

Professor Schmitt's lengthy analysis of the "diplomatic preliminaries" in 1853-1854 is a study of Russia's motives in Turkey and an analysis of the French, Austrian, Prussian, and English diplomacy to "maintain peace." Regarding Russia's policy he concludes that Tsar Nicholas I from the beginning of the struggle intended to secure a protectorate over the Greek Christian subjects of the Porte; that to meet the opposition of the Four Powers he sought to detach one or more from the Concert; that pride, a belief in the justice of his cause, and confidence in Russian military strength led him to refuse all concessions. Concerning the other powers, Mr. Schmitt concludes that Napoleon probably desired

war; that Great Britain unquestionably desired peace but by not making clear that Russian designs in Turkey would be resisted, encouraged the Tsar in his demands; that Prussia's policy was one of neutrality; and that Austria's policy, though hostile to Russia, was of no assistance to France and Great Britain because of its lack of enthusiastic support.

- 600 Golder, Frank A., "Russian-American Relations during the Crimean War," XXXI, April 1926, 462-476.**

During the Crimean War the United States was the only nation to whom Russia could look for friendship and possible aid. First Stoeckl, the Russian minister to the United States, spent his time concocting plans to get the United States into the war; later he tried to fit out privateers in America; when this plan failed he tried merely to keep the friendship of the United States for future use.

- 601 Henderson, Gavin B., "The Diplomatic Revolution of 1854," XLIII, October 1937, 22-50.**

During 1854 Austria drifted away from Russia until on December 2 she aligned herself with Russia's enemies, England and France, in a definite treaty; this was a diplomatic revolution which dissolved the last relics of the system of 1815. Austria's foreign minister, Buol, was in the center of the negotiations, and though he thought he had accomplished a diplomatic feat Mr. Henderson thinks he merely alienated Germany and Russia. The Crimean War occupied an important place in the diplomacy of the period.

- 602 Riker, Thad W., "The Pact of Osborne: A Controversial Episode in the Making of Rumania," XXXIV, January 1929, 237-249.**

The question of establishing a new regime (and perhaps union) for Wallachia and Moldavia was the chief preoccupation of the Powers of Europe in 1857 and 1858. At Osborne in 1857 Napoleon III, visiting Victoria, brought Walewski together with Palmerston and Clarendon and came to a verbal understanding with England. The political union of the Danubian principalities was not pushed, but the Pact undoubtedly cleared the air, and Napoleon, when he obtained a new election in Moldavia, won the essential thing, for the sentiment in the principalities would eventually lead to union in spite of outside feeling.

- 603 Baxter, James P., 3rd, "The British Government and Neutral Rights, 1861-1865," XXXIV, October 1928, 9-29.**

The future interests in British sea power have dictated no small portion of British neutrality policy. This policy, especially exemplified by Admiral Milne, favored the North during the American Civil War. Mr. Baxter comprehensively reviews questions regarding blockades, ship-building and repairing, and contraband, which came up during the war; he concludes that Britain was obeying not only the letter but the spirit of international law.

- 604 Golder, Frank A., "The American Civil War through the Eyes of a Russian Diplomat," XXVI, April 1921, 454-463.**

The author gives the opinions of Édouard de Stoeckl, who spent about twenty years in this country in various diplomatic capacities, a representative of the educators of foreign opinion. He states that Stoeckl missed entirely the spirit of idealism that animated the American people. "When he thought we would not fight, it was because of our good sense and economic interests; when we did fight, it was because of the demagogues; when we won the war it was because of our resources and determination; and when we reconstructed the Union it was because of a special Providence." His letters to Prince Gorchakov bring out the likeness of Uncle Sam but not the inner self. With Stoeckl in mind, the author questions the usefulness of the diplomat as an agent

of international conciliation and the value of diplomatic papers for the study of social history. These diplomats, reaching America with preconceived ideas, and having no opportunity to catch the American thought, are, nevertheless, the educators of foreign opinion, the influence on makers of war and peace. Usually they have the opinion that the Americans are chiefly interested in money-getting.

- 605 Lord, Robert H., "Bismarck and Russia in 1863," XXIX, October 1923, 24-48.**

This article questions and examines the high estimates of Bismarck's diplomacy made by himself and accepted for a long time by posterity. Bismarck's diplomacy in the policy crisis of 1863 is characterized as bungling and inept with regard both to Prussian opinion and to the attitude of Napoleon III. The Alvensleben Convention for limited Russo-Prussian co-operation is the central point of the narrative. The author concludes with a warning against the distortions of Bismarck's memoirs and with the suggestion that in 1863 Bismarck was far from being the master statesman that he became a few years later.

- 606 Long, Dwight C., "The Austro-French Commercial Treaty of 1866," XLI, April 1936, 474-491.**

Austria, excluded from a German tariff union, protected her industry and agriculture by making a treaty with France and kindred treaties with other European countries. The treaty lowered tariff duties and procured reciprocity in indirect trade. France benefited more by the agreement, but Austria realized her hopes of a better footing in the world trade. Germany failed in her attempt to stifle Austrian enterprise by exclusion of Austria from her tariff union.

- 606a Craig, Gordon A., "Great Britain and the Belgian Railways Dispute of 1869," L, July 1945, 738-761.**

Professor Craig describes the swing to isolationism in Britain after 1864, and shows particularly how this affected diplomacy in the crisis of 1869. The French government was interested in French purchase of some Belgian railroads; the Belgians feared French control and legislated against it, expecting Britain to help them preserve their position. But the British government, through Clarendon, played a hands-off role, proclaiming indifference—until Belgium and France were at swords' point. Then, partly through the influence of the queen, the British declared their opposition to the purchase. France backed down, but unnecessary tension had been created between Britain, Belgium, Prussia, and France because of British hesitancy.

- 607 Carroll, E. Malcolm, "French Public Opinion on War with Prussia in 1870," XXXI, July 1926, 679-700.**

Since the war with Prussia has usually been attributed to the pressure of public opinion, the author tries to find the truth behind the belief. He finds that while many people were in favor of war, public opinion was far from being unanimous. War was not popular and its declaration was far in advance of French public opinion, as had been government messages leading to it.

- 608 Fuller, Joseph V., "The War Scare of 1875," XXIV, January 1919, 196-226.**

Aiming to clarify the situation surrounding Bismarck's diplomatic activity involving England, France, Germany, and Russia and to interpret Bismarck's policy in the war scare of 1875, this article describes the course of the strained Franco-German relations accentuated in that year by the French military law of March 10, the "Law of the Fourth Battalions." Bismarck, anxious that France should never again become a great military power, was determined to remedy the deficiency of the Treaty of Frankfurt, which did not provide for a limitation on arma-

ments. For this objective, Mr. Fuller concludes, he was prepared even to go to war.

- 609 **Langer, William L.**, "The European Powers and the French Occupation of Tunisia 1878-1881," pt. I, XXXI, October 1925, 55-78; pt. II, XXXI, January 1926, 251-265.

In his discussion of Bismarck's policy in the Tunisian question, Mr. Langer regards two factors as decisive in bringing about the French occupation of Tunisia in 1881: first, the attitude of Bismarck, who from the time of Waddington's ministry never wavered in his support of the French, and second, the policy of Cairoli, who incensed the central powers against Italy. Bismarck favored this occupation because he hoped that by it France would occupy herself with Mediterranean problems, forget Alsace-Lorraine, and not become involved in a coalition with Russia.

- 610 **Goriainov, Serge**, "The End of the Alliance of the Emperors," XXIII, January 1918, 324-349.

An analysis of Russo-German relations from 1881 to 1890 based on archive materials of the Russian Foreign Office. Mr. Goriainov traces the diplomacy of the "Three Emperors" agreements of 1881 and 1883 and the decline of Russo-German friendship during that period.

- 611 **Usher, Roland G.**, "Austro-German Relations since 1866," XXIII, April 1918, 577-595.

Mr. Usher questions an interpretation of Austro-German relations "dominated by the memory of 1866, by the jealousy, suspicion and hatred of Prussia which it has been supposed was transferred in 1871 to the new empire." Such an interpretation was "negated by the war of 1914." Close co-operation must rather have existed for some years before the war. Alliance with Germany became the "paramount fact" of Austrian policy in 1871 because of Austrian fear of Russia. Pan-Germanism dominated the secret policies of both nations. Its existence was not to be suspected by the European powers. Consequently public relations of the two nations were such as to demonstrate that no relationship existed between them. To confess such relationship would have been "an international signal of the existence of Pan-Germanism."

- 612 **Packard, Laurence B.**, "Russia and the Dual Alliance," XXV, April 1910, 391-410.

Mr. Packard, in his survey of circumstances from 1887 to 1891 leading to the Franco-Russian alliance, emphasizes Russian initiative and Russian fear of isolation rather than French pressures as factors in the promotion of the alliance.

- 613 **Shippee, Lester B.**, "Germany and the Spanish-American War," XXX, July 1925, 754-777.

The opening up of German archives changed the accepted view of Germany's attitude during the Spanish-American war. It is clear that Germany was in no sense hostile to the United States and that there never was any real danger of war over the Manila Bay incident.

- 614 **Fay, Sidney B.**, "The Kaiser's Secret Negotiations with the Tsar, 1904-1905," XXIV, October 1918, 48-72.

Review of the famous "Willy-Nicky" correspondence by which the Kaiser persuaded the Tsar to sign the abortive Björkö treaty. The gist of the letters is reviewed in an attempt to connect them with later developments.

- 615 Sontag, Raymond J., "German Foreign Policy, 1904-1906," XXXIII, January 1928, 278-301.

"A consistent policy predicates unity of purpose and action. During the period under discussion neither of these essential elements was present in German diplomacy." Because of the presence of three distinct personalities on the German diplomatic scene, each looking at events with a different point of view, consistency was impossible. Mr. Sontag re-creates the events of the years from 1904 to 1906 as seen through the eyes of the three men—William II, Bülow, and Holstein—and concludes that the coming debacle was inevitable.

- 616 Rupp, George Hoover, "The Reichstadt Agreement," XXX, April 1925, 503-510.

Different interpretations of the Reichstadt Agreement by Russia and Austria no doubt led to the disagreement that followed. Whether Austria was to get Bosnia and Herzegovina was the point of dispute. Russian documents state that Austria was to receive only Bosnia while Austrian documents state clearly that Herzegovina was to be included. Mr. Rupp's study shows that the agreement was an oral one and that after the meeting each minister made a memorandum of his understanding of the meeting. Austria's military support caused Russia to yield although it was a matter of six months before the settlement was concluded.

- 617 Schmitt, Bernadotte E., "Triple Alliance and Triple Entente, 1902-1914," XXIX, April 1924, 449-473.

This article attempts to find the causes lying behind the outbreak of the World War. Mr. Schmitt blames Count Berchtold and Bethmann. The refusal of Germany to bring the Concert of Europe into action caused Britain to join the dual alliance and maintain its position. With no compromise made, war came.

- 618 Fay, Sidney B., "New Light on the Origins of the World War," pt. I, XXV, July 1920, 616-639; pt. II, XXVI, October 1920, 37-53; pt. III, XXVI, January 1921, 225-254.

Basing his study of the origins of World War I chiefly on the "Kautsky Documents" and the "Austrian Red Book," Mr. Fay in the first article of a series of three, traces Austrian and German diplomatic activity to July 29, 1914. In interpreting the responsibility for the war up to July 29, concerning Germany he concludes: that neither Bethmann nor the Kaiser had agreed (on July 5) that Austria should be given a free hand for speedy but undetermined action against Serbia; that neither Bethmann nor the Kaiser believed that such action would produce a world war. Concerning Austria, Mr. Fay concludes that Berchtold's reckless policy created a situation in which the Central Powers became so involved that localization of the conflict became impossible. In the second article discussing the three days (July 29-31) preceding the Kaiser's proclamation of "Imminence of War," Mr. Fay traces Bethmann's effort to induce Austria to accept a peaceful solution for the conflict. The third article of the series is devoted to a discussion of Russia and the other powers.

- 619 Bailey, Thomas A., "The Sinking of the Lusitania," XLI, October 1935, 54-73.

This article is a discussion concerned with the actual facts of the sinking of the *Lusitania* rather than with diplomacy or international law. The author is very objective and comes to the conclusion only that the results of the disaster (especially the almost complete collapse of the German cause in the United States) hardly justified this action of the Germans.

- 620 **Brand, Carl F.**, "The Reaction of British Labor to the Policies of President Wilson during the World War," XXXVIII, January 1933, 263-285.

The British Labor movement saw in the idealism of Wilson an expression of its own ideals. Wilson's speeches and actions during the war were generally lauded by British Labor and his ideas were supported by them as a basis for peace.

- 621 **Brand, Carl F.**, "The Attitude of British Labor toward President Wilson during the Peace Conference," XLII, January 1937, 244-255.

The British Labor party in 1918 accepted Wilson as its spokesman. Throughout the Peace Conference he was considered the lone hope of labor to carry out the ideals they held in common. As he made concessions, the attitude toward him changed and at last he was censured by a majority of labor, though the vestiges of his work were considered as a possible basis for future changes.

- 622 **Stephens, H. Morse**, "The Administrative History of the British Dependencies in the Further East," IV, January 1899, 246-272.

British administration of the Straits Settlements, Sarawak, British North Borneo, and Hong Kong has reflected the historic evolution of the dependencies. Each area has been controlled by methods characteristic of the influence which settled it. For example, the Straits Settlements reflect the British system which was established in India, that of holding certain strategic points under direct British administration while controlling as dependent protectorates, states whose native rulers are guided by British residents. In Hong Kong, where the East India Company never had control, Indian precedents and laws have never been established.

- 623 **Wrong, George M.**, "The Growth of Nationalism in the British Empire," XXII, October 1916, 45-57.

A Canadian here gives his interpretation of the strength of the British Empire. He sees in the liberty of the components of the Empire the unity of the whole. Co-operation in World War I is to him the outstanding example of that unity.

IIID6. Notes and Suggestions

- 624 **Lokke, Carl Ludwig**, "London Merchant Interest in the St. Domingue Plantations of the Émigrés, 1793-1798," XLIII, July 1938, 795-802.
- 625 **Whitaker, A. P.**, "Godoy's Knowledge of the Terms of Jay's Treaty," XXXV, July 1930, 804-810.
- 626 **Lokke, Carl Ludwig**, "Secret Negotiations to Maintain the Peace of Amiens," XLIX, October 1943, 55-64.
- 627 **Cross, Arthur Lyon**, "Palmerston and Louis Napoleon," XXI, October 1915, 98-100.
- 628 **Rodkey, Frederick Stanley**, "Anglo-Russian Negotiations about a 'Permanent' Quadruple Alliance, 1840-1841," XXXVI, January 1931, 343-349.
- 629 **Carter, Henry**, "The Metz Interview of May 9, 1877," XXIX, January 1924, 288-293.

- 630 Barnes, H. E., "The German Declaration of War on France: The Question of Telegram Mutilations," XXXV, October 1929, 76-78.

IIID6. Documents

- 631 Turner, F. J., "English Policy toward America in 1790-1791," VII, July 1902, 706-735; VIII, October 1902, 78-86.
In two parts.
- 632 "Talleyrand and Jaudenes, 1795," XXX, July 1925, 778-787.
- 633 Adams, E. D., "English Peace Proposals before the Preliminaries of Leoben, April, 1797," X, July 1905, 827-832.
- 634 Lyon, E. Wilson, "The Closing of the Port of New Orleans," XXXVII, January 1932, 280-286.
Report to the Spanish king 1803.
- 635 "Letter of Kamehameha II to Alexander I, 1820," XX, July 1915, 831-833.
Hawaii and Russia.
- 636 Talman, James J., "A Secret Military Document, 1825," XXXVIII, January 1933, 295-300.
On state of defenses of the British North American provinces.
- 637 Doyle, John A., "The Papers of Sir Charles Vaughan," pt. I, VII, January 1902, 304-329; pt. II, VII, April 1902, 500-533.
In two parts; exact title of second instalment differs from that of first part, and reads: "The Papers of Sir Charles R. Vaughan, 1825-1835."
- 638 Rodkey, F. S., "Suggestions during the Crisis of 1840 for a 'League' to Preserve Peace," XXXV, January 1930, 308-316.
- 639 Baxter, J. P., 3rd., "Papers Relating to Belligerent and Neutral Rights, 1861-1865," XXXIV, October 1928, 77-91.

IIID6. Cross References

See sections IVC3, IVD3, IVE3, and IVE8.

- 306 Krey, A. C., "The International State of the Middle Ages: Some Reasons for Its Failure."
- 456 Angell, James B., "The Turkish Capitulations."
- 475 Lingelbach, Anna L., "The Inception of the British Board of Trade."
- 509 Rose, J. Holland, "Canning and the Spanish Patriots in 1808."
- 513 Tucker, Gilbert, "The Famine Immigration to Canada, 1847."
- 514 Merk, Frederick, "British Party Politics and the Oregon Treaty."
- 517 A British Officer, "The Literature of the South African War, 1899-1902."
- 549 Sloane, William M., "Napoleon's Plans for a Colonial System."

- 571 Gay, H. Nelson, "Garibaldi's Sicilian Campaign as Reported by an American Diplomat."
- 582 Knaplund, Paul, "Finmark in British Diplomacy, 1836-1855."
- 583 Stephenson, George M., "The Background of the Beginning of Swedish Immigration, 1850-1875."
- 1206 Rockhill, W. W., "Diplomatic Missions to the Court of China."
- 1207 Treat, Payson J., "The Mikado's Ratification of the European Treaties."
- And items 527, 569, 586, 843, 898, 1012, 1019, 1024, 1113, 1236, and 1241.

7. General; History of Ideas

- 640 Masson, Marjorie, and Jameson, J. F., "The Odyssey of Thomas Muir," XXIX, October 1923, 49-72.
- The tale of Thomas Muir's trial in Edinburgh for sedition (1793) followed by his removal to Australia, his rescue by an American ship, his life with the Spanish in America as a semi-prisoner, his stay in Spain, and his final days in Paris as a pamphleteer and protégé of the Directory, is here related. Originally written by Miss Masson at the University of Victoria, the portion relating Muir's adventures in America is more fully developed by Dr. Jameson.
- 641 Hayes, Carleton J. H., "Contributions of Herder to the Doctrine of Nationalism," XXXII, July 1927, 719-736.
- "The first man who was at once a litterateur and an anthropologist, a philosopher and a 'new historian,' and who brought his whole many-sided genius to bear on the study of nationality was Johann Gottfried von Herder." Thus Mr. Hayes summarily describes the man who between 1764 and 1803 gave the world his theory of cultural nationalism, studied and inspired the study of folk-language and literature, and stimulated the growing movement for Germanic unification.
- 642 Armstrong, Sinclair W., "The Internationalism of the Early Social Democrats of Germany," XLVII, January 1942, 245-258.
- The concept of internationalism promulgated by even such early German Social Democrats as Liebknecht and Bebel differs greatly from that militant internationalism which the Communist Manifesto was designed to arouse. Nationalism and internationalism were closely related; limited nationalism was regarded as a progressive step toward international order. Social Democrats recognized national characteristics and also accepted national obligations. They had a hope and desire to use their nation's richest potentialities toward the realization of international union. Between their concept of internationalism and the idea of a League of Nations exists a close relationship.
- 643 Willcox, William B., "The Tory Tradition," XLVIII, July 1943, 707-721.
- Violent social forces have been loosed by World War II. To channel them into ordered transformation is the challenge to leaders in the Tory tradition. Important concepts prevailing in modern Toryism include paternalism of an elite as opposed to the materialism of plutocrats and

bureaucrats, the belief that people incapable of rule have delegated their authority to the government, and the emphasis on the executive, on unelected representatives in government, and on the balance of legislative power between all classes. Behind these principles is the attitude of mind which combines the best of the past with a willingness to augment it carefully with the best of the present. The Tory state of mind will endure until human nature changes, but unless the principles embodied in it are adaptable to change, it will not provide the leadership necessary to survive in a post-war world. To succeed it must live up to the best of its tradition.

- 643a Schapiro, J. Salwyn, "Pierre Joseph Proudhon, Harbinger of Fascism," *L*, July 1945, 714-737.

Mr. Schapiro analyzes the puzzling French polemist of the mid-nineteenth century as the premature and misunderstood harbinger of the fascist ideology of the twentieth century. In essence Proudhon was a middle class revolutionist against the predatory wealth of the bankers, but he equally abhorred the masses of mankind. He condemned class war but glorified war in general; he felt a necessity for one-man dictatorship and thought he had found in Louis Napoleon the great revolutionist of the century; he identified the Jews with capitalism and all evil; and he insisted on the subordination of women. He voiced the discontents of his time, but more significantly he "was a prophet of future discontents," an intellectual forerunner of fascism.

IIID7. Notes and Suggestions

- 644 Albion, Robert G., "The 'Communication' Revolution," XXXVII, July 1932, 718-720.
- 645 Turner, Raymond, "Sale of Securities in July, 1914," XXXV, January 1930, 303-307.

IIID7. Documents

- 646 "Letters of John Marshall When Envoy to France, 1797, 1798," II, January 1897, 294-306.
- Three letters written by John Marshall to General Washington containing Marshall's impressions of Europe.
- 647 Galpin, W. F., "Letters concerning the 'Universal Republic,'" XXXIV, July 1929, 779-786.
- 648 Rostenberg, Leona, "Mazzini to Margaret Fuller, 1847-1849," XLVII, October 1941, 73-80.
- Six letters.

IIID7. Cross References

- 6 Stephens, H. M., "Nationality and History."
- 573 Black, C. E., "The Influence of Western Political Thought in Bulgaria, 1850-1885."
- And items 1195 and 1197a.

IV. HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

A. General and Interpretative History

1. General

- 649 Bourne, Edward G., "The Naming of America," X, October 1904, 41-51.

Although accused of antedating his first voyage (under Hojeda) to the New World to secure distinction, Americus Vesputius was not responsible for naming "America." Martin Waldseemüller, a professor of geography at Saint Die, suggested his name when enumerating the parts of the world.

- 650 Schouler, James, "Evolution of the American Voter," II, July 1897, 665-674.

Tracing the history of the extension of the franchise from colonial times to 1896, the writer finds that restrictions on voting were gradually removed, so that by 1896, property, religion, and wealth had become unimportant in determining the right to vote. Examining the history of the closed ballot, he finds that here, too, its extension was paralleled by the growth of American democracy.

- 651 Jameson, J. Franklin, "The Early Political Uses of the Word Convention," III, April 1898, 477-487.

Politically the word convention usually conveys the meaning of an assemblage of delegates which in some formal sense is representative. Most familiar are the constitutional convention and the nominating convention. An earlier American type was the revolutionary convention of the colony or state. The term convention rather than assembly was used to designate such meetings because in the process of their formation, some illegality occurred. This peculiar meaning adopted in America had its roots in England but originally it is believed to have come from Scotland. The term in England, before the Civil War in 1642, bore no special or technical sense; it designated a meeting. But from the time of the dissolution of the Long Parliament in 1653, traces are found of the idea that a convention was a parliament with certain defects or irregularities.

- 652 Becker, Carl, "What is Still Living in the Political Philosophy of Thomas Jefferson," XLVIII, July 1943, 691-706.

One word—democracy—describes the political philosophy of Thomas Jefferson. What is its significance in the current American way of life? What is still alive in the philosophy? To what extent is Jefferson's conception of rights still valid to us, and to what extent is Jefferson's form of government well adapted for securing the rights which need preservation in our time? These are the issues emphasized in Carl Becker's discussion. His conclusion is: "In respect to fundamentals—the nature of human rights and the form of government best suited to secure them—Jefferson's philosophy is still valid for us; in respect to particular political forms and policies, much of it is now outmoded."

- 653 Gabriel, Ralph H., "American Experience with Military Government," XLIX, July 1944, 630-643.

This study is an outgrowth of the new emphasis on the civil affairs work of armies, and of Professor Gabriel's special studies of earlier practices. He writes in this article specially about the combination of military sense and good civil affairs policy administered by Gen. Winfield Scott in the Mexican War, the decade of military control in the South

after Appomattox, experiences in the Philippines, Cuba and Porto Rico after the Spanish American War, and occupation of the Dalmatian coast after 1919.

IVA1. Notes and Suggestions

- 654 Burnett, E. C., "The Name 'United States of America,'" XXXI, October 1925, 79-81.
- 655 Paullin, C. O., "The Vice-President and the Cabinet," XXIX, April 1924, 496-500.
- 656 Harris, Henry J., "Some Sources for Tracing Joint Resolutions of Congress," XXIII, April 1918, 602-603.
- 657 Learned, H. B., "Casting Votes of the Vice-Presidents, 1789-1915," XX, April 1915, 571-576.

IVA1. Cross Reference

See item 81.

2. Interpretation of American History

- 658 Channing, Edward, "An Historical Retrospect," XXVI, January 1921, 191-202.

In his "retrospect" Professor Channing comments upon America at the landing of the *Mayflower*, America in 1820 and America in the hundred years between 1820 and his own time. In these hundred years America built an industrial society. Professor Channing reviews its remarkable agricultural, industrial and social progress, but questions whether such development was gain or loss.

- 659 Nabuco, Joaquim, "The Share of America in Civilization," XV, October 1909, 54-65.

In this baccalaureate address, delivered at Madison, Wisconsin, in 1909, His Excellency the Brazilian Ambassador, Joaquim Nabuco, states that America's greatest contribution to civilization was the formation of a new mankind formed by self-election. With the discovery of America came "the appearance on earth of an immense continent destined to be the new home of the old European races, where they could meet and mix and speak the same language, while in the native soil their old stocks would continue separated and up till now belligerent."

- 660 Schlesinger, Arthur M., "What Then Is the American, This New Man?" XLVIII, January 1943, 225-244.

The American "new man" in Mr. Schlesinger's point of view is the product of the interplay of his Old World heritage and New World conditions. To understand "the new man" is properly to evaluate the nature of these two influencing factors. The current national character is a mixture of long persistent traits and newly acquired characteristics. The composite picture of an American emerging from European views of us emphasizes a belief in the universal obligation to work, the urge to move about, a high standard of comfort for the average man, faith in progress, the eternal pursuit of material gain, an absence of permanent class barriers, the neglect of abstract thinking and of the aesthetic side of life, boastfulness, a deference for women, and a general restless-

ness and hurry of life. Such judgments were made by European observers who often lacked sufficient knowledge of the profounder trends in American society to understand either the true inwardness of the ideals or how they manifested themselves in action. Frequently they failed to consider the influence of a long apprenticeship to the soil as well as the gradual later development of American character. The tradition of wasteful living fostered by an environment of abundance, the ability to create and invent encouraged by the complicated nature of the American farmer's job, the accumulation of wealth as the badge of social superiority fostered by the absence of distinctions of birth and rank, all must be analyzed to understand the interplay of Old World and New to produce "this new man."

IVA2. Cross References

See Sections IB, IVE7, and

- 1 Channing, Edward, "Justin Winsor."
- 16 Robinson, J. H., "The Newer Ways of Historians."
- 18 Smith, Theodore C., "The Writing of American History in America, from 1884 to 1934."
- 19 Foran, William A., "John Marshall as a Historian."
- 20 "John Franklin Jameson."
- 42 Turner, Frederick J., "Social Forces in American History."
- 45 Callender, G. S., "The Position of American Economic History."
- 52 Haskins, Charles H., "European History and American Scholarship."
- 56 Fox, Dixon Ryan, "A Synthetic Principle in American Social History."
- 58 Bolton, H. E., "The Epic of Greater America."
- 62 Ford, G. S., "Some Suggestions to American Historians."
- 704 Andrews, Charles M., "Colonial Commerce."
- 1185 Destler, Chester McA., "*Wealth Against Commonwealth*, 1894 and 1944."

3. Intellectual, Cultural, Religious History

- 661 Kimball, Fiske, "Architecture in the History of the Colonies and of the Republic," XXVII, October 1921, 47-57.

The historical relationships between early American architecture and that of Europe are here discussed. The influence of the frontier on American architecture is minimized; primitive shelters and early colonial buildings are seen to have their origins in Europe. It is only after the Revolution that America contributed to world architecture by its use of the classic.

- 662 **Greene, Evarts B.**, "Persistent Problems of Church and State," XXXVI, January 1931, 257-273.

This study reviews colonial Massachusetts' experiment in the relationship between church and state and considers this issue in the subsequent history of the American and European peoples. "To-day, as in the past, we may agree that Caesar should have his due and God the things that are God's, and yet find it difficult to apply the principle in relation to certain common interests, as for instance marriage or education."

- 663 **Fox, Dixon R.**, "Civilization in Transit," XXXII, July 1927, 753-768.

Dixon Ryan Fox notes four marked stages in the transplantation of professional specialties—medicine, chemistry, dentistry, music, and scholarship—from Europe to America. First, foreign practitioners of the specialty were received by the pioneer community; second, native youth went to the old country to acquire instruction; third, institutions of the special learning were established in the new land; fourth, the institutions developed sufficiently to maintain themselves.

- 664 **McMaster, John B.**, "Old Standards of Public Morals," XI, April 1906, 515-528.

To illustrate old standards of some public morals in American life, Mr. McMaster chooses attitudes toward the obligation of the United States and separate states to pay their debts in the 1790's, the use of a national lottery, and publicity in the punishment of crime. He regards an understanding of the moral code of a period or how people acted when forced to choose between that which was expedient and that which was a principle of public morality vital to the understanding of the social and political conditions of a period.

- 665 **Dodd, William E.**, "The Emergence of the First Social Order in the United States," XL, January 1935, 217-231.

To William E. Dodd, two conscious or unconscious social orders have existed in the United States. The first began with the Stuart Restoration and ended in 1865; the second emerged between 1823 and 1861, took definite economic form in 1865, and reached the height of its power in 1929. To describe the formation of the first order, he traces the emergence of the planter's system and indicates how outside influences operated to modify American institutions. The first American social order, he concludes, was "a curious product of the arbitrary policy of the Earl of Clarendon, the democratic instincts of poor freemen and indentured servants, and a long and bitter struggle of five million Englishmen and their continental allies against twenty million Frenchmen trying to dominate the continent of Europe."

- 666 **Levermore, Charles H.**, "The Rise of Metropolitan Journalism 1800-1840," VI, April 1901, 446-465.

Modern journalism evolved from an aggressive democracy which demanded publicity. As democratic sentiment took form in the United States and produced expressions of political life, journals changed from billboards to party-organs and from party-organs to newspapers which became subservient to the demands of publicity. The introduction of such papers as the *Daily Herald* in 1835 by James Gordon Bennett in New York forced men to recognize journalism as a profession with an aim within itself. Journalism no longer was merely a slave to religious or political convictions.

- 667 **Curtis, Eugene N.**, "American Opinion of the French Nineteenth-Century Revolutions," XXIX, January 1924, 249-270.

That American public opinion was in the main favorable to the democratic changes in Europe was obvious. However, two points should

be brought out in regard to public opinion. First, the approval was not unanimous, for political, economic, and social reasons. The conservative elements opposed the revolutions because they feared socialism and communism; politicians had to tread a middle course. Second, the three revolutions were received with a diminishing rate of interest. Because the revolutions of 1830 and 1848 gained little liberalism or permanence the masses lost interest. By 1870 American "sophistication" resulted in less interest in revolutions.

- 668 Loewenberg, Bert James, "The Reaction of American Scientists to Darwinism," XXXVIII, July 1933, 687-701.

Louis Agassiz, Asa Gray and James Dwight Dana dominated the American scientific world when Darwin introduced his doctrines in the *Origin of Species*. Agassiz's consistent opposition, Gray's adoption and promulgation of the idea and Dana's midway position between the two constitute the basis for this discussion of the reaction of American scientists to Darwinism.

- 669 Jones, Howard Mumford, "Arnold, Aristocracy and America," XLIX, April 1944, 393-409.

An account depicting Matthew Arnold's reflections on the United States during his visit in 1883.

- 670 Schlesinger, Arthur M., "Biography of a Nation of Joiners," L, October 1944, 1-25.

Professor Schlesinger traces the growth of the spirit of group activity in this country from colonial days to the present. He shows how the individualistic feeling of Americans allowed them to be such ardent joiners. This individualism meant freedom from governmental restraint and not the individual's independence from other individuals. As political freedom increased in America, organizations increased in number and in membership. These associations grew out of deep felt human desires as a highly dynamic society continually disclosed fresh needs and opportunities. These societies constituted a kind of irregular government in that they had many attributes of government. These external governments influenced many phases of American life; they provided the people with the greatest school of self-government; and they served as a great cementing force for our national integration.

IVA3. Notes and Suggestions

- 671 Robinson, William A., "A Misused Quotation," XXXIII, October 1927, 81-83.

Theodore Dwight on Jacobinism, 1801.

- 672 Riegel, Robert E., "The Introduction of Phrenology to the United States," XXXIX, October 1933, 73-78.

IVA3. Cross Reference

- 37 Jameson, J. F., "The American Acta Sanctorum."
And item 750.

B. Colonial Period (to 1776)

1. General and Political History

- 673 **Preston, Richard A.**, "Fishing and Plantation: New England in the Parliament of 1621," XLV, October 1939, 29-43.

In this study the author discusses the parliamentary controversy over fishing in American waters in the 1620's. Using the recently published parliamentary diaries of 1621 and other sources previously used by writers, he discusses the origin and nature of the parliamentary opposition to Robert Gorges' "Charter of the Council for New England," and considers the question of whether this plan to finance the colonization of New England on the basis of reasonable taxation of the fishing industry was practical and whether it was based on a far-seeing policy.

- 674 **McKinley, Albert E.**, "The English and Dutch Towns of New Netherland," VI, October 1900, 1-18.

Within New Netherland arose two forms of town government. Government in territory settled by the Dutch reflected the aristocratic institutions and local customs of Holland. That in areas settled by the English from New England reflected the democratic spirit of the New England town. Dutch settlements in the seventeenth century showed slight communal feeling and slowly developed into towns. Political activity and interest was meager. The settlers received rather than demanded a form of government which gave them little popular control. The English settlements under Dutch jurisdiction exercised common interest in land and political authority. They received land grants in common, undertook political functions, demanded and usually received privileges from the Dutch director and council.

- 675 **Craven, Wesley Frank**, "The Dissolution of the London Company for Virginia," XXXVII, October 1931, 14-24.

Events which led to the interference of the English government in the affairs of the London Company for Virginia and its subsequent dissolution in 1624 have frequently been explained as a political struggle between the "Patriot" party which was determined to establish a popular course of government in America and the "Court" party which opposed that purpose. Wesley Frank Craven in his brief examination of the investigation of the Company instituted by order of the Privy Council in 1623, suggests economic causes for its dissolution and failure.

- 676 **Gipson, Lawrence H.**, "Connecticut Taxation and Parliamentary Aid Preceding the Revolutionary War," XXXVI, July 1931, 721-739.

The key to the taxation situation in Connecticut during the 1760's and 70's lies in a study of its relationship to the British parliamentary reimbursements for expenses incurred in the prosecution of the Seven Years' War. From 1757 to 1763 the British Parliament had made such reimbursements possible by a series of grants. The financial support given by England to Connecticut was so generous as to lead to the conclusion that for every pound actually paid by Connecticut in taxes, England made a gift to the colony of an equal amount. Because of these grants the Connecticut taxpayer from 1760 onward until the time of the Revolutionary War was relieved of much of the taxation that the General Assembly imposed on him. Connecticut was determined not to disclose its favorable financial condition to England. The report sent to the Board of Trade in 1764 did not present a correct view of the colony's financial condition. Connecticut desired the benefits of its imperial connection without desiring to assume reciprocal responsibilities.

- 677 **Levermore, Charles H.**, "The Whigs of Colonial New York," I, January 1896, 238-250.

The article discusses the constituency of the Whig party, its conflicts with the Tories over the church question, its victory in the elections, and domination of the New York legislature in 1758. The disintegration of the Whig party as a result of the reaction to the radical activities of the Sons of Liberty who constituted the disenfranchised element in the party gave rise again to the domination of the Tory party in New York.

- 678 **Becker, Carl**, "Growth of Revolutionary Parties and Methods in New York Province 1765-1774," VII, October 1901, 56-76.

Development of revolutionary parties in New York was part of the struggle for power by radical and conservative forces. Opposition to British domination was generally accepted, but as landowners, merchants and professional classes realized the consequences, they resisted the encroachment of unfranchised mechanics and artisans upon their right to govern. The unfranchised group had gained control of a powerful instrument of public opinion—the organization *Sons of Liberty*. The question to be decided was whether the radical unfranchised group or the moderate men of property were to direct the course of American revolt. Each struggled for control.

IVB1. Documents

- 679 **Firth, C. H.**, "Thomas Shepard to Hugh Peter, 1645," IV, October 1898, 105-107.
- 680 "Journal of a French Traveller in the Colonies, 1765," pt. I, XXVI, July 1921, 726-747; pt. II, XXVII, October 1921, 70-89.
- 681 **Tuckerman, Frederick**, "Letters of Samuel Cooper to Thomas Pownall, 1769-1777," VIII, January 1903, 301-330.
- 682 **Jones, E. Alfred**, "Letter of David Colden, Loyalist, 1783," XXV, October 1919, 79-86.

IVB1. Cross References

- 69 **Andrews, C. M.**, "Material in British Archives for American Colonial History."
- 465 **Lowery, Woodbury**, "Jean Ribaut and Queen Elizabeth."
- 760 **Brown, William G.**, "The Early Life of Oliver Ellsworth."
And item 395.

2. Political Institutions (Legal, Constitutional and Institutional History)

- 683 **Osgood, Herbert L.**, "The Proprietary Provinces as a Form of Colonial Government," pt. I, II, July 1897, 644-664; pt. II, III, October 1897, 31-55; pt. III, III, January 1898, 244-265.

An analysis of the charters granted for the establishment of such proprietorships as Maryland, New York, or Pennsylvania demonstrate that

the proprietary province was a "large fief carved out of the royal domain across the sea," adapted to conditions of life in America. It had many characteristics in common with its English progenitor—the county palatine—one of the most independent of English fiefs. Legally, the county palatine usually originated from a royal grant. The owner possessed all territorial and governmental rights. He was entitled to all the feudal services due from his tenants and was empowered to appoint officials and to hold councils in the nature of parliaments. Likewise the proprietor held similar powers. His province was a miniature kingdom of semi-feudal type, and he was a petty king. His powers were the most definitely described in the proprietary charter, so around him, rather than around the legislature, centered the development of the province. In the development of the legislature it was most clearly demonstrated that the proprietary province was not an exact reproduction of its original, but only a development suggested by the palatinate.

- 684 **Scisco, L. D.**, "The Plantation Type of Colony," VIII, January 1903, 260-270.

In order to facilitate an analysis and comparison of colonial governments, Mr. Scisco emphasizes the need for noting similarities in their development rather than differences. In this study, based on the situations in Jamestown, New Netherland and New Plymouth, he sets up the "plantation type of colony" as a measure for classification. He defines it as that form of settlement which revealed most completely the economic motive in its structure. It was based on agriculture. Its local government combined political jurisdiction with the powers of economic proprietorship.

- 685 **Cheyney, Edward P.**, "The Manor of East Greenwich in the County of Kent," XI, October 1905, 29-35.

To determine why seventeenth century colonial charters provided that land in the New World was to be held by the King of England "as of the Manor of East Greenwich in the County of Kent, in free and common socage and not 'in capite' or by knight's service" is the problem of this discussion. Mr. Cheyney concludes that the phrase was simply the adoption of an established form used in the granting of crown lands in England. It had little real significance to the colonies.

- 686 **Root, Winfred T.**, "The Lords of Trade and Plantations, 1675-1696," XXIII, October 1917, 20-41.

Mr. Root here aims to fill a gap which he believes exists in the study of British imperial control. He studies the organization, personnel and methods adopted to regulate colonial and commercial business. The establishment of the Lords of Trade and Plantations in 1675 under Charles II marked the end of a period of drift and opened a decade of unified control. Its members, especially during the first decade of its existence, were qualified for their task; they had served an apprenticeship in the council committees and boards of trade and plantation during 1660-1675. Changes effected by them in imperial organization were not radical alterations, but perfecting processes of systems already in existence. The establishment of the Board of Trade and Plantations in 1696 under William III marked the close of the activities of the Lords of Trade as directors of trade and plantation affairs and a return to the methods of the select council which had been abolished in 1674.

- 687 **Carpenter, A. H.**, "Habeas Corpus in the Colonies," VIII, October 1902, 18-27.

The American colonist's right to the writ of habeas corpus rested on common law (with the exception of South Carolina) rather than on statute law. Protection for personal rights was supplied by the common law and by habeas corpus provisions in court laws. Formal habeas corpus acts were not passed in the majority of colonies until after the American Revolution.

- 688 Morris, Richard B., "Massachusetts and the Common Law: The Declaration of 1646," XXXI, April 1926, 443-453.

To determine whether the Declaration of 1646 is a safe guide to the study of early Massachusetts law, Mr. Morris examines its *Parallels*—a comparison of the fundamental laws of England and Massachusetts—and considers other legal practices which Winthrop, Dudley, Bellingham and Duncan did not see fit to mention. He concludes that the Declaration is not a fair presentation of the fundamental law of that day and does not accept it as authoritative evidence of agreement between the colonial and common law. The Declaration rather bears evidence of its sponsor's ignorance of the common law.

- 689 Bond, Beverley W., Jr., "The Quit-Rent System in the American Colonies," XVII, April 1912, 496-516.

The quit-rent system is described as part of the British scheme of imperial control. Imposition of quit-rents in the American colonies emphasized their relation to England as fiefs of the crown. Due to the fact that it was a charge imposed upon land previously free from feudal dues, effective enforcement and collection was difficult. To the landowner in England, the quit-rent was a relief from his feudal dues, to the American colonist it was a tax imposed upon land he had acquired by his own labor. If firmly established, it would have removed the most effective limitation upon the proprietary official's power—his dependence upon the colonial assembly for financial support.

- 690 Smith, William, "The Colonial Post-Office," XXI, January 1916, 258-275.

A study of the colonial postal system from its establishment by William III in 1691 to 1775 when the colonial delegates at Philadelphia resolved to appoint a postmaster-general for the united colonies, thus terminating the royal system established by the crown.

- 691 Carter, Clarence E., "The Significance of the Military Office in America, 1763-1775," XXVIII, April 1923, 475-488.

Great Britain, faced with the problem of defending its enlarged empire in 1763, aimed to provide uniform, imperial control by retaining army headquarters at New York. In the establishment of such control, British officials had no thought of establishing a military jurisdiction superior to civil power. Yet in its organization, the power of the military office was supreme in the control of the Indian reservation and the management of the Indians. In the newly created provinces such as Quebec and East Florida it disputed power with the civil authorities. In the older provinces the encroaching military power was resented and provoked difficult situations for civil officials. The military office, in Mr. Carter's opinion, was a mechanism which facilitated British assumption of such power as revolutionary disorders in America increased.

- 692 Becker, Carl, "Nominations in Colonial New York," VI, January 1901, 260-275.

Appearance of the nominating convention in colonial New York was evidence of the growing spirit of democracy and of a consciousness of equality. It proved that political control by a commercial, landed aristocracy which nominated candidates in a personal, private manner was losing its hold. In the democratic growth, the period between 1730 and 1750 characterized by material prosperity and marked literary activity was a renaissance. Out of it arose the nominating convention as an incident in the effort of men to try to obtain control of the business of governing.

- 693 Carpenter, A. H., "Naturalization in England and the American Colonies," IX, January 1904, 288-303.

Conditions in colonial America—abundance of land and freedom of opportunity—greatly reduced the feeling of mistrust towards foreigners.

England, starting with a mistrust of foreigners, gradually advanced to the point where naturalization laws were adopted. Methods of naturalization in the American colonies and England were similar. Letters of denization were issued. First special legislative acts relating to specific persons were enacted and later general naturalization laws were adopted.

- 694 **Davis, Andrew McFarland**, "The Case of Frost vs. Leighton," II, January 1897, 229-240.

This is a case study of a decision rendered in 1738 and 1739 in the Superior Court of Judicature of the Massachusetts Bay involving the power of the court to interpret colonial charters. The Superior Court of Judicature interpreted the Province Charter and the laws through which they derived their powers in such a way as to make it impossible to carry out a royal order received from His Majesty in council. They stated that adequate powers were not conferred upon the court. The possibility of a significant parallelism between the case and the United States Supreme Court conclusion in the *Marbury vs. Madison* case has been suggested. The Supreme Court declared that it could not in the exercise of original jurisdiction issue writs of mandamus, notwithstanding the action of Congress, because Congress had not granted the court such power. At the time of the decision, the court was confronted with the fact that there was no precedent in English jurisprudence for declaring void an action which had received the sanction of the law-making powers.

IVB2. Notes and Suggestions

- 695 **Karraker, Cyrus H.**, "Deodands in Colonial Virginia and Maryland," XXXVII, July 1932, 712-717.
- 696 **Bedwell, C. E. A.**, "American Middle Templars," XXV, July 1920, 680-689.
- Covering period 1681-1836, with list of names.
- 697 **Humphreys, R. A.**, "Lord Shelburne and a Projected Recall of Colonial Governors in 1767," XXXVII, January 1932, 269-272.

IVB2. Cross References

- 474 **Clark, Dora**, "The American Board of Customs, 1767-1783."
- 674 **McKinley, Albert E.**, "The English and Dutch Towns of New Netherland."
- 701 **Sharp, Morrison**, "Leadership and Democracy in the Early New England System of Defense."
- And item 718.

3. Diplomatic History

- 698 **Van Tyne, Claude H.**, "French Aid before the Alliance of 1778," XXXI, October 1925, 20-40.

Mr. Van Tyne discusses French interest in America from 1763 to 1775 as a part of the French effort to revenge England and to regain prestige in Europe. To develop the course of this effort, he depicts the activity of French government spies in England and America. French

and American "secret" diplomatic activity, and emphasizes the importance of French secret aid in the form of munitions furnished during the months preceding the alliance of 1778.

IVB3. Documents

- 699 Ford, W. C., "A Letter of Benjamin Franklin, 1775," IX, April 1904, 524-525.

4. Military and Naval History

- 700 Pargellis, Stanley, "Braddock's Defeat," XLI, January 1936, 253-269.

A revaluation based on eye-witness accounts of the military cause of General Braddock's defeat. Mr. Pargellis attributes Braddock's defeat to incompetent leadership: "There was far too little space between the various parts of the army; the flanking parties and the guides were inadequate to give timely warning of an enemy's approach. A strategic point along the line of march was left unoccupied; the main body, divided by the column of wagons, had its mobility seriously decreased; . . . the main body was either ordered or permitted to advance, contrary to European rules, before its officers knew what lay ahead."

- 701 Sharp, Morrison, "Leadership and Democracy in the Early New England System of Defense," L, January 1945, 244-260.

On the New England frontier people faced new dangers and created new customs: majority rule, popular nomination of officers, local self-government, and almost universal manhood suffrage when they elected trainband officers and served in fighting companies. The militia was a popular force arising out of the needs of the people and embracing all of them. The clergy was in close touch with military activities. Military prowess was held in high esteem. The higher offices fell to the aristocracy, partly because commissions were granted through the courts. The New England system of defense was superior to that of New York and Virginia.

IVB4. Notes and Suggestions

- 702 Bain, James, Jr., "Journal of the Most Remarkable Occurrences in Quebec, 1775," IV, October 1898, 129-132.

IVB4. Cross References

- 370 Riker, Thad W., "The Politics Behind Braddock's Expedition."
477 Schuyler, Robert L., "The Recall of the Legions: A Phase of the Decentralization of the British Empire."

5. Social and Economic History

- 703 Cheyney, Edward P., "Some English Conditions Surrounding the Settlement of Virginia," XII, April 1907, 507-528.

Mr. Cheyney's study of conditions in England during the years just preceding and contemporary with the settlement of Virginia reveals the

settlement as just one occurrence connected with preceding events and related to others immediately surrounding it rather than as a unique attempt to establish a colony in America. The settlement of Virginia was one of the many attempts to enter the race for colonial expansion. It arose in an England concerned with trade and trading companies. Mr. Cheyney has traced analogies between the settlement of Virginia and the similar one in Ireland.

- 704 **Andrews, Charles M.**, "Colonial Commerce," XX, October 1914, 43-63.

Professor Charles Andrews in this paper read at the American Historical Association conference on "Colonial Commerce" in 1913 urges the adoption of a point of view in colonial history independent of subsequent events. To the colonist there was no United States of America in anticipation; there should be none to the student of colonial history today. Properly to understand the conditions under which the colonies were founded and grew, a total history of colonial trade must be given equal emphasis with the political and social history of the time. In the colonial scheme of things, the thirteen colonies were not isolated units but British dependencies and parts of a colonial empire extending from America to India. A knowledge of England's commercial policy of mercantilism, the colonists' place in that scheme and in the schemes of other maritime states in Europe as well as a knowledge of the colonists' independent interests and activity are essential to an understanding of colonial commerce. Likewise necessary is an understanding of staple products, shipping, trade routes and marketing.

- 705 **Sumner, W. G.**, "The Spanish Dollar and the Colonial Shilling," III, July 1898, 607-619.

What the Spanish piece of eight ought to have been in weight and fineness according to the mint laws of Spain when it was adopted into the monetary system of Anglo-America, and what it was in fact by weight and assay are the problems discussed.

- 706 **Smith, Abbot Emerson**, "The Transportation of Convicts to the American Colonies in the Seventeenth Century," XXXIX, January 1934, 232-249.

During the seventeenth century, the transportation of convicts was a systematic and regular practice. The author here describes the legal and administrative procedure adopted in that century and considers the problems of the actual shipment of the pardoned felons.

- 707 **Butler, James Davie**, "British Convicts Shipped to American Colonies," II, October 1896, 12-33.

An attempt to ascertain to what extent the convict element permeated the colonies in America: the author concludes the element was a large one. Orders from the Privy Council, judges or inferior magistrates sent felons into the British Colonies in America. The statute of 1718 was important. By the act, persons convicted of offenses such as burglary, robbery, forgery—after being sentenced to death—could be transported to America for at least seven years. Attempts to prohibit importation were made by provincial, colonial authorities, but these were futile because the king nullified all their acts. Some convicts were political offenders, others were prisoners who had been taken in battle. The need for labor on English plantations in the West Indies colonies was an important factor to be considered.

- 708 **Donnan, Elizabeth**, "The Slave Trade into South Carolina before the Revolution," XXXIII, July 1928, 804-828.

An account dealing chiefly with the importation of slaves from 1730 to the outbreak of the American Revolution. Basing her study partially on reports and advertisements in the *South Carolina Gazette* and the letter-books of Henry Laurens, a merchant, the author discusses the

quality of Negro merchants, their methods of transaction in the marketing of slaves to planters, and the price fluctuations.

- 709 **Jernegan, Marcus W.**, "Slavery and the Beginnings of Industrialism in the American Colonies," XXV, January 1920, 220-240.

This article dealing chiefly with economic conditions in Virginia and South Carolina from 1710 to the American Revolution depicts the development of the diversification of farming and other occupations in the South as the fundamental factor leading to the employment of the slave in non-agricultural labor and manufacturing processes. The Negro slave artisan is regarded as the most important agency in the rise of plantation manufactures.

- 710 **Deutsch, Albert**, "The Sick Poor in Colonial Times," XLVI, April 1941, 560-579.

Concerning the public provision for the sick poor in colonial times, the author suggests the following lines in its development: (1) granting only material relief to the sick in their own homes; (2) providing medical care in the patient's own home or in the house of a practitioner paid by a public treasury on a case basis; (3) farming out the medical care of the poor of a community to a special physician on a salary basis; (4) maintaining the sick poor in almshouses; (5) confining the insane poor in jails intended primarily for penal purposes; (6) establishing general hospitals.

- 711 **Faust, Albert B.**, "Swiss Emigration to the American Colonies in the Eighteenth Century," XXII, October 1916, 21-44.

Fearing the loss of their population by emigration, the Swiss government attempted to restrict and prohibit emigration by erecting barriers in the forms of government regulations and repression of all favorable accounts of the American colonies. Banishment, social ostracism, refusal of permission to return, imprisonment for life if caught returning, were the conditions upon which an emigrant gave up his country. Mr. Faust's study of this problem, derived from material in the Swiss archives, describes the penalties and regulations which were adopted by Berne, Basel and Zurich to curb emigration. To illustrate the character and method of the Swiss emigrant agent, he includes the trials of two agents, Peter Huber (1742), and Peter Inäbnit (1744), who had been accused of encouraging emigration to the Carolinas.

- 712 **Bell, Herbert C.**, "The West India Trade before the American Revolution," XXII, January 1917, 272-287.

Using such documents as the Minutes of the Committee of Trade in the Public Record Office (London), the Clifford Papers and Pemberton Papers in the collection of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, the family papers of Joseph H. Coates, Esq., of Philadelphia and a collection of commercial correspondence for sources, the author deals with the actual mechanism of the West Indian trade. He dwells upon the kind of vessels employed, the routes followed, and the methods of sale, remittance and insurance. Being a part of a great commercial system, West Indian trade was more than a mere exchange of commodities between two groups of colonies. It stood in intimate connection with the coasting traffic and with lines of traffic extending to Nova Scotia, Newfoundland, Great Britain, Southern Europe, and Africa.

- 713 **Barker, Charles A.**, "Maryland Before the Revolution," XLVI, October 1940, 1-20.

Society and thought in prerevolutionary Maryland. The legalism, liberalism, Anglicanism, and the literary and artistic cultivation of the upper classes are here considered as phases of English culture rooted and growing in Maryland.

- 714 **Farrand, Max**, "The Taxation of Tea, 1767-1773," III, January 1898, 266-269.

Owing to certain concessions granted to the East India Company by Parliament, tea was sold cheaper in America than in England in spite of the three-pence a pound tax which had been levied on that imported into the American colonies. How much cheaper the tea could be sold and what were the concessions granted to the East India Company are the questions answered by the author.

- 715 **Baldwin, Simeon E.**, "American Business Corporations before 1789," VIII, April 1903, 449-465.

The American colonies created few "business corporations"—corporations "formed primarily to promote business enterprises, either by the investment of money as a productive capital, or by encouraging and facilitating such investments on the part of others." Six existed in the colonial era and twenty in the thirteen years of sovereign statehood under the Confederation. They increased in number after freedom of incorporation was granted. North Carolina in 1795 set an example when it offered incorporation to all on equal terms.

IVB5. Notes and Suggestions

- 716 **Malone, Miles S.**, "Falmouth and the Shenandoah: Trade before the Revolution," XL, July 1935, 693-703.
- 717 **Stephenson, Nathaniel**, "The Romantics and George Washington," XXXIX, January 1934, 274-283.
- 718 **Andrews, Charles M.**, "Current Lawful Money of New England," XXIV, October 1918, 73-77.

IVB5. Documents

- 719 **Kingsbury, Susan M.**, "The Interment of William Lovelace, New York, 1671," IX, April 1904, 522-524.
- 720 "Colonel William Byrd on Slavery and Indented Servants, 1736, 1739," I, October 1895, 88-90.
- Two letters from the letter-books of Colonel William Byrd.
- 721 **Nute, Grace L.**, "Washington and the Potomac: Manuscripts of the Minnesota Historical Society, (1754) 1769-1796," pt. I, XXVIII, April 1923, 497-519; pt. II, XXVIII, July 1923, 705-722.
- 722 "Diary of John Harrower, 1773-1776," VI, October 1900, 65-107.

A schoolmaster indentured servant in Virginia.

IVB5. Cross References

- 673 **Preston, Richard A.**, "Fishing and Plantation New England in the Parliament of 1621."
- 684 **Scisco, L. D.**, "The Plantation Type of Colony." And items 442, 479, 553, and 733.

6. Sectional History

a. The South

- 723 Crane, Verner W., "The Southern Frontier in Queen Anne's War," XXIV, April 1919, 379-395.

This article dealing with South Carolina as the sole southern barrier against the French and Spanish at the close of the seventeenth century and the early eighteenth century emphasizes the importance of the province's first frontier, its extensive Indian trade in the West, and the resulting system of alliances promulgated under the influence of men like Joseph Blake, James Moore and Thomas Nairne. On this frontier in Queen Anne's War was first demonstrated the fact that control of the Mississippi Valley was to be the crux of the inter-colonial contest in America.

- 724 Hudnut, Ruth Allison and Baker-Crothers, Hayes, "Acadian Transients in South Carolina," XLIII, April 1938, 500-513.

Acadians were expelled from Nova Scotia in the period preceding the Seven Years' War. A large number of the 7,000 who were to be dispersed throughout the colonies were sent to South Carolina in 1755-1756. From the time of their arrival in November, 1755, until the autumn of 1756 when they were dispersed throughout the parishes of the colony, the colony had to adjust itself to a burdensome situation which was reflected in the protests of the governor and the South Carolina House of Commons. The arrival of so large a number of French alien neutrals was regarded with suspicion; they were considered a menace to the safety of the colony. Effort was made to evade the responsibility for their care. Yet the House appropriated money for it.

- 725 Winsor, Justin, "Virginia and the Quebec Bill," I, April 1896, 436-443.

Mr. Winsor here considers the conflict between the expansionist desires of the colonies toward the west, and the barriers which the British set up to such expansion in the Quebec Act. The seaboard colonists were opposed to French law and the Catholic Church, and it was Virginia, who, defying Parliament's power to deprive her of her western lands, sent an army across the Ohio to win the territory from Canadian jurisdiction.

IVB6a. Notes and Suggestions

- 726 Cumming, W. P., "The Earliest Permanent Settlement in Carolina, Nathaniel Batts and the Comberford Map," XLV, October 1939, 82-89.

IVB6a. Documents

- 727 "Lord Sackville's Papers Respecting Virginia, 1613-1631," pt. I, XXVII, April 1922, 493-538; pt. II, XXVII, July 1922, 738-765.
- 728 "Letters of Thomas Newe from South Carolina, 1682," XII, January 1907, 322-327.
- 729 Henderson, Archibald, "The Origin of the Regulation in North Carolina," XXI, January 1916, 320-332.
- 730 Williams, J. R., "Journal of Philip Fithian, Kept at Nomini Hall, Virginia, 1773-1774," V, January 1900, 290-319.

IVB6a. Cross References

- 675 Craven, Wesley Frank, "The Dissolution of the London Company for Virginia."
- 703 Cheyney, Edward P., "Some English Conditions Surrounding the Settlement of Virginia."
- 708 Donnan, Elizabeth, "The Slave Trade into South Carolina Before the Revolution."
- 709 Jernegan, Marcus W., "Slavery and the Beginnings of Industrialism in the American Colonies."
- 713 Barker, Charles A., "Maryland Before the Revolution."
- 873 Phillips, U. B., "The Origin and Growth of the Southern Black Belts."

And items 481, 487, 490, 504, 507, and 722.

b. The East and Middle Atlantic**IVB6b. Notes and Suggestions**

- 731 Barker, Howard F., "The Founders of New England," XXXVIII, July 1933, 702-713.
- 732 Calder, Isabel M., "The Authorship of a Discourse about Civil Government in a New Plantation Whose Design is Religion," (1663), XXXVII, January 1932, 267-269.
- 733 Smith, Abbot Emerson, "The Indentured Servant and Land Speculation in Seventeenth Century Maryland," XL, April 1935, 467-472.

IVB6b. Documents

- 734 Marsden, R. G., "A Letter of William Bradford and Isaac Allerton, 1623," VIII, January 1903, 294-301.
- 735 Ford, Amelia C., "William Shirley to Samuel Waldo," XXXVI, January 1931, 350-360.

Letter concerns an episode in colonial politics: the effort in the 1730's to oust Governor Belcher and put William Shirley in his place.

IVB6b. Cross References

- 94 Adams, James T., "The Unexplored Region in New England History."
- 673 Preston, Richard A., "Fishing and Plantation New England in the Parliament of 1621."
- 674 McKinley, Albert E., "The English and Dutch Towns of New Netherland."

- 676 **Gipson, Lawrence H.**, "Connecticut Taxation and Parliamentary Aid Preceding the Revolutionary War."
- 677 **Levermore, Charles H.**, "The Whigs of Colonial New York."
- 678 **Becker, Carl**, "Growth of Revolutionary Parties and Methods in the New York Province, 1765-1774."
- 688 **Morris, Richard B.**, "Massachusetts and the Common Law: The Declaration of 1646."
- 692 **Becker, Carl**, "Nominations in Colonial New York."
- 694 **Davis, Andrew McF.**, "The Case of Frost vs. Leighton."
- 701 **Sharp, Morrison**, "Leadership and Democracy in the Early New England System of Defense."
- 745 **McKinley, Albert E.**, "The Transition from Dutch to English Rule in New York."

And items 489, 719, and 751.

c. The West

- 736 **Hamilton, Raphael N.**, "The Early Cartography of the Missouri Valley," XXXIX, July 1934, 645-662.

"A study of the early cartography of the Missouri Valley reveals five important phases of development as recorded in the maps of that territory which were made between the date of its discovery and the time when scientific methods were able to produce a completely accurate map. It is the purpose of this paper to show on what knowledge the cartographers based the changes which were made in the maps of each of these periods . . . [and] to indicate . . . that a certain map of each period deserves the appellation of 'Mother Map' because from it originated the general run of contemporaneous Missouri Valley charts." Marquette's map of 1674 made from field notes is cited as the "Mother Map" for the first period; for the final period extending from 1827 to 1857 the map of Lieutenant G. K. Warren is cited.

- 737 **Campbell, Henry C.**, "Radisson and Groseilliers: Problems in Early Western History," I, January 1896, 226-237.

By a very careful examination of the evidence, the writer finds that Radisson's "Journal" which narrated his journeys in Canada and the United States is "virtually worthless." However, Radisson and Groseilliers were the first white men to reach Lake Superior and northwestern Wisconsin and Minnesota, and they were the first to explore Hudson Bay by an inland route. Radisson's claim to the discovery of the Upper Mississippi must be rejected on account of uncertainty.

- 738 **Farrand, Max**, "The Indian Boundary Line," X, July 1905, 782-791.

England's control of all territory east of the Mississippi River after the Seven Years' War prompted action to define the Indian territory. The question was no longer a local one. Interest in the Indian and his fur trade as well as the protection of the colonists governed British policy. Definite boundary lines were erected. Such action, later adopted by the United States, served as an illustration of the development of British colonial practice into American national policy.

- 739 Bourne, Edward G., "The Travels of Jonathan Carver," XI, January 1906, 287-302.

An evaluation of Jonathan Carver's *Travels through the Interior Parts of North America in the Years 1766, 1767, and 1768*. The evidence presented tends to prove that the *Travels* are not an authentic record of Carver's observations, but rather a faulty compilation partially derived from other sources such as Charlevoix's *Journal of a Voyage to North America*, La Hontan's *New Voyages to North America* and Adair's *History of the American Indians*.

- 740 Henderson, Archibald, "The Creative Forces in Westward Expansion: Henderson and Boone," XX, October 1914, 86-107.

Westward expansion in the eighteenth century was due to two fundamental forces—the desire to acquire land and the inquisitiveness of the hunter, traveller and explorer. From the careers of Daniel Boone and Richard Henderson, the author shows how these forces were coordinated. Both men were dependent upon each other. Boone, impoverished by lawsuits, sought aid from Henderson, the attorney of Rowan County, North Carolina. Henderson, intent upon carving out a new colony, organized a land company—the Richard Henderson and Company which became the Louisa Company and later the Transylvania Company. To explore the Kentucky region, he needed a Daniel Boone, an explorer with unusual individual initiative.

IVB6c. Notes and Suggestions

- 741 Alvord, C. W., "An Unrecognized Father Marquette Letter," XXV, July 1920, 676-680.

IVB6c. Documents

- 742 Carter, C. E., "Documents Relating to the Mississippi Land Company, 1763-1769," XVI, January 1911, 311-319.
- 743 Alden, John R., "Washington and the Pittsburgh Route, 1768," XLIV, July 1939, 849-851.
- Washington to John Blair, 1768.

IVB6c. Cross References

- 71 Bolton, H. E., "Material for Southwestern History in the Central Archives of Mexico."
- 723 Crane, Verner W., "The Southern Frontier in Queen Anne's War."
- 725 Winsor, Justin, "Virginia and the Quebec Bill."

7. Intellectual, Cultural, Religious History

- 744 Eggleston, Edward, "Some Curious Colonial Remedies," V, January 1900, 199-206.

The article discusses the strange medicaments which the colonists used, traces their origins, and picturesquely describes their fabrication and effects.

- 745 **McKinley, Albert E.**, "The Transition from Dutch to English Rule in New York," VI, July 1901, 693-724.

Dutch and English institutions reacted upon each other in the transition from Dutch to English rule in colonial New York beginning in 1664 after England had obtained the territory from Holland. Dutch, English, and New England elements, combined with new features peculiar to conditions of the locality, produced institutions related to all three. In Long Island, where the population was chiefly English, English forms and New England practices were introduced. In New York City, Dutch practices of local government were retained. Up the Hudson, English laws were gradually extended; on the Delaware, English institutions were chiefly influenced by Dutch and Swedish customs.

- 746 **Jernegan, Marcus W.**, "Slavery and Conversion in the American Colonies," XXI, April 1916, 504-527.

This article considers the most direct agencies and forces affecting the conversion of the Negro slave and their progress to the time of the American Revolution. The question of manumission by conversion was defeated by action of the state councils, and even the greatest of the interested agencies, the Church of England, working through the Society for Propagation of the Gospel in Foreign Parts, missionaries, and propaganda, developed but meagre progress in the field of conversion. Fear of impairing the economic usefulness of the slaves and the social superiority of the whites, together with the indifference of the owners and the low mental capacity of the Negroes, so recently imported from Africa, were causes enough to retard the movement. Inquiries by the Church of England in 1724 showed that cases of conversion were rare, but by 1776, due to a large increase in the number of slaves, the number of cases had increased. Few of the converts, however, led really Christian lives as their servile condition and savage heritage made for adoption of the form rather than the substance of Christianity.

- 747 **Steiner, Bernard C.**, "Rev. Thomas Bray and His American Libraries," II, October 1896, 59-75.

Thomas Bray, an English clergyman, was actively interested in the formation of public libraries in the American colonies and in other parts of the world. He first established a system of parochial reference libraries to assist the clergymen. In 1700, libraries for the layman were introduced. Books were "to be Lent or Given at the Discretion of the Minister." Bray's public library movement failed to endure because it was based on too narrow a foundation. No provision was made for the acquiring of additional books from time to time. Neither was any effort made by the people to maintain the libraries at their own expense.

- 748 **Greene, Evarts B.**, "The Anglican Outlook on the American Colonies in the Early Eighteenth Century," XX, October 1914, 64-85.

Reflecting an imperialistic policy for the national church, Anglican churchmen in the first decade of the eighteenth century aimed to strengthen the church in the American colonies. Such work was chiefly promulgated by the Society for Propagating the Gospel in Foreign Parts which sought both to convert the heathen and the Indians, and to restore the Quakers, Puritans and Baptists to the Anglican fold. Lack of a bishop in America greatly hampered the work of the church. The failure to establish an American episcopate deprived the colonies of a powerful conservative force. ". . . The Anglican Church in America was trying to operate a system in which the episcopal function was essential, with no bishop nearer than three thousand miles away."

- 749 Woolley, Mary E., "The Development of the Love of Romantic Scenery in America," III, October 1897, 56-66.

The development of the love for romantic scenery in America is traced in the accounts of American travellers and in American poetry. The new spirit of admiration for wild and romantic scenery was fully established during 1780-1785. It was a phase of what has been called the romantic movement.

IVB7. Notes and Suggestions

- 750 Adams, Randolph G., "An Effort to Identify John White," XLI, October 1935, 87-91.
 751 Steiner, Bernard C., "Religious Freedom in Provincial Maryland," XXVIII, January 1923, 258-259.
 752 Schneider, H. W., "A Note on the Samuel Johnson Papers," XXXI, July 1926, 724-726.
 753 Shipton, Clifford K., "A Plea for Puritanism," XL, April 1935, 461-467.

IVB7. Documents

- 754 Marsden, R. G., "A Virginia Minister's Library, 1635," XI, January 1906, 328-332.
 755 "The Catholic Mission in Maryland, 1641," XII, April 1907, 584-587.
 756 Osgood, Herbert L., "The Society of Dissenters Founded at New York in 1769," VI, April 1901, 498-507.
 757 Williams, David, "More Light on Franklin's Religious Ideas," XLIII, July 1938, 803-813.
 "Extracts from David Williams's Autobiography."

IVB7. Cross References

- 661 Kimball, Fiske, "Architecture in the History of the Colonies and of the Republic."
 662 Greene, Evarts B., "Persistent Problems of Church and State."

C. Revolutionary and Early National Period (1776-ca. 1800)

1. General and Political History

- 758 Becker, Carl, "Election of Delegates from New York to the Second Continental Congress," IX, October 1903, 66-85.

Radicals and conservatives struggled to control the delegation to the second Continental Congress. Revolution or loyalism became the issue

during 1774-1776. Conservative forces attempted to maintain a position between absolute resistance and absolute submission by attempts to control the election of delegates to the first Continental Congress and by opposing radical efforts to control the election of delegates to the second Continental Congress by a provincial convention. The struggle resulted in the disintegration of the conservative faction.

- 759 **Tyler, Moses C.**, "President Witherspoon in the American Revolution," I, July 1896, 671-679.

John Witherspoon was an integral and vital part in the intellectual movements of the American Revolution. Endowed with unusual ability as a writer, orator and political thinker, he was capable of seeing and of expressing what he believed to be the historic and cosmopolitan significance of the Revolution. He possessed the moral courage to risk his own favor with the American people to tell them that acquisition of independence was only the beginning of their struggle.

- 760 **Brown, William G.**, "The Early Life of Oliver Ellsworth," X, April 1905, 534-564.

A sketch of Oliver Ellsworth's life from 1745 to 1783 depicting his training at Yale and Princeton Universities, his early law career and his entrance into public life. His early life reveals him as one endowed with tremendous energy and a strong will devoted to high purposes. The American federal courts are an evidence of his ability.

- 761 **Brown, William G.**, "A Continental Congressman: Oliver Ellsworth 1777-1783," X, July 1905, 751-781.

Serving as a continuation of "The Early Life of Oliver Ellsworth" which appeared in the April, 1905, issue, this article considers Ellsworth's activity as the representative from Connecticut. Cautiousness and reserve marked his behavior as a congressman. His services in connection with the Committee of Appeals, the forerunner of the Supreme Court, were most distinguished.

- 762 **Davidson, Philip G.**, "Whig Propagandists of the American Revolution," XXXIX, April 1934, 442-453.

The Revolutionary propagandists understood that prepared opinion was requisite to concerted action. Paine, Livingston, Dickinson, Washington, and John and Samuel Adams united to excite the people against England. Their handling of the defeatist movement of 1778 is described in detail to illustrate their method of attack.

- 763 **Tyler, Moses C.**, "The Party of the Loyalists in the American Revolution," I, October 1895, 24-45.

The writer shows that the Tories constituted a large minority of the American population at the time of the Revolution, that men of broad education, wealth, and prestige made up their party, and that their constitutional arguments defending union with Britain were more valid than those of the Whigs. Finally he denies that the Tories were a party "of mere negation and obstruction," that they were opposed to any reform in the relations of the colonists with the mother country and that they lacked love for their native country or zeal for liberty.

- 764 **Weaver, Emily P.**, "Nova Scotia and New England During the Revolution," X, October 1904, 52-71.

Nova Scotia's role in the American Revolution was an important one to England. Loyalty to the mother country in that period helped preserve England's foothold in Canada. The influx of loyalist colonial refugees expanded the meager English population and helped resist their later absorption into the United States. A province settled largely by emigrants from New England would not seem to promise unusual loyalty to England but existing social conditions favored the established order of things. Because of limited manufacturing, there was little reason for

popular discontent against the navigation laws. The Stamp Act was accepted with little opposition.

- 765 Wead, Eunice, "British Public Opinion of the Peace with America in 1782," XXXIV, April 1929, 513-531.

British newspaper articles which show public opinion concerning certain aspects of the peace with America are here quoted and interpreted, illustrating especially fears and hopes for British commerce.

- 766 Phillips, Ulrich B., "The South Carolina Federalist," pt. I, XIV, April 1909, 529-543; pt. II, XIV, July 1909, 731-743.

Mr. Phillips regards the South Carolina Federalists as typical of the whole Southern wing of Federalists. His study treats of the origin, character and early career of the party and traces its activities to about 1800. "A beginning of the Federalist frame of mind may be seen as early as the movement of revolt from Great Britain."

- 767 Alden, George A., "The State of Franklin," VIII, January 1903, 271-289.

The "state" of Franklin, formed from counties of western North Carolina in 1784, existed for about three years and was an outstanding example of the frontiersman's effort to establish local government. Its history illustrates political conditions on the American frontier before the adoption of the Constitution.

- 768 Warren, Joseph Parker, "The Confederation and the Shays Rebellion," XI, October 1905, 42-67.

Fear that the government of Massachusetts would be overthrown and fear that Shays' insurgents would seize the national arsenal at Springfield prompted federal intervention in Shays' Rebellion of 1786. Congress used the pretext that trouble with the Indians was imminent and voted to raise troops to assist the government of Massachusetts. Mr. Warren traces the origin of such action and discusses whether the danger with the Indians was imminent, whether the Massachusetts authorities desired intervention, the degree of co-operation between state and national government, and the number and fate of the troops actually recruited.

- 769 Anderson, Frank M., "Contemporary Opinion of the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions," pt. I, V, October 1899, 45-63; pt. II, V, January 1900, 225-252.

To develop an adequate understanding of what the people of the United States thought about the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions, the author, in addition to formal documents, considers the expressions and actions which appeared in contemporary pamphlets and newspapers published in the various states. Generally, he concludes that in states north of the Potomac, the Federalists being in a majority secured expressions of disapproval for the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions by legislative replies or action, while in those states south of the Potomac, Republican strength was only sufficiently consolidated to prevent any formal disapproval of the Resolutions.

- 770 Hunt, Gaillard, "Office-Seeking During Washington's Administration," I, January 1896, 270-283.

Even before Washington was inaugurated, innumerable requests were received for appointment to office. Among these requests a great number were based on the fitness of the candidate, some on his military service, others on the fact that the applicant desired a continuance in his present capacity, and a goodly number were based on political considerations. The writer thinks that in many of these requests may be found the germs from which the spoils system was afterward developed.

- 771 **Hunt, Gaillard**, "Office-Seeking During the Administration of John Adams," II, January 1897, 241-261.

During Adams' administration "there were fewer applications for office than there had been during any corresponding period of Washington's term." This was due to the coldness of Adams' personality and to the fact that he was a New Englander whose personal acquaintance beyond that area was not extensive. Moreover, a greater degree of partisanship was shown in appointments than during Washington's term, and finally the delegation of appointive power to departmental heads resulted in a scattering of applications. Many typical applications for office are contained in the article.

- 772 **Morse, Anson D.**, "The Politics of John Adams," IV, January 1899, 292-312.

"The key to the politics of John Adams is the right and duty incumbent upon each citizen, each class, the people as a whole and mankind, of complete self-realization. To protect and assist the process by which this is accomplished, determines for him the form and functions of government and the aim of public policy." Adams believed that the aim of public policy was to direct and regulate a basic love of power in such a way that it should result in freedom. To prosper, a government had to have a democratic element, an aristocratic element and an executive. Each was to be strong enough to maintain its right, yet each was not to encroach upon the other's right.

IVC1. Notes and Suggestions

- 773 **Fitzpatrick, John C.**, "A Rough Secret Journal of the Continental Congress," XXVII, April 1922, 489-491.
- 774 **Burnett, E. C.**, "Perquisites of the President of the Continental Congress," XXXV, October 1929, 69-76.
- 775 **Channing, Edward**, "Kentucky Resolutions of 1798," XX, January 1915, 333-336.
- 776 **Malone, Dumas**, "The Threatened Prosecution of Alexander Hamilton under the Sedition Act by Thomas Cooper," XXIX, October 1923, 76-81.

IVC1. Documents

- 777 "Letters of Christopher Gadsden, 1778," III, October 1897, 83-89.
- 778 **Biddulph, Violet**, "Letters of Robert Biddulph, 1779-1783," XXIX, October 1923, 87-109.
- 779 "Letters of Jefferson to Marbois, 1781, 1783," XII, October 1906, 75-77.
- 780 **Thwaites, R. G.**, "A Letter of Marshall to Jefferson, 1783," X, July 1905, 815-817.
- 781 **Boyd, Carl Evans**, "The Clarksville Conventions, 1785, 1787," II, July 1897, 691-693.
- 782 **Warren, Joseph Parker**, "Documents Relating to the Shays Rebellion, 1787," II, July 1897, 693-698.

- 783 **Renick, Edward I.**, "McKean to Washington, 1789," II, October 1896, 98-99.

An application for office in the judicial department.

- 784 "Senator Few on the Second Session of the First Congress, 1790," XVI, July 1911, 789-790.

- 785 **Thorpe, F. N.**, "A Letter of Jefferson on the Political Parties, 1798," III, April 1898, 488-489.

- 786 **Dauer, Manning J.**, "The Two John Nicholases," XLV, January 1940, 338-353.

Their relationship to Washington and Jefferson.

IVC1. Cross References

- 3 **Libby, Orin G.**, "Ramsay As a Plagiarist."

- 349 **Guttridge, George H.**, "Lord George Germain in Office, 1775-1782."

And items 681, 880, and 893.

2. Political Institutions (Legal, Constitutional and Institutional History)

- 787 **Salley, A. S., Jr., and Ford, Worthington C.**, "Dr. S. Millington Miller and the Mecklenburg Declaration," XI, April 1906, 548-558.

An exposure of Dr. Miller's facsimile of an alleged newspaper, the *Cape Fear Mercury* of June 3, 1775, containing the supposed "Declaration of Independence," a set of resolutions that were to have been passed by a convention in Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, on May 20, 1775. The pamphlet attacking Dr. Miller, written by A. S. Salley, Jr., of the Historical Commission of South Carolina, and an account of Worthington C. Ford's interview with Dr. Miller are included in this study.

- 788 **Salley, A. S., Jr.**, "The Mecklenburg Declaration: The Present Status of the Question," XIII, October 1907, 16-43.

In this brief history of the so-called "Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence of 1775," the author cites his own evidence and arguments for and against the genuineness of the document, as well as those found in George Graham's *The Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, May 20, 1775 and Lives of Its Signers* (1905), and William Hoyt's *The Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence: A Study of Evidence Showing that the Alleged Early Declaration of Independence by Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, on May 20, 1775, is Spurious* (1907).

- 789 **Van Tyne, Claude H.**, "Sovereignty in the American Revolution: An Historical Study," XII, April 1907, 529-545.

Using contemporary material disclosing the colonists' attitude toward the Continental Congress, the state, and its government, Mr. Van Tyne discusses whether there was an American national state in the Revolution and whether Congress or the state governments exercised sovereign power. There existed neither a central government endowed with sovereign powers nor a common will demanding the creation of a national state.

- 790 **Farrand, Max**, "The Delaware Bill of Rights of 1776," III, July 1898, 641-649.

Since Delaware was one of the first states after the outbreak of the Revolution to adopt a constitution and bill of rights, this document is significant. The bill of rights consisted of twenty-three articles, and has been compared with the articles of the bills of rights of Maryland and Pennsylvania which closely corresponded. An attempt is made to show that Delaware drew upon Pennsylvania for certain provisions in framing its declaration of rights, and that Maryland was in turn, indebted to Delaware.

1783," XXXV, October 1929, 46-68.

- 791 **Harlow, Ralph V.**, "Aspects of Revolutionary Finance 1775-

Conditions prevented Revolutionary leaders from using taxation, widespread confiscation of property, and borrowing as means for financing the American Revolution. Leaders of the Revolution were compelled to capitalize upon their single available asset: the hope of winning the war. "This hope could be made financially available by means of paper money." The use of such a financial expedient must be judged by the standards of the time. From this point of view Mr. Harlow makes a survey of the paper issues and of the experiments made to maintain some semblance of value for them down to March, 1780, and gives an account of the processes of repudiation and liquidation after March, 1780.

- 792 **Cushing, Harry A.**, "The People the Best Governors," I, January 1896, 284-287.

The article discusses a heretofore unknown political pamphlet (*The People the Best Governors: or a Plan of Government Founded on the Just Principles of Natural Freedom*) written in the Revolutionary era. Its characteristic ideas were representative government and division of federal powers.

- 793 **Trent, William P.**, "The Case of Josiah Philips," I, April 1896, 444-454.

The strange conviction of Philips by bill of attainder (1778) and then by common trial had its roots in the fact that the Virginia justices who were to try the attainted traitor "did not relish executing a man without a trial" and since they hinted so much to Randolph, the attorney-general, Philips was duly indicted by common law and then executed.

- 794 **Scott, Austin**, "Holmes vs. Walton: The New Jersey Precedent," IV, April 1899, 456-469.

Out of the Holmes vs. Walton case arose the question whether the court had power to control the operation of an act of the legislature upon the principle of its being contrary to the Constitution. The New Jersey legislature had passed a law October 8, 1778, to prevent intercourse with the British who had established themselves on Staten Island. By the act, seizure of goods which were being conveyed to or from places in the possession of British troops or subjects was made lawful. The law also required the justice to grant a jury of six men. Walton seized goods in the possession of Holmes and Ketcham who he charged had brought such goods from within the lines of the enemy. During the proceedings, it was held that the jury of six men was not a constitutional jury with the consequence that the seizure act was adjudged to be unconstitutional and inoperative. That part of the act concerning the unconstitutional jury of six was amended to make the act operative. Relationships between judicial power and unconstitutional legislation were defined.

- 795 **McLaughlin, Andrew C.**, "Social Compact and Constitutional Construction," V, April 1900, 467-490.

Political ideas prominent in the philosophy of the American Revolution also affected men's thinking in the constitutional period. Guided by

the ideas of the compact philosophy, they framed the Constitution. To these men, each man was an individual sovereign possessing all rights. Originally he existed in a state of nature, free from restraint. Society was formed by an agreement in which each individual surrendered some portion of his natural rights and retained others. Government rested upon agreement. Mr. McLaughlin suggests that to "follow out historically the interpretation of the Constitution or to find out what men thought of it at the beginning, we must get into their attitude of mind and understand their method of thinking."

- 796 **Corwin, Edward S.**, "The Progress of Constitutional Theory between the Declaration of Independence and the Meeting of the Philadelphia Convention," XXX, April 1925, 511-536.

To trace the progress of constitutional theory between the Declaration of Independence and the meeting of the Philadelphia Convention, Mr. Corwin discusses four constructive ideas which were brought forth to solve problems resulting from the most persistent problem in the American Constitutional system—the multiplicity of local legislatures possessing indefinite powers. First among the ideas cited is the conviction that legislative power is distinct from judicial power and is exceeded when it interferes with justice through ordinary courts; second, the doctrine of judicial review embracing the idea that the Constitution is supreme—it is law in the sense of a rule enforceable by law, and judicial interpretations of the standing law are final; third, the idea that the Articles of Confederation were high law in relation to acts of the local legislatures, thus suggesting a sanction for the acts of the Confederation; and fourth, the idea that safeguards for private rights and adequate powers for a national government are one and the same problem in that a strengthened national government is a balance to the swollen prerogatives of the state legislatures. Each idea, in Mr. Corwin's opinion, reflects the doctrine of the separation of powers or the notion of a check and balance in government.

- 797 **Learned, Henry B.**, "Origin of the Title Superintendent of Finance," X, April 1905, 565-573.

The title "superintendent of finance" granted to the chief officer of the department of finance by the Continental Congress in 1781 was a unique one in American history. It was of French origin and associated at the time of its appearance in America with Henry IV's minister Sully who had occupied the office known as *surintendant des finances*.

- 798 **Kranel, Richard**, "Prince Henry of Prussia and the Regency of the United States, 1786," XVII, October 1911, 44-51.

Mr. Kranel here reviews evidence that the supporters of a fundamental change in the constitution of the United States entered into correspondence with Prince Henry. With the chaotic condition of the American government, statesmen were discussing the expediency of a monarchical form of government. Prince Henry was mentioned as a possible ruler.

- 799 **Bourne, Edward G.**, "The Authorship of 'The Federalist,'" II, April 1897, 443-460.

The article discusses the authorship of twelve of the Federalist papers, and reaches the conclusion that the majority of them were written by Madison, while Hamilton wrote the rest with the exception of one written by Jay. Much internal evidence is cited to substantiate this conclusion.

- 800 **Ford, Paul L. and Bourne, Edward G.**, "The Authorship of the Federalist," II, July 1897, 675-687.

In the first section of this joint article, Mr. Ford rejects Mr. Bourne's conclusions as to the authorship of the twelve disputed Federalist papers, by virtue of his objections to Mr. Bourne's historical criticism. Mr.

Ford finds that the majority of the disputed articles were written by Hamilton. In his rebuttal, Mr. Bourne reiterates his former conclusions, published in the preceding issue of the *Review* (see 799 above), and denies Mr. Ford's argument.

- 801 **Farrand, Max**, "Compromises of the Constitution," IX, April 1904, 479-489.

Mr. Farrand suggests a new study of the compromises of the Constitution. Historians of the 1850's distorted the history of the Constitution by overemphasizing the slavery question in their studies. The greatest compromise of the Constitution was that which determined the composition of the two houses of Congress. Second to it, was the compromise made in the method of electing the president. Ambiguous and significant wording of many clauses of the Constitution have indicated many additional compromises.

- 802 **Farrand, Max**, "The Records of the Federal Convention," XIII, October 1907, 44-65.

An evaluation of the records depicting the proceedings of the Federal Convention in 1787. The *Journal, Acts and Proceedings of the Convention . . . which formed the Constitution of the United States*, published in 1819, is described as being generally accurate in its statement of questions, but not reliable when disclosing the determination of those questions. Yates' notes published in 1821 as *Secret Proceedings and Debates of the Convention Assembled . . .* revealed the attitudes of individuals in their debates. William Pierce's notes and character sketches printed in the *Savannah Georgian*, April, 1828, are described as valuable in that they called forth many anecdotes. Madison's notes of the debates, published in 1840 under the editorship of H. D. Gilpin, and reprinted in 1900 as volume three of the *Documentary History of the Constitution*, Mr. Farrand states to be a "standard authority" but questions its value since Madison changed his notes to conform to the *Journal, Acts and Proceedings*, a not too reliable source. Rufus King's memoranda of the Convention, published in the *Life and Correspondence of Rufus King* (1894-1900), is cited as a source not affording additional information to that previously printed.

- 803 **Keller, Charles Ray, and Pierson, George Wilson**, "A New Madison Manuscript Relating to the Federal Convention of 1787," XXXVI, October 1930, 17-30.

The manuscript here discussed is a copy of the *Journal of the Federal Convention of 1787* in James Madison's handwriting. The author concludes that it is a genuine copy of Jackson's *Journal* of the Federal Convention made by Madison probably during September and October, 1789, in order that he could use it to remedy the defects and omissions he found in his *Debates*.

- 804 **Steiner, Bernard C.**, "Maryland's Adoption of the Federal Constitution," pt. I, V, October 1899, 22-44; pt. II, V, January 1900, 207-224.

The narrative drawn from contemporary sources reiterates the significance of Maryland's action in ratifying the Federal Constitution at the convention held in April, 1788. Public opinion for and against adoption as reflected in the contemporary local journals and newspapers is carefully considered.

- 805 **Farrand, Max**, "The First Hayburn Case, 1792," XIII, January 1908, 281-285.

This study deals with the origin of the right of the United States Supreme Court to declare an act of Congress invalid because of its being contrary to the Federal Constitution. The first Hayburn case, April, 1792, which declared the Invalid Pension Act of 1792 unconstitutional

is suggested as one earlier than that officially recorded—the Horn's Lessee *vs.* Dorrance in 1795—as evidence of such action by the court.

- 806 **Farrand, Max**, "Territory and District," V, July 1900, 676-681.

The author shows that territory and district had different administrative connotations. The former referred to a region which was capable of self-government and had representative institutions, and the latter signified a region administered by Congress as a "colony."

IVC2. Notes and Suggestions

- 807 **Greene, E. B.**, "American Opinion on the Imperial Review of Provincial Legislation, 1776-1787," XXIII, October 1917, 104-107.
- 808 **Anderson, D. R.**, "Jefferson and the Virginia Constitution," XXI, July 1916, 750-754.
- 809 **Davidson, Philip G.**, "Virginia and the Alien and Sedition Laws," XXXVI, January 1931, 336-342.
Virginia Armaments in 1798.
- 810 **Carter, Clarence E.**, "Zephaniah Swift and the Folwell Edition of the Laws of the United States," XXXIX, July 1934, 689-695.

IVC2. Documents

- 811 **Friedenwald, Herbert**, "Draft of an Address of the Continental Congress to the People of the United States, 1776," I, July 1896, 684-696.
Address compiled to mould public opinion.
- 812 "Diary of Richard Smith in the Continental Congress, 1775-1776," pt. I, I, January 1896, 288-310; pt. II, I, April 1896, 493-516.
- 813 **Crowl, Philip A.**, "Charles Carroll's Plan of Government," XLVI, April 1941, 588-595.
An outline for revising the Articles of Confederation.
- 814 "Notes of Major William Pierce on the Federal Convention of 1787," III, January 1898, 310-334.
- 815 "Papers of William Paterson on the Federal Convention, 1787," IX, January 1904, 310-340.
- 816 **Jameson, J. F.**, "Portions of Charles Pinckney's Plan for a Constitution, 1787," VIII, April 1903, 509-511.
- 817 "Sketch of Pinckney's Plan for a Constitution, 1787," IX, July 1904, 735-747.
- 818 **Ford, W. C.**, "Alexander Hamilton's Notes in the Federal Convention of 1787," X, October 1904, 97-109.
- 819 **Bourne, H. E.**, "Correspondence of the Comte de Moustier with the Comte de Montmorin, 1787-1789," pt. I, VIII, July 1903, 709-733; pt. II, IX, October 1903, 86-96.
French attitude and the making of the American constitution.

- 820 "Papers of Dr. James McHenry on the Federal Convention of 1787," XI, April 1906, 595-624.
- 821 **Ames, Herman V.**, "A Committee of the Massachusetts Legislature on Additional Amendments to the Federal Constitution, 1790," II, October 1896, 99-105.
A report of the committee.
- 822 **Dodd, Walter F.**, "Gilman v. McClary: A New Hampshire Case of 1791," XII, January 1907, 348-350.
- 823 "Records of the Settlers at the Head of the French Broad River, 1793-1803," XVI, July 1911, 791-794.

IVC2. Cross References

- 473 **Andrews, Charles M.**, "The American Revolution: An Interpretation."
- 540 **Bourne, Henry E.**, "American Constitutional Precedents in the French National Assembly."
And items 696 and 869.

3. Diplomatic History

- 824 **Corwin, Edward S.**, "The French Objective in the American Revolution," XXI, October 1915, 33-61.

French intervention in the American Revolution is depicted as arising from a motive of "aggression" rather than of "defense." The enfeeblement of England was the motive behind it. France believed herself entitled to the preponderating influence in Continental affairs; she had lost this influence chiefly on account of Great Britain's meddling. An independent America would deprive Great Britain of much of its commercial prosperity and result in the diminution of British power. What abased the power of Britain would elevate the power of France. Such is the line of reasoning Mr. Corwin has presented in what was to comprise the opening section in his book.

- 825 **Van Tyne, Claude H.**, "Influences Which Determined the French Government to Make the Treaty with America, 1778," XXI, April 1916, 528-541.

"France entered into alliance with the United States in the spring of 1778, because the king and his ministry were convinced that France was doomed to a war with Great Britain whether she formed the American alliance or not, but that it was the better policy to join with America and thus win her support rather than to wait for England to make peace with America, and then make war in company with her upon the House of Bourbon whose insular possessions would lie so completely at their mercy." Thus Mr. Van Tyne summarizes his own article and supports the memoir by Vergennes, addressed to the king in 1782, on the foreign policy of France after 1774.

- 826 **Shepherd, William R.**, "Wilkinson and the Beginnings of the Spanish Conspiracy," IX, April 1904, 490-506.

The following sources form the basis for this account of Wilkinson's first trip to New Orleans in 1787. James Wilkinson's memorial of August 21, 1787, addressed to Stephen Miro, the governor of Louisiana, and

Martin Navarro, the intendant; Wilkinson's declaration of allegiance to the Spanish crown; and Miro's and Navarro's formal report to the Spanish minister of war and treasury of the Indies. These sources indicate that the suggestion for political unity between Kentucky, other Western settlements and Louisiana emanated from Wilkinson rather than from the Spanish government.

- 827 Duniway, Clyde A., "French Influence on the Adoption of the Federal Constitution," IX, January 1904, 304-309.**

The adoption of the Federal Constitution did not occupy a prominent place in French foreign affairs. France made no actual steps to arrest the movement toward a strong American central government, yet it preferred to see the United States remain a weak confederation. French ministers were to regulate their conduct in view of that policy.

- 828 Bemis, Samuel Flagg, "The London Mission of Thomas Pinckney, 1792-1796," XXVIII, January 1923, 228-247.**

Pinckney's achievements in London as the first minister of the United States to England under the Constitution were not notable. His mission there is well worth attention, however, as illustrating the early years of Anglo-American relations, particularly concerning the development of the question of impressment.

- 829 Turner, Frederick J., "The Origin of Genet's Projected Attack on Louisiana and the Floridas," III, July 1898, 650-671.**

A most important aspect in Genet's mission to the United States (1793) was the desire of the French Republic to form connections with the frontiersmen of America and to seize Louisiana, Florida and Canada, as a part of the same enthusiastic crusade for liberty that characterized the activity of the French armies in Europe during the early days of the French Revolution. Genet had been authorized to negotiate a treaty which would establish "a close concert for the extension of the empire of liberty," guarantee the "sovereignty of the peoples" and punish the powers—England and Spain—which had "an exclusive commercial and colonial system." Such a compact was to facilitate the freeing of Spanish America, the opening of navigation on the Mississippi River to the settlers of Kentucky, and the freeing of Louisiana "from the tyrannic yoke of Spain." Genet's

- 830 Bemis, Samuel Flagg, "The United States and the Abortive Armed Neutrality of 1794," XXIV, October 1918, 26-47.**

French diplomats, in 1794, were busy attempting to form a Franco-Scandinavian "neutral counter-coalition" against England and Russia. The inability of the French to give Sweden financial aid presaged failure of the plan. However, it was the Jay Treaty and subsequent conciliation between the United States and England which administered the final blow to the coalition.

- 830a Bemis, Samuel Flagg, "Jay's Treaty and the Northwest Boundary Gap," XXVII, April 1922, 465-484.**

This article deals with the diplomatic negotiations between England and the United States following the discovery that the northwest boundary line between the United States and Canada supposedly settled by the treaty of 1782 was a geographical impossibility. George Hammond, the British minister at Philadelphia, backed by Lord Grenville and the British economic interests and encouraged to some extent by Alexander Hamilton, wished to rectify the matter by bringing British territory down to the "navigable waters" of the Mississippi. Fortunately for the extensive plan was abortive not only because of his and Washington's character, but because of Washington's strict policy of neutrality and because of unforeseen changes in the government and military situation in France.

future of the United States he was defeated by Secretary Jay, who thus unwittingly saved for his country much of the Pacific Northwest, Montana, a part of Minnesota and South Dakota, and all of North Dakota.

- 831 Rives, George L., "Spain and the United States in 1795,"** IV, October 1898, 62-79.

Spanish policy and action greatly influenced the settlement and growth of United States territory situated east of the Mississippi River and west of the Alleghenies. Foremost in American relations with Spain were the opening of the Mississippi to American settlers, the settlement of the Florida boundary and the regulation of commerce. Prior to 1795 Spain had been reluctant to deal with these issues so vital to United States development, but due to Spain's misfortune in the wars of the French Revolution, the weakness of Charles IV of Spain, the infatuation of the queen, and Godoy's ignorance regarding Spanish colonial policy, which aimed to prohibit Spanish colonial trade with foreign countries, the issues were settled favorably for the United States by the Treaty of 1795.

- 832 Lyon, E. Wilson, "The Directory and the United States,"** XLIII, April 1938, 514-532.

"The entire period of the Directory—November 2, 1795 to November 10, 1799—was marked by bad relations with the United States." Lyon here presented new archival material to throw light on these relations and to temper American opinion of the policy of Talleyrand so bluntly exemplified in the X.Y.Z. affair.

- 833 James, James A., "French Opinion as a Factor in Preventing War Between France and the United States, 1795-1800,"** XXX, October 1924, 44-55.

Mr. James here discusses the motives, other than the fear of American armed forces, which caused the Directory to change its antagonistic policy towards the United States. Talleyrand's change of policy was influenced by Louis-Guillaume Otto and Victor du Pont, who realized that the actions of French representatives in America and of French privateers in American waters gave America good reason to ally itself with Britain.

- 834 Bemis, Samuel Flagg, "Washington's Farewell Address: A Foreign Policy of Independence,"** XXXIX, January 1934, 250-268.

"The Farewell Address is often thought of as an expression of abstract ideas of policy looking toward the future, but with little reference to the events of 1796. . . . In Washington's time avoidance of foreign alliances and of foreign entanglement was a question of independence and national sovereignty. What we have generally construed as a policy of 'isolation' we ought really to interpret as a policy of vigilant defense and maintenance of sovereign national independence against foreign meddling in our own intimate domestic concerns."

IVC3. Notes and Suggestions

- 835 Burnett, E. C., "Note on American Negotiations for Commercial Treaties, 1776-1786,"** XVI, April 1911, 579-587.
- 836 Meng, John J., "A Footnote to Secret Aid in the American Revolution,"** XLIII, July 1938, 791-795.
- 837 Ratchford, B. U., "An International Debt Settlement: The North Carolina Debt to France,"** XL, October 1934, 63-69.
- 838 Abernethy, Thomas P., "Commercial Activities of Silas Deane in France,"** XXXIX, April 1934, 477-485.

IVC3. Documents

- 839 **Van Houtte, H.**, "American Commercial Conditions, and Negotiations with Austria, 1783-1786," XVI, April 1911, 567-578.
- 840 **Ford, W. C.**, "Charles Pinckney's Reply to Jay, August 16, 1786, regarding a Treaty with Spain," X, July 1905, 817-827.
- 841 **Kellogg, Louise P.**, "Letter of Thomas Paine, 1783," XXIX, April 1924, 501-505.
- 842 "Edmund Randolph on the British Treaty, 1795," XII, April 1907, 587-599.
- 843 "Letters of Toussaint Louverture and of Edward Stevens, 1798-1800," XVI, October 1910, 64-101.

IVC3. Cross References

- 421 **Haworth, Paul L.**, "Frederick the Great and the American Revolution."
- 472 **Bemis, Samuel F.**, "British Secret Service and the French-American Alliance."
- 588 **Turner, Frederick J.**, "The Policy of France Toward the Mississippi Valley in the Period of Washington and Adams."
- 798 **Kranel, Richard**, "Prince Henry of Prussia and the Regency of the United States, 1786."
- 1218 **Cox, I. J.**, "General Wilkinson and His Later Intrigues with the Spaniards."
- 1221 **Smith, Justin H.**, "The Mexican Recognition of Texas."
- 1224 **Bourne, E. G.**, "The United States and Mexico, 1847-1848."
- 1227 **Reeves, Jesse S.**, "The Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo."
- 1228 **Wilson, H. L.**, "President Buchanan's Proposed Intervention in Mexico."
- And items 409, 446, 625, 631, 819, 869, 879, and 895.

4. Military and Naval History

- 844 **Adams, Charles Francis**, "The Battle of Bunker Hill," I, April 1896, 401-413.

Mr. Adams discusses in detail the military blunders of Generals Gage and Howe in their attempt to capture the forces of Colonel Prescott on Breed's Hill. Because of the failure of the British to occupy the stretch of land connecting Bunker Hill with the mainland, the primary mistakes of the Americans were vitiated, and the frontal attacks on the breastworks by the British resulted in a patriot victory.

- 845 **Spaulding, Oliver L., Jr.**, "The Military Studies of George Washington," XXIX, July 1924, 675-680.

Colonel Spaulding sketches the possibilities of an investigation into Washington's military reading in order to facilitate a proper evaluation

of his generalship. From Washington's library and from his reference to military books, Colonel Spaulding reveals to some degree the extent of Washington's military training.

- 846 Stephenson, Orlando W., "The Supply of Gunpowder in 1776," XXX, January 1925, 271-281.

Statistics prove that without the importation of gunpowder from France during the first two years of the war in America the Revolution would have collapsed. Arsenals seized by the colonists at the outbreak of the rebellion supplied them with munitions that lasted only a few months. As a result of the efforts of Arthur Lee, Silas Deane, and Beaumarchais supplies of munitions came to American ports regularly from France. Lack of gunpowder during this time resulted in the establishment of local munitions factories as early as January, 1776, in Massachusetts and Pennsylvania.

- 847 Howland, Henry R., "A British Privateer in the American Revolution," VII, January 1902, 286-303.

Letters constitute the chief part of this narrative depicting the fortune of John Porteous and Company and the experiences of one of the company's captains, George Dean, who with his ship the *Vengeance* had been commissioned "to attack, Surprise, Seize and take all Ships and Vessels, Goods, Wares and Merchandize, Chattels and Effects whatsoever belonging to the Inhabitants of the American Colonies in Rebellion."

- 848 Adams, Charles Francis, "The Battle of Long Island," I, July 1896, 650-670.

In this discussion of the Battle of Long Island, Charles Francis Adams suggests that George Washington was responsible for grave errors of military judgment. At the Battle of Long Island (1776), as a result of hesitation at a time when decision was essential, he involved his army in disaster and disgrace. Yet he extricated himself and the army from such disaster by finally recognizing the situation. Washington remained calm and inspired the necessary confidence without which all would have been lost. The dilatoriness and stupidity of the enemy and the element of luck also aided the American cause.

- 849 Clark, Jane, "Responsibility for the Failure of the Burgoyne Campaign," XXXV, April 1930, 542-559.

The author divides the responsibility for the failure of the Burgoyne campaign between Lord Germain, Clinton, Howe, and Burgoyne. The difficulties of communication and the error in attempting to direct the armies from England are especially stressed. The article is based on letters of the generals and of Germain.

- 850 Wright, John W., "The Corps of Light Infantry in the Continental Army," XXXI, April 1926, 454-461.

In a purely military manner a colonel in the United States Army describes the "first and only 'corps d'elite' of the American army." The make-up and striking conduct of these chosen groups of Revolutionary soldiers was seen especially at Stony Point and Yorktown.

- 851 Adams, Randolph G., "A View of Cornwallis's Surrender at Yorktown," XXXVII, October 1931, 25-49.

Mr. Adams tells the story of the surrender at Yorktown using Henry Clinton's correspondence as his point of departure. He concludes that the surrender can not be traced to any single cause and that Germain's favoritism, Cornwallis's mistaken belief that a British victory was an American defeat, Cornwallis's "grand-stand" tactics, Graves's incompetence, and Clinton's intermittent blindness and failure quickly to divine Washington's plans—together with the patience and strategy of Washington himself—all contributed to the surrender.

IVC4. Notes and Suggestions

- 852 Alden, John Richard, "Why the March to Concord?" XLIX, April 1944, 446-454.
- 853 Wright, John W., "The Rifle in the American Revolution," XXIX, January 1924, 293-299.

IVC4. Documents

- 854 "Orders of Mercer, Sullivan and Stirling, 1776," III, January 1898, 302-310.
- 855 "Letter of Major-General Johann Kalb, 1777," XV, April 1910, 562-567.
On the American Revolution.
- 856 Clark, Jane, "The Convention Troops and the Perfidy of Sir William Howe," XXXVII, July 1932, 721-723.
- 857 "Intercepted Letters and Journal of George Rogers Clark, 1778, 1779," I, October 1895, 90-96.
Letters relating to the Illinois expedition.
- 858 Turner, F. J., "George Rogers Clark and the Kaskaskia Campaign, 1777-1778," VIII, April 1903, 491-506.
- 859 Alvord, C. W., "Father Pierre Gibault and the Submission of Post Vincennes, 1778," XIV, April 1909, 544-557.
- 860 Beer, William, "The Surrender of Fort Charlotte, Mobile, 1780," I, July 1896, 696-699.
- 861 Bain, James, Jr., "The Siege of Charleston; Journal of Captain Peter Russell, December 25, 1779 to May 2, 1780," IV, April 1899, 478-501.
- 862 "Letters from Lafayette to Luzerne, 1780-1782," pt. I, XX, January 1915, 341-376; pt. II, XX, April 1915, 577-612.
- 863 "A Letter of Marquis de La Fayette, 1781," VIII, October 1902, 89-91.
- 864 Turner, Frederick J., "Carondelet on the Defence of Louisiana, 1794," II, April 1897, 474-505.
Reveals governor's preparation for resisting proposed French expedition against New Orleans.

IVC4. Cross References

- 865 Jameson, J. Franklin, "St. Eustatius in the American Revolution."
And item 396.

5. Social and Economic History

- 865 Jameson, J. Franklin, "St. Eustatius in the American Revolution," VIII, July 1903, 683-708.

St. Eustatius, an island in the West Indies, played a significant role in the American Revolution. When controlled by the neutral Dutch it was a valuable means of temporary supply and a market for American exports. St. Eustatius was made the means for export of military supplies to the American armies. That such trade was significant is seen in the British protests to the Dutch government and in the British seizure of the island.

IVC5. Notes and Suggestions

- 866 Hastings, G. E., "Notes on the Beginning of Aeronautics in America," XXV, October 1919, 68-72.

IVC5. Documents

- 867 Martin, Asa E., "American Privateers and the West India Trade, 1776-1777," XXXIX, July 1934, 701-706.
 868 Sée, Henri, "Commerce between France and the United States, 1783-1784," XXXI, July 1926, 732-752.
 869 "Marbois on the Fur Trade, 1784," XXIX, July 1924, 725-740.
 870 "Journal of John Mair, 1791," XII, October 1906, 77-94.
 871 "Correspondence of Eli Whitney relative to the Invention of the Cotton Gin," III, October 1897, 90-127.
 872 McGuire, Peter S., "Journal of a Journey to the Westward," XXXVII, October 1937, 65-88.

IVC5. Cross References

- 715 Baldwin, Simeon E., "American Business Corporations Before 1789."
 874 Bacot, D. Huger, "The South Carolina Up-Country at the End of the Eighteenth Century."
 And items 397, 721, 835, 839, and 1235.

6. Sectional History

a. The South

- 873 Phillips, Ulrich B., "The Origin and Growth of the Southern Black Belts," XI, July 1906, 798-816.

The plantation system is here presented as one of the principal factors in the shaping of Southern economy. To some degree it controlled the migration and activity of both the black and white races; it tended to

eliminate small slave-holders and constituted an industrial system of two types—the paternalistic plantation and the democratic small farm. This system extended the black belts wherever gang labor was practicable. Data are selected from three countries in the Georgia cotton belt—Oglethorpe, Hancock and Clarke—for the period 1790—1860 to illustrate the process of continuous development from frontier and colonial organization to and past agricultural prime.

- 874 **Bacot, D. Huger**, "The South Carolina Up-Country at the End of the Eighteenth Century," XXVIII, July 1923, 682-698.

South Carolina's up-country was destined to become the most important and influential part of the state because of its greater area and resources and because it was to contain the greater proportion of the state's white population. The pre-revolution up-country was essentially the undeveloped frontier, until the opening of the lands by the treaties with the Indians in 1784 which resulted in immigration, largely agricultural. Slowly, after the introduction of the steamboat and railroad, the crude frontier-type agriculture developed into a plantation system controlled by whites. This social and economic development of the cotton culture explains the stand taken by this area for secession.

IVC6a. Notes and Suggestions

- 875 **Phillips, U. B.**, "Slave Crime in Virginia," XX, January 1915, 336-340.
- 876 **McGuire, C. E.**, "A Society for Preservation of Liberty, 1784," XXXII, July 1927, 792-793.

IVC6a. Documents

- 877 "Intercepted Letters of Virginia Tories, 1775," XII, January 1907, 341-346.
- 878 **Hamilton, J. G. de R.**, "A Society for Preservation of Liberty, 1784," XXXII, April 1927, 550-552.
In Virginia.
- 879 **Burnett, E. C.**, "Papers relating to Bourbon County, Georgia, 1785-1786," pt. I, XV, October 1909, 66-111; pt. II, XV, January 1910, 297-353.
- 880 **Phillips, U. B.**, "South Carolina Federalist Correspondence, 1789-1797," XIV, July 1909, 776-790.
- 881 **Garrison, George P.**, "'A Memorandum of M. Austin's Journey, from the head Mines in the County of Wythe in the State of Virginia to the Lead Mines in the Province of Louisiana West of the Mississippi,' 1796-1797," V, April 1900, 518-542.
- 882 "South Carolina in the Presidential Election of 1800," IV, October 1898, 111-129.

IVC6a. Cross References

- 766 **Phillips, Ulrich B.**, "The South Carolina Federalist" (2 parts).
And items 778, 808, 823, 841, and 892.

b. The East and Middle Atlantic

- 883 **Gilbert, George A.**, "The Connecticut Loyalists," IV, January 1899, 273-291.

Connecticut during the American Revolution proved itself capable of handling its internal foe—the Tory, who had risen there chiefly from religious sects who supported the British Crown. The attitude of its government toward the Tory was firm but not vindictive or revengeful. In the very early period, Tories were merely treated as social outcasts, but as more vigilant guard became expedient, Committees of Inspection were established and legislation such as the Act (December 14, 1775) "for restraining and punishing persons inimical to the liberties of this and other of united colonies" was enacted. To curb Toryism further, other acts, such as one May 8, 1777, decreeing that no person was to pass from town to town without a written permit, restricted personal activity. Provision was also made to re-establish those who repented of their Toryism.

IVC6b. Documents

- 884 **Tuckerman, Frederick**, "Diary of Samuel Cooper, 1775-1776," VI, January 1901, 301-341.
- 885 "Relations between the Vermont Separatists and Great Britain, 1789-1791," XXI, April 1916, 547-560.

IVC6b. Cross References

- 758 **Becker, Carl**, "Election of Delegates from New York to the Second Continental Congress."
- 764 **Weaver, Emily P.**, "Nova Scotia and New England During the Revolution."
- 790 **Farrand, Max**, "The Delaware Bill of Rights of 1776."
- 804 **Steiner, Bernard C.**, "Maryland's Adoption of the Federal Constitution" (2 parts).
- 844 **Adams, Charles Francis**, "The Battle of Bunker Hill."
- 848 **Adams, Charles Francis**, "The Battle of Long Island."
And items 681 and 778.

c. The West

- 886 **Turner, Frederick Jackson**, "Western State-Making in the Revolutionary Era," pt. I, I, October 1895, 70-87; pt. II, I, January 1896, 251-269.

The frontier as the molding force in American institutions and life was initially evidenced in the exploits of the pioneers and land companies during the period of the Revolution. Settlements like Watauga, Vandalia, Transylvania, represented the older west, where a unique Americanism was to be born, where democracy of frontiersmen was to flourish except for conflicts with land companies and proprietors. The writer treats of the various grievances of these new settlements, the men who settled

them, the type of government they established, and their petitions for incorporations into the seaboard states.

- 887 **Boyd, Carl E.**, "The County of Illinois," IV, July 1899, 623-635.

The article discusses the political administration of the region beyond the Ohio which was erected into the "County of Illinois" under Virginia's jurisdiction in 1780. The story of attempted administrative improvements in conformity with the ideals of the seaboard states and their frustration by virtue of the French political incapacity and indifference is herein discussed.

IVC6c. Notes and Suggestions

- 888 **Kellogg, Louise P.**, "The Early Biographers of George Rogers Clark," XXXV, January 1930, 295-302.

IVC6c. Documents

- 889 "Letters of Ebenezer Huntington, 1774-1781," V, July 1900, 702-729.
- 890 **Kinnaird, Lawrence**, "Clark-Leyba Papers," XLI, October 1935, 92-112.
Concerned with American conquest of the Illinois Country, 1778.
- 891 **Turner, F. J.**, "Jefferson to George Rogers Clark, 1783," III, July 1898, 672-673.
- 892 "Letters to Caleb Strong, 1786, 1800," IV, January 1899, 328-331.
- 893 "Letter of John Marshall to James Wilkinson, 1787," XII, January 1907, 346-348.
- 894 **Shepherd, W. R.**, "Papers Bearing on James Wilkinson's Relations with Spain, 1787-1789," IX, July 1904, 748-766.
- 895 **E. C. B.**, "George Rogers Clark to Genet, 1794," XVIII, July 1913, 780-783.
- 896 "Journal of Jean Baptiste Truteau on the Upper Missouri, 'Première Partie,' June 7, 1794-March 26, 1795," XIX January 1914, 299-333.
- 897 "The Illinois Indians to Captain Abner Prior, 1794," IV, October 1898, 107-111.
- 898 **Turner, F. J.**, "Documents on the Blount Conspiracy, 1795-1797," X, April 1905, 574-606.

IVC6c. Cross References

- 767 **Alden, George A.**, "The State of Franklin."
- 826 **Shepherd, William**, "Wilkinson and the Beginnings of the Spanish Conspiracy."
- 829 **Turner, Frederick Jackson**, "The Origin of Genet's Projected Attack on Louisiana and the Floridas."

830a Bemis, Samuel Flagg, "Jay's Treaty and the Northwest Boundary Gap."

831 Rives, George L., "Spain and the United States in 1795."
And items 482, 840, 858, and 859.

7. Intellectual, Cultural, Religious History

899 Van Tyne, C. H., "Influence of the Clergy and of Religious and Sectarian Forces on the American Revolution," XIX, October 1913, 44-64.

Among the causes of the American Revolution, Mr. Van Tyne suggests religious bigotry, sectarian antipathy, and the influence of the Calvinistic clergy as among the most important. The clergy did not merely reflect the general views of the time, but served to inculcate the liberal political ideas of Locke and others into the minds of their followers thus rendering them sensitive to governmental oppression.

IVC7. Notes and Suggestions

900 Burnett, E. C., "Ciphers of the Revolutionary Period," XXII, January 1917, 329-334.

IVC7. Documents

901 Fish, Carl R., "Documents relative to the Adjustment of the Roman Catholic Organization in the United States to the Conditions of National Independence, 1783-1789," XV, July 1910, 800-829.

902 "The First Colonial Bishopric, 1786," I, January 1896, 310-313.

IVC7. Cross References

541 Hill, David Jayne, "A Missing Chapter of Franco-American History."

American influence in French Revolution.

D. Expanding and Building the Nation (ca. 1800-1865)

1. General and Political History

903 Hunt, Gaillard, "Office-Seeking During Jefferson's Administration," III, January 1898, 270-291.

Although Jefferson did not want to remove Federalists from office to make way for Republicans, he did refuse appointments to the "incurable" Federalists and did remove from office those Federalists whom Adams appointed in the interim between his election and his inauguration. By and large most of his appointments went to Republicans. The article contains much correspondence relating to applications and appointments.

- 904 **Stephenson, Nathaniel W.**, "Calhoun, 1812, and After," XXXI, July 1926, 701-707.

Mr. Stephenson marks the action of Calhoun and the War Hawks in 1812 as a turning point in the advance towards civil war. These men saw the possibilities in the system of government (1789) which enable the control of a majority in Congress to coerce a minority. By this system the War Hawks were able to coerce New England into the War of 1812. To have their way, they played off a solid sectional majority against a solid sectional minority. Their action demonstrated that sectional despotism was a possibility.

- 905 **Abernethy, Thomas P.**, "Andrew Jackson and the Rise of Southwestern Democracy," XXXIII, October 1927, 64-77.

This is a biography of Jackson as the Tennessee politician, and a study of his part in the democratic movement of the West. The author states that Jackson was an opportunist who championed no cause of the people, but encouraged the people to champion his cause. Democracy won its victory in Tennessee due to the guiding spirit of William Carroll, governor from 1821 to 1835, who, "staunchly opposed by Jackson, established 'Jacksonian Democracy' within her borders." Jackson's presidential campaign and the rise of western democracy have been called synonymous, but "Jackson had little to do with the development of the democracy of the West." His military reputation, his connection with the expansion of the West, and the fact that he was not closely connected with the intrigues of Washington politics accounted for his appeal. Prior to 1828, there was no record of his aiming at the amelioration of the condition of the masses.

- 906 **Sioussat, St. George Leakin**, "Some Phases of Tennessee Politics in the Jackson Period," XIV, October 1908, 51-69.

Two phases of Tennessee politics—the sales and donations of public lands, and the extension of credit through banking—are analyzed. In the disposal of public lands two points of view existed. One fostered the disposal of land as a source of revenue for public improvements; the other suggested free grants in order to increase the population of the state. The extension of banking credit during 1817-1829 was a process of painful experimentation. Tennessee was willing to accept the benefits of a branch of the Bank of the United States when times were prosperous and only gradually joined the attack on the Bank which began in the year of Jackson's inauguration.

- 907 **Barker, Eugene C.**, "President Jackson and the Texas Revolution," XII, July 1907, 788-809.

To reveal Jackson's policy when he attempted to rectify the surrender of claims to Texas in return for advantages in Florida in 1819, Mr. Barker traces Jackson's effort to purchase Texas, Jackson's connection with Sam Houston's alleged plot to incite rebellion in Texas and the charges made against the United States government of breach of neutrality during the Texas revolution. He concludes that Jackson displayed a desire to maintain the dignity and honor of the United States in regard to the Texas question; that he did not connive at Houston's revolutionary scheme; that he did what the law permitted to enforce neutrality when the revolution began.

- 908 **Gay, H. Nelson**, "Garibaldi's American Contacts and His Claims to American Citizenship," XXXVIII, October 1932, 1-19.

A few of the American experiences of Garibaldi which were closely interwoven in some of the most notable events of his life are here considered in the light of new documents. The final attempts of Garibaldi to gain American citizenship are shown to have been curbed by George P. Marsh, American minister at Florence.

- 909 **Curti, Merle E.**, "Young America," XXXII, October 1926, 34-55.

"Young America," a political group led by George Sanders in 1852 was interested in the furthering of the ideals of American democracy and encouraged co-operation with European republican movements of that day. Mr. Curti describes Sander's activities abroad to realize that ideal and indicates the relation of the movement to American national self-consciousness in the years following 1850. The movement was significant as a political gesture vigorous enough to arouse alarm in Europe and as a means of developing and expressing a national self-consciousness.

- 910 **Foster, Herbert Darling**, "Webster's Seventh of March Speech and the Secession Movement, 1850," XXVII, January 1922, 245-270.

On the basis of manuscript material: 2500 letters of the Greenough Collection, the Webster Papers in the New Hampshire Historical Society and other contemporary material, Mr. Foster considers three problems: the danger of disunion in 1850; the reasons for Webster's change in attitude toward the disunion danger in February, 1850, and the reasons for his 7th of March speech; the effects of his speech and attitude upon the secession movement.

- 911 **Sears, Louis M.**, "Slidell and Buchanan," XXVII, July 1922, 709-730.

From letters covering the period 1846-1858 found among the Buchanan Papers in the library of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, the author reveals the intimate friendship which existed between Slidell and Buchanan. From 1846 on, Slidell seems to have regarded Buchanan as "presidential timber" and with that in mind constituted himself Buchanan's adviser and political manager. The letters reveal intimate details of this activity.

- 912 **Bretz, Julian P.**, "The Economic Background of the Liberty Party," XXXIV, January 1929, 250-264.

In this brief survey of the economic background of the Liberty party, J. P. Bretz emphasizes an economic phase of abolitionist propaganda which fastened the cause of economic distress after the panic of 1837 upon slavery. Political abolitionists, emphasizing this material rather than the moral evil of slavery, aimed to show that the North suffered from the inability of slavery to pay for itself, and from the consequent drain on Northern capital. They claimed that the political power of slavery was employed to the advantage of Southern economic interests and to the disadvantage of manufacture and agriculture in the Northern states. Such propaganda tended to secularize the abolition movement and aided the political abolitionists in their formation of the Liberty party in 1840.

- 913 **Dunning, William A.**, "The Second Birth of the Republican Party," XVI, October 1910, 56-63.

Although the national Republican party claims to date back to 1854, the emergency of the Civil War and of reconstruction effaced its party lines (which even in 1860 were very vague); in fact in 1864 the name itself was disavowed. It was 1868 before it resumed its career.

- 914 **Stephenson, N. W.**, "A Theory of Jefferson Davis," XXI, October 1915, 73-90.

This study is an impression of Davis' personality rather than an analytical biography. Davis was a man who had a roving past, no attachment to any region, and the air of a man risen from the ranks. The association with the army led him later to become a Mississippi

politician and a Southern planter due to the heterogeneous spirit of the newly-formed region and the carefree optimism of his colleagues. After eight years of this (1843) he entered politics, and became Senator, and Secretary of War in due time. As a Democrat demanding states' rights for fifteen years, he really had the economic interests of the South at heart. He appeared to be an opportunist because of his advocacy of states' rights and his long series of centralizing measures, but his intellect was really inferior, and his inconsistency was due to mental rather than moral ills. As President of the Confederacy, he was opposed and misunderstood, and had not the power to realize his ambitions, nor the will to see his mistakes.

- 915 **Van Deusen, Glyndon G.**, "Thurlow Weed; A Character Study," XLIX, April 1944, 427-440.

Thurlow Weed, a newspaper editor and political "counselor," guided the destinies of three parties in New York state—the Antimasonic, Whig and

- 916 **Spring, Leverett W.**, "The Career of a Kansas Politician," Republican. His career challenges interpretation; historians have dismissed him as a man with questionable motives and peculiar public morals. His personal relations were marked by contrasts and contradictions. His principles were both liberal and conservative. Weed's generosity, humanity, and his faith in the doctrine of individual freedom prompted him to denounce injustice. His defense of freedom of speech and religion and his attempts to alleviate suffering reflected the liberal side of his nature. Yet his repugnance to change, his inherent skepticism and his lack of belief in progress made him suspicious of reform that threatened existing institutions.

IV, October 1898, 80-104.

This article consists of a political biography of James Lane from the time he entered Kansas in 1855 till the time he committed suicide when threatened with congressional exposure of his corrupt transactions in 1866. During this period he was indicted by a pro-slavery grand jury, was Senator from Kansas, and Commissioner of Recruiting during the Civil War. The author concludes that he was a "dangerous man."

- 917 **Caldwell, Joshua W.**, "John Bell of Tennessee, A Chapter of Political History," IV, July 1899, 652-664.

The political biography of John Bell forms the basis of this article around which were oriented the conflicts of the Whig and Democrat parties in Tennessee, the formation of the Constitutional Union party in 1860, and Bell's influence on the secession movement in his state. The author feels that condemnation of Bell for not upholding the tenets of the party he led in 1860 is unjustified, and that dispassionate history will rank him among the ablest, purest, and best men America has produced.

- 918 **Harlow, Ralph Volney**, "Gerrit Smith and the John Brown Raid," XXXVIII, October 1932, 32-61.

Gerrit Smith was not tried as an accomplice of Brown because of the claim of temporary insanity, and upon recovery he denied his guilt and was upheld by influential friends. Nevertheless, the visits of Brown to Smith, and Smith's previous interest in the Kansas struggle tend to indicate his complicity.

- 919 **Cole, Arthur C.**, "Lincoln's Election an Immediate Menace to Slavery in the States?" XXXVI, July 1931, 740-767.

"If the future of the institution of slavery in the Southern states had been vested exclusively in the hands of the man called to the executive leadership of the nation in 1860, and if he had carried on a policy consistent with his earlier attitude toward slavery, any fears concerning the immediate future of slavery in the Southern states would have been groundless. . . . Nothing . . . in Lincoln's career suggests an abolition

menace from that quarter in 1860-61. . . . [The] doom of slavery in the Southern states was sealed more by the social and economic forces that had gained headway in nineteenth century America than by the immediate implications of the political revolution of 1860."

- 920 **Hamilton, J. G. de Roulhac**, "Lincoln's Election an Immediate Menace to Slavery in the States?" XXXVII, July 1932, 700-712.

The thesis of the article is that the Republican party was organized, definitely for the purpose of warring on slavery. The argument is supported by quotations from the speeches of Lincoln, Seward, Chase and Sumner, and by reference to the Republican support of John Brown's Raid and its failure to support the Fugitive Slave Law.

- 921 **Schafer, Joseph**, "Who Elected Lincoln?" XLVII, October 1941, 51-63.

The author attempts to ascertain the effect of the voting of the various racial groups in the Middle West on Lincoln's election. More specifically, he deals with the German vote in Wisconsin in the election of 1860 and arrives at the conclusion that more Germans voted for Douglas than for Lincoln. His final conclusion is that Lincoln was elected through an upsurge of real enthusiasm of the distinctly American group.

- 922 **Carter, John Denton**, "Abraham Lincoln and the California Patronage," XLVIII, April 1943, 495-506.

Abraham Lincoln in 1861 was faced with the problem of distributing the state's patronage among party leaders. Office seekers flocked to Washington to announce their claims to the President and the new Republican administration. An equitable distribution of offices among party leaders in March, 1861, was difficult because of the lack of California Republicans in Congress. Personal relations between Lincoln and Senator Edward D. Baker of Oregon, the sole Republican in Congress from the Pacific Coast, further complicated matters. President Lincoln's decision settling the struggle for offices between the opposing factions—Senator Baker and the Republican leaders of the state—was a compromise which satisfied neither faction completely, but prevented an open breach in party ranks. It resulted in securing support of all California Republicans for the preservation of the Union.

- 923 **Luthin, Reinhard H.**, "Abraham Lincoln and the Tariff," XLIX, July 1944, 609-629.

Lincoln was a Henry Clay protectionist from his first appearance in politics. In the period just before 1860, however, he felt that the tariff issue should not be agitated. Pennsylvania was crucial for Lincoln's nomination and election, and supported him because of his "safe" position on the tariff. Once in office Lincoln showed himself a protectionist, but a mild one, and the tariff increases of 1862 and 1864 were due (on Lincoln's part) to a need for funds to finance the war.

- 924 **Abel, Annie H.**, "The Indians in the Civil War," XV, January 1910, 281-296.

The Indians' interference in the Civil War proved costly to them. Because of their alliance with the South, their territory was subject to reconstruction measures no less severe than those enacted upon other territory in the South. The author describes the active participation of those tribes which were moved west of the Mississippi and which constituted much of the population of the Central and Southern Superintendencies.

IVD1. Notes and Suggestions

- 925 **Honeywell, Roy J.**, "President Jefferson and his Successor," XLVI, October 1940, 64-75.
Jefferson's influence on Madison.
- 926 **Wiltse, Charles M.**, "The Authorship of the War Report of 1812," XLIX, January 1944, 253-259.
- 927 **Learned, H. B.**, "Gerry and the Presidential Succession in 1813," XXII, October 1916, 94-97.
- 928 **Paullin, C. O.**, "The Electoral Vote for John Quincy Adams in 1820," XXI, January 1916, 318-319.
- 929 **Learned, H. B.**, "The Sequence of Appointments to Polk's Original Cabinet: A Study in Chronology, 1844-1845," XXX, October 1924, 76-83.
- 930 **Paullin, C. O.**, "The National Ticket of Broom and Coates, 1852," XXV, July 1920, 689-691.
- 931 **Haynes, G. H.**, "President of the United States for a Single Day," XXX, January 1925, 308-310.
Was David Atchison, president *pro tempore* of the Senate, President of the United States March 4-5, 1849?
- 932 **Nichols, Roy F.**, "Some Problems of the First Republican Presidential Campaign," XXVIII, April 1923, 492-496.
- 933 **Hubbell, Jay B.**, "Lincoln's First Inaugural Address," XXXVI, April 1931, 550-552.
- 934 **Wilson, Charles R.**, "McClellan's Changing Views on the Peace Plank of 1864," XXXVIII, April 1933, 498-505.
- 935 **Wilson, Charles R.**, "New Light on the Lincoln-Blair-Frémont 'Bargain' of 1864," XLII, October 1936, 71-78.
- 936 **Beale, H. K.**, "Is the Printed Diary of Gideon Welles Reliable?" XXX, April 1925, 547-552.

IVD1. Documents

- 937 **Renick, E. I.**, "Letter of John Page to Madison, 1801," I, July 1896, 699-701.
- 938 **Becker, Carl**, "A Letter of James Nicholson, 1803," VIII, April 1903, 511-513.
On nomination of Burr in 1800.
- 939 **Brown, Everett S.**, "The Senate Debate on the Breckinridge Bill for the Government of Louisiana, 1804," XXII, January 1917, 340-364.
- 940 "William Lattimore to his Constituents, 1805," XXIX, April 1924, 506-510.
- 941 **McLaughlin, A. C.**, "Letters of John Quincy Adams to Alexander Hamilton Everett, 1811-1837," pt. I, XI, October 1905, 88-116; pt. II, XI, January 1906, 332-354.

- 942 **Hunt, Gaillard**, "Joseph Gales on the War Manifesto of 1812," XIII, January 1908, 303-310.
- 943 **Hedges, James B.**, "John Adams Speaks His Mind," XLVII, July 1942, 806-809.
Adams' opinion of George Washington and Benjamin Franklin, 1817.
- 944 "The First American Discoveries in the Antarctic, 1819," XVI, July 1911, 794-798.
- 945 "Virgil Maxcy on Calhoun's Political Opinions and Prospects, 1823," XII, April 1907, 599-601.
- 946 **Hay, Thomas Robson**, "John C. Calhoun and the Presidential Campaign of 1824, Some Unpublished Calhoun Letters," pt. I, XL, October 1934, 82-96; pt. II, XL, January 1935, 287-300.
- 947 **Lathrop, Barnes F.**, "Monroe on the Adams-Clay 'Bargain,'" XLII, January 1937, 273-276.
Memoranda of President Monroe, 1825.
- 948 "Letters of Dr. Thomas Cooper, 1825-1832," VI, July 1901, 725-736.
- 949 "Letters of William T. Barry, 1806-1810, 1829-1831," XVI, January 1911, 327-336.
- 950 **Bassett, J. S.**, "James K. Polk and His Constituents; 1831-1832," XXVIII, October 1922, 68-77.
- 951 **Cannon, M. Hamlin**, "A Pension Office Note on Brigham Young's Father," L, October 1944, 82-90.
- 952 "Letter of Daniel Webster, 1833," XXV, July 1920, 695-697.
- 953 "A Letter of Noah Webster to Daniel Webster, 1834," IX, October 1903, 96-104.
- 954 "On the Journals of the House of Representatives, 1836," XXIX, April 1924, 510-513.
- 955 "Diary of Thomas Ewing, August and September, 1841," XVIII, October 1912, 97-112.
- 956 **Reeves, J. S.**, "Letters of Gideon J. Pillow to James K. Polk, 1844," XI, July 1906, 832-843.
- 957 **Judson, Harry P.**, "Lincoln's Nomination to Congress, 1846," I, January 1896, 313-314.
Lincoln to N. J. Rockwell.
- 958 **Tyler, Lyon G.**, "Letter of John C. Calhoun, 1847," I, January 1896, 314-315.
A letter which emphasizes Calhoun's "fearless independence of thought and action."
- 959 "H. L. Bulwer on the Death of President Taylor, 1850," XXXII, April 1927, 553-554.
- 960 "Some Letters of Salmon P. Chase, 1848-1865," XXXIV, April 1929, 536-555.

- 961 **Marshall, T. M.**, "Diary and Memoranda of William L. Marcy, 1849-1851," pt. i, XXIV, April 1919, 444-462. (See item 966.)
- 962 "Some Papers of Franklin Pierce, 1852-1862," pt. i, X, October 1904, 110-127; pt. ii, X, January 1905, 350-370.
- 963 **J. F. J.**, "A Letter of Alexander H. Stephens, 1854," VIII, October 1902, 91-97.
- 964 **Hunt, Gaillard**, "Robert Barnwell Rhett on the Biography of Calhoun, 1854," XIII, January 1908, 310-312.
- 965 "From the Autobiography of Herschel V. Johnson, 1856-1867," XXX, January 1925, 311-336.
- 966 **Marshall, T. M.**, "Diary and Memoranda of William L. Marcy, 1857," pt. ii, XXIV, July 1919, 641-653. (See 961 above.)
- 967 **Hunt, Gaillard**, "Narrative and Letter of William Henry Trescot. Concerning the Negotiations between South Carolina and President Buchanan in December, 1860," XIII, April 1908, 528-556.
- 968 **Meneely, A. H.**, "Three Manuscripts of Gideon Welles," XXXI, April 1926, 484-494.
- 969 "The Assassination of President Lincoln, 1865," XXIX, April 1924, 514-517.
- 970 "Henry J. Raymond on the Republican Caucuses of July, 1866," XXXIII, July 1928, 835-842.

IVD1. Cross References

- 99 **Randall, J. G.**, "Has the Lincoln Theme Been Exhausted?"
- 1065 **Clark, Victor S.**, "The Influence of Manufactures Upon Political Sentiment in the United States from 1820 to 1860."
- 1132 **Dodd, William E.**, "The Fight for the Northwest, 1860." And item 1109.

2. Political Institutions (Legal, Constitutional and Institutional History)

- 971 **Farrand, Max**, "The Judiciary Act of 1801," V, July 1900, 682-686.

The author re-examines the origins and consequences of this legislation and finds that the act was necessary for more efficient circuit court proceedings, that it did not erect nearly as many judgeships as supposed, and that the increased expense it entailed was not great.

- 972 **Walton, Joseph S.**, "Nominating Conventions in Pennsylvania," II, January 1897, 262-278.

Fluctuation in method characterized the activity of nominating conventions in Pennsylvania from 1788 to 1824. In many states self-nomina-

tion, caucuses, and mixed caucuses marked the developmental steps toward a regular representative nominating body. In Pennsylvania, the reverse characterized its first efforts to select a general ticket. As early as 1788 two state conventions composed of elected delegates existed as nominating bodies, but there was a decline through the mixed caucus to the pure caucus which by 1800 had become a thoroughly developed system for making state nominations. But by 1824 the last vestige of caucus methods was removed. The state was ready to join her sister states in securing a national convention for presidential nominations.

- 973 **Murdock, John S.**, "The First National Nominating Convention," I, July 1896, 680-683.

Although the Antimasonic convention which met in Baltimore in 1831 has been regarded as the first national nominating convention, the facts concerning the conference of Federalists which nominated De Witt Clinton for the presidency in September, 1812, seem sufficient to the author to warrant his assertion that the conference of 1812 was the first one.

- 974 **Morison, Samuel E.**, "The First National Nominating Convention, 1808," XVII, July 1912, 744-763.

From evidence found in the Harrison Gray Otis manuscripts Mr. Morison describes a secret meeting of Federalist leaders in New York, in 1808, which nominated Charles Pinckney for the presidency and Rufus King for the vice-presidency, as the original nominating convention. It served as a model for the convention of 1812 which had been regarded by John S. Murdock as the solitary instance of a national party convention before 1831.

- 975 **Ostrogorski, M.**, "The Rise and Fall of the Nominating Caucus, Legislative and Congressional," V, January 1900, 253-283.

Lack of organized methods to recommend candidates for office led to the formation of an extra-constitutional institution—the nominating caucus—in the early 1800's. Convenience led to the practice of allowing members of state legislatures or members of Congress to decide upon prospective officers. Because the nominating caucus was of a representative character it assumed the right to consider matters which were of a general concern. Its decisions bound both those members present and those which it represented. Democratic forces objected to them. The system was regarded as a direct violation of the Constitution. It gave the members of Congress the power of nominating the presidents of the United States.

- 976 **Dodd, William E.**, "Chief Justice Marshall and Virginia, 1813-1821," XII, July 1907, 776-787.

Conflicts between Chief Justice Marshall and Judge Spencer Roane of Virginia arose over the power of the Supreme Court. To reveal this struggle Mr. Dodd reviews: the *Martin vs. Hunter's Lessee* case (1815), in which the United States Supreme Court overruled the decision of the Virginia Court of Appeals; the *McCulloch vs. Maryland* case, involving the authority of the national court to determine the constitutionality of an act of Congress; and the *Cohens vs. the State of Virginia* case, which involved the validity of a state law prohibiting the sale of lottery tickets in Virginia by the agents of a company organized under the laws of the District of Columbia.

- 977 **Bogart, Ernest L.**, "Taxation of the Second Bank of the United States By Ohio," XVII, January 1912, 312-331.

Mr. Bogart in his discussion of taxation of the United States Bank in Ohio during the 1820's concludes that the people and legislature of Ohio were not actuated by political theories in their attitudes towards the bank, but rather by the economic situation which existed in the relationship between state banks and the national bank. He does not treat the incident as one of political interest or constitutional significance.

- 978 **Learned, Henry B.**, "The Establishment of the Secretaryship of the Interior," XVI, July 1911, 751-773.

Increased duties forced the establishment of a Department of Interior in 1849. Since the foundation of the Constitution, Madison, Monroe, John Quincy Adams, and Andrew Jackson had suggested the benefit of a separate department dealing with internal affairs, but the plan finally adopted was suggested by Robert J. Walker, Secretary of the Treasury.

- 979 **Hayden, Ralston**, "The States' Rights Doctrine and the Treaty-Making Power," XXII, April 1917, 566-585.

In his discussion of the relation between the treaty-making powers of the United States and the reserved powers of the states the author deals with the history of the negotiation and ratification of treaties before 1860 concerning the inheritance and disposal of property of aliens. In concluding these treaties, the President and the Senate actually interpreted the treaty-making clause of the Constitution; their interpretation possessed an authority exceeded only by that of the Supreme Court. During the thirty years preceding the Civil War, this interpretation was deflected from the nationalist to the states' rights position in an increased degree. The history of these treaties shows that the right of each state to control exclusively its own land laws did not become an acute political contention in the Senate until after 1830. Secondly, that from 1830 to 1860, the President and the Senate doubted their authority to make treaties in this field; neither the President nor the Senate maintained a definite position. Where conflict arose, the treaty concerned with the property of aliens was amended to bring it in accord with the states' rights theory.

- 980 **Julian, George W.**, "The First Republican National Convention," IV, January 1899, 313-322.

The author, who was a delegate to the Pittsburgh convention of 1856 (called for the purpose of organizing a national Republican party), describes the details of the meetings, the most notable delegates present, the speeches, the platform adopted, and the nominees elected. He also attempts to show from what sources the Republican party drew its political strength after 1852.

- 981 **Catterall, Helen T.**, "Some Antecedents of the Dred Scott Case," XXX, October 1924, 56-71.

In this paper read at the meeting of the American Historical Association at Columbus in 1924 under the title "A By-Product of the Law," the author cites cases demonstrating the evolution of judicial opinion regarding the status of the slave who had set foot on free soil.

- 982 **Corwin, Edwin S.**, "The Dred Scott Decision in the Light of Contemporary Legal Doctrines," XVII, October 1911, 52-69.

Mr. Corwin suggests the need for a revision of three particulars of the usual historical verdict regarding the case of *Scott vs. Sanford*: first, as to the legal value of the pronouncement in that case of unconstitutionality with reference to the Missouri Compromise; second, as to the basis of that pronouncement; third, as to the nature of the issue between Chief Justice Taney and Justice Curtis upon the question of citizenship raised by Dred Scott's attempt to sue in the federal courts. He concludes that the Dred Scott decision was not *obiter dictum* within any definition of *obiter dictum* obtainable from a fair review of the practice of the Supreme Court; that it was not based by the majority of those entering into it upon Calhounist premises; and that Justice Curtis' supposed refutation of Taney's argument upon the question of Dred Scott's title to a *prima facie* citizenship within the recognition of the Constitution was a fiction.

- 983 Paxson, Frederic L., "The Territory of Colorado," XII, October 1906, 53-65.

The erection of the territory of Colorado in 1861 is "an illuminative precedent in showing the manner in which territorial problems have been forced upon Congress and ultimately adjusted." The national government's neglect to recognize the frontiersman's desire and need for government resulted in the establishment in 1859 of his own organization—the territory of Jefferson, which remained until Congress acted and established the territory of Colorado in 1861.

- 984 Moore, Frederick W., "Representation in the National Congress from the Seceding States, 1861-65," pt. I, II, January 1897, 279-293; pt. II, II, April 1897, 461-471.

Of the numerous problems which arose out of the relationship between seceding states and the national government, the author discusses typical cases of application for representation in Congress during 1861-1865 made by states which had seceded. Some applicants represented districts and states which honestly repudiated secession; other were chiefly interested in seeking office. Congressional decisions made on requests for membership during the first year of the Civil War demonstrated the first impressions of what was the right and expedient attitude toward the seceding states. The distinction made between loyal and disloyal citizens influenced the decisions of Congress. Obedient citizens were to be protected. The problem was to determine whether the candidate had been legally elected in his district or state and whether he represented loyal interests.

- 985 Fish, Carl R., "Lincoln and the Patronage," VIII, October 1902, 53-69.

Lincoln never abused and apparently never used the patronage for personal aggrandizement. He used it as a means to strengthen the party and to carry out the policy of the administration. Congress had established a strong claim to dictate many appointments. The Secretaries claimed a voice in the selection of their subordinates. Claims of outside interests had to be considered. Lincoln made Congressional representations the basis of his appointments, but did not submit to dictation.

- 986 Woodburn, James A., "The Attitude of Thaddeus Stevens Toward the Conduct of the Civil War," XII, April 1907, 567-583.

Attention is focused upon Thaddeus Stevens' opinions during the 1860's concerning the relation of the war to slavery, the relation of the war to the Constitution, and the effect of the war upon the political status of the seceded states and their relation to the Federal Union. In Stevens' opinion slavery was to be destroyed. The Union during times of war was not bound by the limitations of the Constitution. The hostile Confederate states had repudiated the Constitution, consequently they were belligerents and only the laws of war bound the nation which endeavored to overcome them.

- 987 Randall, James G., "Some Legal Aspects of the Confiscation Acts of the Civil War," XVIII, October 1912, 79-96.

An examination of legal problems involved in the enforcement of the federal confiscation acts during the Civil War including the war power of Congress, the status of the "rebels," the legal character of the Civil War, the restrictions of the attainder clause of the Constitution and the belligerent rights as against the municipal powers of Congress.

- 988 Randall, James G., "Captured and Abandoned Property During the Civil War," XIX, October 1913, 65-79.

To dispose of private property which had been abandoned by its owners and captured by the Federal armies as they advanced into Con-

federate territory, Congress passed the Captured Property Act March 12, 1863. The act affords an instance of the extreme methods used to cripple an enemy in the Civil War. Agents appointed by the Secretary of the Treasury were to collect such abandoned property not used for waging war. It was either to be appraised and devoted to public use or to be forwarded to a place of sale in a loyal state. Proceeds were to be turned in to the Treasury. By the act, property was to be restored to loyal owners after the conclusion of the war. Mr. Randall discusses the difficulties encountered by the agents in their disposal of seized cotton, houses and plantations as well as the problems involved in the restoration of such property to loyal owners.

- 989 Pierson, William Whatley, Jr., "The Committee on the Conduct of the Civil War," XXIII, April 1918, 550-576.

To throw light on the problem—to what extent may the unprofessional civilian control military policy and decide questions of strategy and tactics?—Mr. Pierson discusses the investigative and advisory activities of the Congressional committee on the conduct of the Civil War. He concludes that the committee's work of investigation was legitimate; that it brought speed into the conduct of the war; that it ferreted out abuses and governmental inefficiency; and that it labored, for a time, to preserve balance and co-operation between the legislative and executive departments of the government.

- 990 McCaleb, Walter F., "The Organization of the Post Office Department of the Confederacy," XII, October 1906, 66-74.

To establish a post office similar to that of the Union and to insure continuance of postal facilities until that system became established was the task confronting Judge John Reagan when he accepted the position of Postmaster General. The successful administration of the department after its establishment in 1861 revealed Reagan as an efficient administrative officer.

IVD2. Notes and Suggestions

- 991 Fish, Carl Russell, "The Crime of W. H. Crawford," XXI, April 1916, 545-546.

IVD2. Documents

- 992 Turner, F. J., "Documents on the Relation of France to Louisiana, 1792-1795," III, April 1898, 490-516.

- 993 Brook, Elizabeth, "Federalist Jeremiahs," XLIII, October 1937, 74-78.

Letters exchanged between Gouverneur Morris and Joseph Kingsberry in 1815-1816.

- 994 Robinson, William M., Jr., "The Second Congress of the Confederate States Enactments at Its Second and Last Session," XLI, January 1936, 306-317.

IVD2. Cross References

- 806 Farrand, Max, "Territory and District."
1098 White, Laura A., "The Fate of Calhoun's Sovereign Convention in South Carolina."
1129 Marshall, Thomas M., "The Miners' Laws of Colorado."
And items 530 and 1124.

3. Diplomatic History

- 995 **Farrand, Max**, "The Commercial Privileges of the Treaty of 1803," VII, April 1902, 494-499.

This is a short article dealing with a provision of the treaty of 1803 with France, which later conflicted with a clause of the Federal Constitution. The treaty provision gave France and Spain commercial privileges in the Territory of Louisiana; the Constitutional clause specifies that "No Preference shall be given by any Regulation of Commerce or Revenue to the Ports of one State [Louisiana became a state in 1812] over those of another." Mr. Farrand claims that statesmen and the public generally overlooked this breach of the Constitution through ignorance of the circumstances of the treaty.

- 996 **Mahan, A. T.**, "The Negotiations at Ghent in 1814," XI, October 1905, 68-87.

This article includes causes of the War of 1812, the constant efforts for peace by English and American ministers during the War, and the final negotiations at Ghent. Mr. Mahan sees fear of European complications as the main reason for England seeking peace. He views the War as an aid to national unity in the United States.

- 997 **Cox, Isaac Joslin**, "The American Intervention in West Florida," XVII, January 1912, 290-311.

"The intervention by the United States in West Florida was due to two distinct causes—a spirit of territorial acquisition, expressing itself in popular clamor, faultless diplomacy, and a series of frontier disturbances; and domestic revolt within the territory itself." Thus Mr. Cox summarizes the events of 1803-1813. He calls the diplomatic transaction regarding West Florida the most disgraceful of our history, and attributes the bringing of that section into the American Union not to diplomacy, but to the physiography of the frontier and the make-up of the population.

- 998 **Robertson, William Spence**, "The United States and Spain in 1822," XX, July 1915, 781-800.

Monroe's message to Congress of March 8, 1822, led to the establishment of diplomatic missions to the rebel colonies of Spain in America. The intention of the United States to recognize the independence of the Spanish colonies was then announced by the concerted action of the executive and Congress. Mr. Robertson believes the message of 1822 provoked a much stronger protest from Continental Europe than did the Monroe Doctrine of the next year. He reviews the correspondence of the European diplomats in 1822 to substantiate that point.

- 999 **Ford, Worthington C.**, "John Quincy Adams and the Monroe Doctrine," pt. I, VII, July 1902, 676-696.

This is a well-documented article concerning the English and American policies in regard to the rebel Spanish-American colonies. At first Adams, Rush, and Monroe were inclined to favor Canning's proposal of joint Anglo-American action in regard to the colonies. However, by November of 1823 the Americans were becoming suspicious of Canning's motives. (See item 1000.)

- 1000 **Ford, Worthington C.**, "John Quincy Adams and the Monroe Doctrine," pt. II, VIII, October 1902, 28-52.

In the second article, by the use of new state papers, Mr. Ford emphasizes the fact that the Monroe Doctrine was the work of John Quincy Adams. The part Adams played in framing an American policy, and forcing it upon an "unwilling and fearsome" President and Cabinet, is here presented, with lavish inclusion of important letters. (See item 999.)

- 1001 **Hart, Albert B.**, "The Monroe Doctrine and the Doctrine of Permanent Interest," VII, October 1901, 77-91.

Mr. Hart here pleads for a "doctrine of permanent interest" to replace the outmoded Monroe Doctrine. After a review of the growth of the Monroe Doctrine and its many inconsistencies, he states that new principles are "absolutely" necessary to accomplish a permanent pan-American policy.

- 1002 **Perkins, Dexter**, "Europe, Spanish America, and the Monroe Doctrine," XXVII, January 1922, 207-218.

Mr. Perkins here examines the period between March, 1822, when President Monroe declared for the recognition of the colonies, and June, 1824, by which time the colonial question had become less important to the European powers. He finds that the Monroe Doctrine did not alter in any essential respect the viewpoint of the Continental powers. To the end of 1823 nothing had been definitely determined upon and after December of that year it was fear of British opposition, rather than American, that tempered any aggressive ideas regarding the colonies that the Continental nations might have.

- 1003 **Lingelbach, William E.**, "Saxon-American Relations, 1778-1828," XVII, April 1912, 517-539.

The appointment in 1827 of a "Consul General of Saxony to the United States" marked the culmination of a movement to establish regular trade and diplomatic relations between Saxony and the United States. Mr. Lingelbach reviews the events of a half-century leading up to that appointment; he stresses the Saxon point of view in all relationships between Saxony and the United States.

- 1004 **Schafer, Joseph**, "The British Attitude Toward the Oregon Question, 1815-1846," XVI, January 1911, 273-299.

Mr. Schafer here relates the background of the Oregon question in its entirety. He stresses negotiations of the British and American governments between 1815 and 1827, and 1842 and 1846. To Mr. Schafer the change in attitude and concessions on the part of the British government turned upon "the honest desire of Sir Robert Peel's administration to avoid a rupture with the United States."

- 1005 **Merk, Frederick**, "British Government Propaganda and the Oregon Treaty," XL, October 1934, 38-62.

Polk's inaugural speech with its references to Oregon caused a flurry of war excitement and a series of aggressive speeches in England. Foreign Minister Aberdeen's technique in guiding the British public toward a treaty of renunciation after this flurry is remarkable and is here exemplified by his handling of the *Times* and other newspapers.

- 1006 **Merk, Frederick**, "The Oregon Pioneers and the Boundary," XXIX, July 1924, 681-699.

The theory that American pioneers brought pressure to bear on the governments of either the United States or Great Britain by occupation of the disputed area north of the Columbia River must be abandoned. In its stead Mr. Merk offers evidence that the fear of the Hudson's Bay Company of the American pioneers caused that company to abandon its base on the Columbia River for one on Vancouver Island; this withdrawal reduced the value of the Columbia in the minds of the British and led to the final Oregon settlement. Only indirectly, then, did the Oregon pioneers solve the boundary problem.

- 1007 **Adams, Ephraim D.**, "English Interest in the Annexation of California," XIV, July 1909, 744-763.

"The theory of an active British governmental design upon California is . . . wholly without foundation." Thus, concludes the writer, after a

evaluation of the recently opened Records of the British Foreign Office of 1838-1846. Mr. Adams shows that the lively interest among British agents in securing California was constantly checked by Aberdeen and the home government.

- 1008 Rives, George L., "Mexican Diplomacy on the Eve of the War with the United States," XVIII, January 1913, 275-294.

Mexico, aroused by the abortive treaty of 1844 for the annexation of Texas by the United States, finally sought to preserve its territorial integrity by first seeking advice and then co-operation from Great Britain and France. Mexican diplomacy aimed to maintain Texas. British diplomacy directed by Lord Aberdeen urged Mexico's recognition of an independent Texas in order to hinder annexation by the United States; it warned Mexico of the danger which war with the States would bring to other portions of Mexican territory. Such diplomacy refused aid to Mexico unless supported by France. Mr. Rives traces Mexico's negotiations with these powers—France and England—to gain their support.

- 1009 Janes, Henry L., "The Black Warrior Affair," XII, January 1907, 280-298.

The American steamer *Black Warrior* was involved in a customs question in February, 1854, which severely strained American-Spanish relations. The question of the free right to dock at Havana en route to New York was tested. Mr. Janes attributes the difficulty to the inadequate powers granted American consular representatives in Havana, the overly energetic disposition of the Spanish governor of Cuba, and the proponents of manifest destiny in the United States.

- 1010 Adams, Charles Francis, "The Trent Affair," XVII, April 1912, 540-562.

According to Mr. Adams' interpretation the United States never had a justifying "leg to stand on" in the controversy which followed the capture of Mason and Slidell. He reviews both the British and American points of view regarding the incident, and emphasizes the time element as influential in the entire affair. Mr. Adams believes that the immediate carrying of the Confederate envoys to England and the censuring of Capt. Wilkes would have been a brilliant diplomatic achievement.

- 1011 Sears, Louis Martin, "A Confederate Diplomat at the Court of Napoleon III," XXVI, January 1921, 255-281.

Mr. Sears includes John Slidell in the calendar of distinguished American diplomats. The correspondence of Slidell with James Mason, Confederate representative in London, was the one source used in writing this paper. The numerous problems of recognition, intervention, recall of the blockade, ship-building, and the cotton loan occupied this agent to France, who never was officially recognized.

IVD3. Notes and Suggestions

- 1012 Lokke, C. L., "Jefferson and the Leclerc Expedition" (ca. 1801), XXXIII, January 1928, 322-328.

- 1013 Whitaker, Arthur P., "Another Dispatch from the United States Consulate in New Orleans," XXXVIII, January 1933, 291-295.

Letter, 1803, depicts activities of Daniel Clark, American consul, and contains description of transfer of Louisiana from Spain to France.

- 1014 Sweet, Paul, "Erich Bollmann at Vienna in 1815," XLVI, April 1941, 580-587.

Bollmann as United States "representative" at Vienna.

- 1015 **Miller, Hunter**, "An Annotated Dashiell's Map," XXXVIII, October 1932, 70-73.
Concerned with the negotiation of the Webster-Ashburton Treaty, 1842.
- 1016 **Blinn, Harold E.**, "Seward and the Polish Rebellion of 1863," XLV, July 1940, 828-833.
- 1017 **Sageser, A. Bower**, "Ex-President Cleveland Invited to Head the Counsel for the Venezuelan Arbitration," XXXIX, October 1933, 78-81.
- 1018 **Lockey, Joseph B.**, "A Neglected Aspect of Isthmian Diplomacy," XLI, January 1936, 295-305.

IVD3. Documents

- 1019 "Despatches from the United States Consulate in New Orleans, 1801-1803," pt. i, XXXII, July 1927, 801-824; pt. ii, XXXIII, January 1928, 331-359.
- 1020 **Steiner, B. C.**, "Instruction and Note of Robert Smith, 1810, 1811," XXX, April 1925, 553-556.
- 1021 "Letter of John Quincy Adams, 1811," VI, January 1901, 341-344.
Deciphered despatch to the Secretary of State from Adams' post in Russia.
- 1022 **Martell, J. S.**, "A Side Light on Federalist Strategy During the War of 1812," XLIII, April 1938, 553-566.
- 1023 "Major-General Henry Lee and Lieutenant-General Sir George Beckwith on Peace in 1813," XXXII, January 1927, 284-292.
- 1024 "Letters relating to the Negotiations at Ghent, 1812-1814," XX, October 1914, 108-129.
- 1025 "Letter of John Quincy Adams, from Ghent, 1814," XV, April 1910, 572-574.
- 1026 "Letter of William Wirt, 1819," XXV, July 1920, 692-695.
- 1027 **Knaplund, Paul**, "The Armaments on the Great Lakes, 1844," XL, April 1935, 474-476.
- 1028 **Belknap, Geo. E.**, "Letters of Bancroft and Buchanan on the Clayton-Bulwer Treaty, 1849, 1850," V, October 1899, 95-102.
- 1029 **Van Alstyne, Richard W.**, "Anglo-American Relations, 1853-1857," XLII, April 1937, 491-500.
British statesman's opinions on the Clayton-Bulwer Treaty and American expansion.
- 1030 **Milne, A. Taylor**, "The Lyons-Seward Treaty of 1862," XXXVIII, April 1933, 511-525.
- 1031 "The Confederacy and the Declaration of Paris," XXIII, July 1918, 826-835.

- 1032 Harrington, Fred Harvey, "A Peace Mission of 1863," XLVI, October 1940, 76-86.

A mission to stop war between the North and South.

IVD3. Cross References

- 30 Adams, Henry, "Count Edward de Crillon."
 463 Aiton, Arthur S., "The Diplomacy of the Louisiana Cession."
 464 Sloane, William M., "The World Aspects of the Louisiana Purchase."
 514 Merk, Frederick, "British Party Politics and the Oregon Treaty."
 590 Whitaker, Arthur P., "The Retrocession of Louisiana in Spanish Policy."
 594 Temperley, H. W. V., "The Later American Policy of George Canning."
 598 Adams, Ephraim D., "Lord Ashburton and the Treaty of Washington."
 600 Golder, Frank A., "Russian-American Relations During the Crimean War."
 603 Baxter, James P., 3rd, "The British Government and Neutral Rights, 1861-1865."
 604 Golder, Frank A., "The American Civil War through the Eyes of a Russian Diplomat."
 1206 Rockhill, W. W., "Diplomatic Missions to the Court of China."
 1229 Burr, George L., "The Search for the Venezuela-Guiana Boundary."
 1230 Burr, George L., "The Guiana Boundary."
 And items 529, 586, 637, 1085, 1197a, 1232, 1236, and 1237.

4. Military and Naval History

- 1033 Adams, Charles Francis, "Wednesday, August 19, 1812, 6:30 P.M.: The Birth of a World Power," XVIII, April 1913, 513-521.
 Charles Francis Adams regards August 19, 1812, the day when the ship *Constitution* under Captain Hull defeated the *Guerriere*, as the time the United States became a world power. He gives an account of the battle itself.
 1034 Randall, James G., "The Newspaper Problem in Its Bearing Upon Military Secrecy During the Civil War," XXIII, January 1918, 303-323.
 This article, written at the time of World War I, presents the deleterious effect the enterprise of the journalists and the laxness of government control had on the North due to these publications. The stringent

censorship gave way to a gentlemen's agreement between the government and the press, and, because of its failure, an administrative policy of news control was evolved which was perfect in theory but not in practice because of the "leaks" and other methods of conveying messages to the press. Reporters were given many privileges, but the publishing of troop movements and official information through various channels led to counter movements by the South and the hostile attitude of the government of the Union. The South had better support and control of its newspapers. There were many failures because of exposés of military activities of the North. Many instances are noted of falsehoods about the war and the administration.

- 1035 Golder, F. A., "The Russian Fleet and the Civil War," XX, July 1915, 801-812.

This article, based on official documents and timely articles in the *Morskoï Sbornik* points out the real motives of the coming of the Russian fleet to our shores. In 1863 the Polish insurrection threatened the peace of Europe. Prussia sided with Russia, and England, France, Austria, and other powers demanded international settlement. The Russians planned a campaign of preying on the commerce of their enemies if war should break out, so sent the Atlantic and Pacific divisions of their fleet, which even if joined together were too weak for naval engagements, on a visit to the United States, in San Francisco and New York, respectively. At this time, these two countries had the same enemies, and were kindly disposed toward each other. Russia had no other place for a base of supplies, and no place closer for raiding the trade routes than American ports. During the winter of 1863-64, England and France backed down from their belligerent stand and Russia was allowed to quell the Polish insurrection. Russia felt that the stay of her fleet in American ports had helped prevent the impending European war. Reciprocally, the North was grateful for the great moral support given by the Russians at a time when the plotting of other European powers was felt. Probably neither country was aware of the service it was rendering to the other; there is "nothing to compare with it in diplomatic history."

- 1036 Rhodes, James F., "The First Six Weeks of McClellan's Peninsular Campaign," I, April 1896, 464-472.

The dilatory and irresolute tactics of McClellan in his attempted march to Richmond not only lost to the North a certain victory over the Confederates, but also resulted in the eventual withdrawal of the Army of the Potomac from strategically vital positions. The article analyzes the incompetence of McClellan, his slow, indecisive military tactics, and fixes on him the blame for the failure of the Peninsular Campaign.

- 1037 Rhodes, James F., "The Battle of Gettysburg," IV, July 1899, 665-677.

In a detailed account of the battle, the author picturesquely describes Union and Confederate strategy, the substantial leadership of Meade, the faulty understanding of Lee, and Pickett's charge.

- 1038 Squires, J. Duane, "Aeronautics in the Civil War," LXII, July 1937, 652-669.

After presenting a short summary of the development of military aeronautics prior to 1861, the author depicts the work of T. S. C. Lowe who with his "Aeronautic Department" during the early years of the Civil War demonstrated the practical use of the balloon for reconnaissance purposes.

- 1039 Bradford, Gamaliel, "A Portrait of General George Gordon Meade," XX, January 1915, 314-329.

This study intends to give a better insight into the personality of General Meade. One of the secondary figures of the war, he is character-

ized by the author as careful rather than impetuous in momentous decisions, but unable to lead men or to co-operate fully with his fellow officers. He was a man apart, and though possessed with admirable qualities, he had not the personality to give these qualities expression.

- 1040 Ramsdell, Charles W., "General Robert E. Lee's Horse Supply, 1862-1865," XXXV, July 1930, 757-777.

This study describes the difficulties which General Lee encountered in his effort to keep his army supplied with horses, mules, and the facilities for keeping them in condition for service. The effects of the limited supply of horses and mules upon General Lee's movements are suggested.

- 1041 Paullin, Charles Oscar, "President Lincoln and the Navy," XIV, January 1909, 284-303.

During the years 1861-65 the duties of the navy were more important, varied, and difficult than at any other period; naval expenditures rose from 12 to 123 millions of dollars, the number of naval ships from 90 to 670, and personnel accordingly. The work of the navy covered the blockading of the Southern States, the patrolling of rivers, the execution of many important naval expeditions, and the tracking of enemy commerce-destroyers. Secretary of the Navy Gideon Welles, a Republican who had backed Lincoln in his Presidential campaign, was a good business man, with naval experience. The complementary Gustavus Fox, Assistant Secretary of the Navy, was impulsive and possessed of extensive professional information. They worked intimately with President Lincoln in the management of naval policy and administration, the President criticizing and suggesting changes in plans submitted by the staff, and sometimes issuing a needed order. Many instances are cited of the activities of President Lincoln in naval affairs, especially in matters of ordnance and ammunition. Before the close of the War Lincoln had acquired considerable knowledge of military and naval affairs, though at the beginning he was ignorant of them.

- 1042 Rhodes, James Ford, "Sherman's March to the Sea," VI, April 1901, 466-474.

Sherman's insight into the problems involved rather than the design to march to the sea revealed his qualities as a general. He was capable of foreseeing the possible moves of the enemy and guarded against them. He estimated the physical and moral consequences of cutting the Confederacy in two.

IVD4. Notes and Suggestions

- 1043 Robinson, Ralph, "Retaliation for the Treatment of Prisoners in the War of 1812," XLIX, October 1943, 65-70.
- 1044 Fish, Carl Russell, "Conscription in the Civil War," XXI, October 1915, 100-103.
- 1045 Thacher, G. H., "Lincoln and Meade after Gettysburg," XXXII, January 1927, 282-283.
- 1046 Fish, C. R., "Back to Peace in 1865," XXIV, April 1919, 435-443.
- 1047 Dunning, W. A., "Disloyalty in Two Wars," XXIV, July 1919, 625-630.
- 1048 Smith, Justin H., "Official Military Reports," XXI, October 1915, 96-98.

IVD4. Documents

- 1049 Owen, Thomas M., "West Florida and Its Attempt on Mobile, 1810-1811," II, July 1897, 699-705.
- 1050 "Journal of William K. Beall, July-August, 1812," XVII, July 1912, 783-808.
- 1051 Einstein, Lewis, "Recollections of the War of 1812 by George Hay, Eighth Marquis of Tweeddale," XXXII, October 1926, 69-78.
- 1052 Stacey, C. P., "An American Plan for a Canadian Campaign, Secretary James Monroe to Major General Jacob Brown, February, 1815," XLVI, January 1941, 348-358.
- 1053 "Letters of a West Pointer, 1860-1861," XXXIII, April 1928, 599-617.
- 1054 "Letter of Stephen R. Mallory, 1861," XII, October 1906, 103-108.
- 1055 "Federal Generals and a Good Press," XXXIX, January 1934, 284-297.
 Selections from the confidential correspondence of James Gordon Bennett of the *New York Herald*, 1861.
- 1056 Williams, G. Mott, "Letters of General Thomas Williams, 1862," XIV, January 1909, 304-328.
- 1057 "A Confederate Private at Fort Donelson, 1862," XXXI, April 1926, 477-484.
- 1058 "Letter of Grant to his Father, on the Capture of Vicksburg, 1863," XII, October 1906, 109.
- 1059 "General M. C. Meigs on the Conduct of the Civil War," XXVI, January 1921, 285-303.
- 1060 "Kearsarge and Alabama: French Official Report, 1864," XXIII, October 1917, 119-123.

IVD4. Cross References

- 1105 Stephenson, N. W., "The Question of Arming the Slaves."
- 1106 Rhodes, James Ford, "Who Burned Columbia?"
 And items 1140 and 1143.

5. Social and Economic History

- 1061 Beard, Charles A., "Some Economic Origins of Jeffersonian Democracy," XIX, January 1914, 282-298.

As a contribution to the solution of the problem whether the differences in the views of the Federalists and the Republicans in 1790 were due to their theories of the state or to their private economic interests, Mr. Beard examines the vote cast in the first Congress dealing with the assumption of state debts and the security-holding interests. He aims to determine whether the vote reflected the individual interests of the

Senators and Representatives or the economic interests of their respective constituents.

- 1062 **Daniels, G. W.**, "American Cotton Trade With Liverpool Under the Embargo and Non-Intercourse Acts," XXI, January 1916, 276-287.

This account of the state of the cotton market in the United States and England during 1807-1812 was derived chiefly from the correspondence of commission agents in Charleston, Savannah and Liverpool. Serving as an intelligence department for buyers and sellers of cotton and staple products, these agents reported information concerning imports, prices and purchases. Mr. Daniels demonstrates the effect of the trade restrictions resulting from the Embargo Act and the Non-Intercourse Acts upon price trends and amounts imported.

- 1063 **Hulbert, Archer B.**, "Western Ship Building," XXI, July 1916, 720-733.

A study of the first decade of the nineteenth century from the angle of ship-building in the trans-Allegheny region, enlightenment upon the problems of western surplus, ownership of the Mississippi River, the relationship of Eastern and Western merchants, creation of ports of entry and departure on Western waters, co-operative banking between Eastern and Western towns, experiments in river navigation, and the embargoes of 1802 and 1807.

- 1064 **Galpin, W. Freeman**, "The American Grain Trade to the Spanish Peninsula, 1810-1814," XXVIII, October 1922, 24-44.

During the Napoleonic era British troops stationed in Spain and Portugal were very dependent on American grain. Great quantities of grain and flour were shipped to the Peninsula and the American farmer and grain merchant profited. Because the British needed this produce they developed a system of licensing American cargoes bound for Spain to exempt them from capture by the British blockading squadron. In May, 1813, a bill was passed by Congress forbidding the use of British licenses and at almost the same time the British rescinded their licensing policy since they could get adequate grain from the Baltic States after the breakdown of the Continental System.

- 1065 **Clark, Victor S.**, "The Influence of Manufactures upon Political Sentiment in the United States from 1820 to 1860," XXII, October 1916, 58-64.

Mr. Clark traces the effects of the expansion of manufactures upon American political sentiment. The new manufacturing interests after 1815 aimed to strengthen the national government because it could protect domestic industries. It also aroused an opposition which though based ostensibly upon constitutional theories was actually due to the discordant economic interests of the different parts of the country. Manufacturing, for a time, by increasing the economic diversity of the country, added to sectional discord, but as the most highly co-operative form of production and the form most dependent upon an efficient government for its growth and welfare, it tended to produce closer relations within the state. The rise of manufactures in the United States fostered a public sentiment in favor of a strong central government and in favor of increasing public intervention in the economic activities of the individual.

- 1066 **Goodwin, Frank P.**, "The Rise of Manufactures in the Miami Country," XII, July 1907, 761-775.

Manufacturing was encouraged in the West by the desire to avoid the expense and delay of long distance commerce under primitive means of transportation, and by the desire to furnish a home market for farm products. The industrial growth of the Miami country—the region in Ohio drained by the great Miami and the Little Miami Rivers—from the beginning of that area's settlement to 1817 is selected to illustrate the development of manufactures in the primitive conditions of the West.

- 1067 **Babcock, Kendric C.**, "The Scandinavian Element in American Population," XVI, January 1911, 300-310.

A tribute is here paid to the Scandinavian element in America. Mr. Babcock briefly reviews the causes for Scandinavian migration to America, their settlement in the northwest and their place in the social structure of the country.

- 1068 **Stone, Alfred H.**, "Some Problems of Southern Economic History," XIII, July 1908, 779-797.

In this study of the relative influence of the institution of slavery, the Negro, the white man, and physiography upon the economic life in the Southern states, Mr. Stone questions the view that slavery was responsible for everything in Southern economic life and development which differed from the economic life and development of the non-slaveholding states.

- 1069 **Stone, Alfred Holt**, "The Cotton Factorage System of the Southern States," XX, April 1915, 557-565.

In this discussion of the function and place of the factor and the factorage system in the scheme of Southern colonial staple agriculture, the factor is depicted as the planter's merchant and banker with duties similar to those of his English progenitor in the West Indies. He furnished the planter with funds and acted as sales agent and as commission merchant in the purchase of plantation supplies. His importance increased with the development and growth of the cotton industry.

- 1070 **Rezneck, Samuel**, "The Depression of 1819-1822, a Social History," XXXIX, October 1933, 28-47.

As the result of the war of 1812, the mismanagement of the second United States Bank, and poor banking policies throughout the United States the country was thrown into a depression. Pauperism increased rapidly and relief centers had to be established in the large cities. Property values decreased rapidly while foreclosures seemed to be the order of the day. Permanent results of the depression were: intensification of class consciousness, and the establishment of savings banks.

- 1071 **Rezneck, Samuel**, "The Social History of An American Depression, 1837-1843," XL, July 1935, 662-687.

Economic losses totaled six billion dollars, but more important were the losses impossible to tabulate, as one writer pointed out: "Let every individual calculate for himself what he, personally, has lost, what chances have been sacrificed by him, what he might have done, and what he might have been, if the prosperity of the country had not been arrested." Both propertied class and the poor felt the pinch. Congress granted relief to distressed merchants; states drew up new constitutions. Wildcat banking was outlawed; and as a result, speculation diminished and the credit system was reorganized.

- 1072 **Stearns, Bertha-Monica**, "Reform Periodicals and Female Reformers, 1830-1860," XXXVII, July 1932, 678-699.

Before 1828, the year in which Frances Wright began to edit the *Free Enquirer*, little connection existed between female reformers and reform periodicals. Using that year to begin her account of such periodicals addressed to women and edited by them Bertha-Monica Stearns discusses the history and contents of the journals as individual efforts of moral reform agitating for temperance, for the anti-slavery cause, for women's right to work and vote, and for reform in women's dress.

- 1073 **McGrane, Reginald C.**, "Some Aspects of American State Debts in the Forties," XXXVIII, July 1933, 673-686.

Circumstances surrounding the origin of the American state debt controversies in the 1840's, motives that led the states to borrow and the European investors to purchase American bonds; the failure of Euro-

pean creditors and American debtors to understand each other; and the efforts made by these creditors to recover their funds—these are all problems considered in this study of American state debts.

- 1074 Harlow, Ralph Volney, "The Rise and Fall of the Kansas Aid Movement,"** XLI, October 1935, 1-25.

Significant aspects of the Kansas aid movement to "save" Kansas from becoming a slave state by means of organized emigration are discussed. After reviewing the organization and activity of such societies as the New England Emigrant Aid Society, the author concludes that these societies had practically nothing to do with making Kansas a free state; that the significant results of their work are not to be found in Kansas but in the East and South. They exerted profound effect on public opinion which was reflected in the newspapers of the North and South. The Kansas aid effort, in stirring up hate, may be regarded as one of the potent causes of the Civil War.

- 1075 Siebert, Wilbur H., "Light on the Underground Railroad,"** I, April 1896, 455-463.

The article discusses the various routes by which the slaves reached Canada (there is an appended map), analyzes the configuration of these routes, touches on the history of the "railroad," and finally attempts to ascertain the number of slaves that escaped by this method. The difficulties in obtaining information on the subject are stressed.

- 1076 Scroggs, William O., "William Walker and the Steamship Corporation in Nicaragua,"** X, July 1905, 792-811.

Walker in the 1850's, motivated by personal ambition, attempted to establish a military empire out of the weak Central American states. To bring Americans to Nicaragua as soldiers and colonists he needed ships and money; the Accessory Transit Company, a syndicate of New York and San Francisco capitalists, furnished both in order to further their own interests in Nicaragua. The present study relates the course of the intrigue between Walker, the government of Nicaragua, and the factions of the Accessory Transit Company resulting in the company's destruction and Walker's downfall.

- 1077 Fish, Carl Russell, "The Northern Railroads, April, 1861,"** XXII, July 1917, 778-793.

A study of the extent, the degree of integration in organization, the equipment and the governmental control of the Northern railroads at the opening of the Civil War.

- 1078 Cotterill, R. S., "The Louisville and Nashville Railroad, 1861-1865,"** XXIX, July 1924, 700-715.

Business acumen decided James Guthrie, president of the road, to cast his lot with the North. Although the road suffered many raids by the Southerners, Guthrie was able to make immense profits after the Federals had gained control of Kentucky and Tennessee. The need for soldiers and supplies kept the road going at full speed throughout the war. At the end of the war the road had increased in size, and was in better shape than ever. And Guthrie was invited to become Secretary of the Treasury.

- 1079 Ramsdell, Charles W., "The Confederate Government and the Railroads,"** XXII, July 1917, 794-810.

The author presents a history of the Southern railroads from 1861 to 1865 as an illustration of the South's backward industrial condition and its deep-rooted suspicion of every proposition which involved the extension of the general government's powers into a field which custom had reserved for private enterprise. Inability to solve the railroad problem is cited as one of the fundamental causes of the Confederacy's downfall.

- 1080 Fish, Carl R., "Social Relief in the Northwest During the Civil War," XXII, January 1917, 309-324.

At the outbreak of the Civil War, the need of caring for the dependents of those soldiers who had volunteered for service was recognized. States in all portions of the United States adopted various plans to provide financial relief. Taking Wisconsin as a center for his study of this problem, Mr. Fish compares its measures with those of Michigan, Ohio, Indiana and Illinois. Wisconsin handled the problem through central administration. Michigan did not provide for state relief but by the laws of May 10, 1861, and January 17, 1862, made it the duty of the board of supervision of each organized county to provide for adequate relief. Ohio left the relief work to the counties, but the state legislature early provided for funds by levying a state tax. Indiana made no state provision until March 4, 1865. Illinois as a state did nothing; counties without special authorization from the state voted money for relief. Private charity also aided to alleviate suffering. The recognition by the communities of the need was the product "not of economic theory nor of enlightened intelligence, but of the feeling and appreciation of its own necessities by a people really and inherently democratic."

- 1081 Roberts, A. Sellev, "The Federal Government and Confederate Cotton," XXXII, January 1927, 262-275.

The policy of the Union government regarding trade with the Confederacy in the Civil War was an inconsistent one. It enforced a rigorous blockade of the Southern sea-coast to bar Southern cotton from the world markets; it engaged in a more or less corrupt domestic trade in the same cotton smuggled across its own military lines. There was an excuse for this policy. Cotton was needed to keep Northern factories in operation; it was also needed to prevent French and English interference in the war. Yet Mr. Roberts in this study shows that this policy was a grave error of judgment on the part of the Federal government. Such trade undermined the morale of the Union troops, helped supply the Confederate army, and prolonged the war.

- 1082 Sellers, James L., "An Interpretation of the Civil War Finance," XXX, January 1925, 282-297.

This paper interprets the "relative efforts of the two warring sections" and "the social and economic conditions existing at the close of the war" through the medium of expenditures of the government, based on the conversion of the fluctuating, depreciated currency to its real gold value, in order more clearly to represent statistical data. "The per capita cost of the war becomes three times as great for Southerners as for Northerners, and the average per capita wealth was \$213, only, for the South, compared to \$419 for the North." The creditors of the South were ruined as the Confederacy collapsed, and the economic and social system was affected by the new agricultural regime.

IVD5. Notes and Suggestions

- 1083 Westermann, W. L., "Ephraim Beanland and Zenon of Caunus," XLVII, October 1941, 64-72.

A comparison.

- 1084 Hofstadter, Richard, "The Tariff Issue on the Eve of the Civil War," XLIV, October 1938, 50-55.

IVD5. Documents

- 1085 "Estimates of the Value of Slaves, 1815," XIX, July 1914, 813-838.

- 1086 "Washington in 1834; Letter of Robert C. Caldwell," XXVII, January 1922, 271-281.
- 1087 **Efroymsen, Clarence W.**, "An Austrian Diplomat in America, 1840," XLI, April 1936, 503-514.
Johann Georg Ritter von Hülsemann's account of America.
- 1088 **Foreman, Grant**, "John Howard Payne and the Cherokee Indians" (1940), XXXVII, July 1932, 723-730.
- 1089 **Bidwell, Percy W.**, "The New England Emigrant Aid Company and English Cotton Supply Associations: Letters of Frederick L. Olmsted, 1857," XXIII, October 1917, 114-119.
- 1090 **Pierce, Edward L.**, "Letters of Richard Cobden to Charles Sumner, 1862-1865," II, January 1897, 306-319.
Reveals English opinion of Civil War.

IVD5. Cross References

- 96 **Hansen, M. L.**, "The History of American Immigration as a Field for Research."
- 97 **Nute, Grace L.**, "The Papers of the American Fur Company: A Brief Estimate of Their Significance."
- 512 **Morehouse, Frances**, "The Irish Migration of the 'Forties."
- 522 **Klingberg, Frank J.**, "Harriet Beecher Stowe and Social Reform in England."
- 583 **Stephenson, George M.**, "The Background of the Beginnings of Swedish Immigration, 1850-1875."
- 906 **Sioussat, St. George L.**, "Some Phases of Tennessee Politics in the Jackson Period."
- 912 **Bretz, Julian P.**, "The Economic Background of the Liberty Party."
- 923 **Luthin, R. A.**, "Abraham Lincoln and the Tariff."
- 977 **Bogart, E. L.**, "Taxation of the Second Bank of the United States by Ohio."
- 1100 **Bonner, James C.**, "Profile of a Late Ante-Bellum Community."
- 1118 **Bidwell, Percy W.**, "The Agricultural Revolution in New England."
- 1122 **Haynes, George W.**, "The Causes of Know-Nothing Success in Massachusetts."
- 1133 **Sanborn, J. B.**, "Some Political Aspects of Homestead Legislation."
- 1134 **Gates, P. W.**, "The Homestead Law in an Incongruous Land System."
- And items 1046, 1110, and 1123.

6. Sectional History

a. The South

- 1091 **Dodd, William E.**, "The Place of Nathaniel Macon in Southern History," VII, July 1902, 663-675.

Macon's position in Southern history is equal to that of John Randolph. Representing the Southern agrarian, he staunchly supported state supremacy. He advocated slavery because it was the basis of Southern wealth and the tool to defeat the supremacy of free states.

- 1092 **Phillips, Ulrich B.**, "The Central Theme of Southern History," XXXIV, October 1928, 30-43.

The Southerner's consciousness of his function to preserve the South as a white man's country is regarded as the central theme of Southern history. This article, printed previous to the meeting of the American Historical Association at Indianapolis in 1928 formed a basis for discussion at one of the sessions.

- 1093 **Turner, Frederick J.**, "The South, 1820-1830," XI, April 1906, 559-573.

The South during 1820-1830 with its cotton culture and slavery illustrated the influence of economic interests upon political ideas. "The price of cotton was in these years a barometer of Southern prosperity and of Southern discontent." The Seaboard South experienced competition from the virgin soils of the developing Southwest and believed the protective tariff for the development of Northern manufactures the source of its distress.

- 1094 **Craven, Avery O.**, "The Agricultural Reformers of the Ante-Bellum South," XXXIII, January 1928, 302-314.

Agricultural reformers of the ante-bellum South were faced with the task "of introducing methods among those who tended the soil which would give profits without destroying fertility and which in regions where already the earth's fullness had been spent, would restore lands to fruitfulness." Problems of profits and restoration of badly depleted tobacco lands faced the Old South; problems of profits and the conservation of cotton and sugar lands being reduced by wasteful practices faced the Lower South. Reformers had to arouse a will to improve and to indicate the steps for such improvement. Outstanding in this activity were such reformers as John Taylor, James M. Garnett, Thomas Mann Randolph, Stephen McCormick, Fielding Lewis, John Skinner, Edmund Ruffin, James H. Hammond and others. Reform in the ante-bellum South was "confined largely to the production end of agriculture—a natural consequence of exploitive frontier beginnings."

- 1095 **Buck, Paul H.**, "The Poor Whites of the Ante-Bellum South," XXXI, October 1926, 41-54.

"The province of this paper is the life, attitude and social significance of the most wretched portion of the population." The poverty, ignorance, and shiftless outlook on life characteristic of this class were outgrowths of barren soils and the isolation of the pine flats and barrens of Georgia, Mississippi, and Carolina, Alabama, and Florida. The indifference of the poor whites and the stagnation of their capacities, together with the prejudices of the aristocracy, kept them out of industrial pursuits. Some experiments were made such as that in the town of Prattsville (1833) where the poor whites were employed in industry and proved their worth. Fundamentally the poor white's political actions would be guided by an interest to preserve the institution of slavery because of his class consciousness. His prejudices were expressed in terms of the slave and next

in democracy. These peculiarities were artfully made to strengthen political machines and aid the institution of slavery.

- 1096 **Sydnor, Charles S.**, "The Free Negro in Mississippi before the Civil War," XXXII, July 1927, 769-788.

In this study of the status of the free Negro in Mississippi before the Civil War, the author cites numerous laws to show the circumscribed condition of the free Negroes and the white person's attitude towards them. To the white person, the existence of a free Negro class operated as a reminder to the slaves of their own servile condition and suggested the possibility of a change from their state of bondage.

- 1097 **Phillips, Ulrich B.**, "Plantations with Slave Labor and Free," XXX, July 1925, 738-753.

Mr. Phillips, in this study of the plantation system, notes the similarities and differences existing between the plantation systems in the South and the ranches established in California, Kansas and Colorado. Heavy turnover of labor and lack of domesticity are suggested as factors which differentiated the Western regime from the past and present plantation systems established in the South.

- 1098 **White, Laura A.**, "The Fate of Calhoun's Sovereign Convention in South Carolina," XXXIV, July 1929, 757-771.

This is the "final chapter of the tale of the sovereign convention in South Carolina." South Carolina's legislature had voted to issue the call for a state convention in November, 1860. This convention assembled in December, 1860, to act as the sovereign people, voted the ordinance of secession, made necessary changes in the state government, ratified the Constitution of the Confederacy in May, 1861, and adjourned after voting to terminate its legal existence in January, 1862. Due to the confusion of war and lack of confidence in the government the Convention was called to meet again in December, 1861, and sought to bring order. It voted the creation of an executive council of five which took complete charge of the military organization of the state. Then came accusations that the "board of five governors" was destroying the liberties of the people and that either the council or the convention was guilty of usurpation. This aroused the old clash of opinion between the secessionists and nationalists over state sovereignty and the sovereign convention, and led to the abolition of the convention and the Council.

- 1099 **Stephenson, N. W.**, "Southern Nationalism in South Carolina in 1851," XXXVI, January 1931, 314-335.

When and why the inhabitants of the Southern states formed the idea that they constituted a "South" and when and why they formed the idea that they were a part of a social unit larger than one state but smaller than the Union is "still a nut to crack." "Southern Nationalism" was not as old as the Union, but older than the Civil War. It is possible to place its origin not later than 1848 for in that year, in South Carolina, occurred an attempt to break away from national parties. With this the author introduces his study of the conflict over secession in South Carolina between Rhett and the separatists who were resolved to secede but not to wait for the rest of the South, and the Cheves-Butler-Barnwell co-operationist group who favored secession of the South as a unit. In South Carolina both groups favored secession; their split was upon the recognition of a whole South as having become a single community—upon Southern nationalism.

- 1100 **Bonner, James C.**, "Profile of a Late Ante-Bellum Community," XLIX, July 1944, 663-680.

Mr. Bonner draws a careful sketch of the social character of Hancock County, Georgia, in the decade 1850-1860. Facts were obtained largely from the census reports of 1850 and 1860. The analysis indicated that land- and slave-owning aristocracy comprised the upper class of about

one-third of the white population of the county; another third had land but no slaves; the lowest third had neither. The decade studied saw a trend toward increasing landlessness, and tenants even became farm laborers as the large holders took over more and more land.

- 1101 **Crenshaw, Ollinger**, "The Knights of the Golden Circle," XLVII, October 1941, 23-50.

The article deals with the career of George Bickley as the expression of the expansionist desires of the South towards Mexico and as a focus of the rapid sectional spirit preceding the Civil War. His varied career culminated in the founding of the Knights of the Golden Circle, (1859-60) a semi-secret military organization designed for the purpose of invading Mexico. Establishing slave states there, and thus shifting the balance of political power in the United States to the South. When this scheme failed, Bickley used the K. G. C. as a propaganda force fomenting sectional hatred. His intrigues were always designed for self-aggrandizement, and as such represented the individualistic, adventuring pre-Civil War American.

- 1102 **Ambler, Charles H.**, "The Cleavage Between Eastern and Western Virginia," XV, July 1910, 762-780.

Geographical differences in Virginia east of the Blue Ridge mountains and west of the Blue Ridge provoked marked social, political and economic differences. The Eastern region developed an economy built around the plantation and the slave while the Western region developed one which centered in the industrial and social life of the small farm. Such difference produced a cleavage when western Virginia was forced to choose between the State and the Union.

- 1103 **Garrison, George P.**, "The First Stage of the Movement for the Annexation of Texas," X, October 1904, 72-96.

A factual account depicting the first phase (1836-1839) of Texas' struggle to enter the Union. Many factors which complicated annexation are discussed. Slavery was not considered responsible for the success of the movement, but rather a force which complicated and almost prevented it.

- 1104 **Eaton, Clement**, "Censorship of the Southern Mails," XLVIII, January 1943, 266-280.

Censorship is an instrument by which a society protects its vital interests in times of danger. Such protection was utilized by the ante-bellum South in the censorship of mail from the Northern states. Such censorship could only be justified on the ground that the safety of the people was the supreme law. Fear of servile insurrection was one motive which led to such steps. The Southern censorship of the mail revealed the difficulty of suppressing pernicious propaganda without simultaneously destroying the literature of protest and criticism. It afforded a case history in the operation of censorship. Those who advocated toleration for themselves were not necessarily tolerant. One minority group—the Northern Abolitionists—demanded the right to use the United States mails to protest against slavery; a conflicting minority group—the Southerners—contended that their safety required restriction of the mails. Southern censorship depended on the unity of public sentiment within the South and on co-operation from the federal postal authorities. No attempt was made by the authorities to discriminate between incendiary publications and lawful literature of reform. Intolerance, then and in subsequent cases, was a defense mechanism against a danger. Ordinary human nature seems to be incapable of practicing tolerance except in indifferent matters.

- 1105 **Stephenson, N. W.**, "The Question of Arming the Slaves," XVIII, January 1913, 295-308.

The last important issue of the Confederacy was the mode of reinforcing Lee, and the question of arming the slaves was considered.

Agitation slowly forced legislative action in both Confederate and state governments. Davis first asked for 40,000 slave laborers, in November, 1864, but popular opinion was largely against Negro military mobilization, as was Davis. Three questions were raised: should the slaves be armed, should they be promised emancipation in return, and should the federal or state governments take the initiative? Two bills were initiated almost simultaneously. The House bill, which evaded the question of emancipation and left the mobilization to the states, was passed on March 9 after much delay. The influence of General Lee, especially in Virginia, resulted in the passage there of a bill providing for mobilization of slaves without emancipation on March 6, 1865. Before Lee's program could be affected, or the Negro troops mobilized, or bargaining completed with Europe, the Confederacy fell.

- 1106 Rhodes, James Ford, "Who Burned Columbia?" VII, April 1902, 485-493.

In determining who burned Columbia, South Carolina, in 1865, neither General Sherman's account or Wade Hampton's account has been accepted as history. The "true relation" presented is derived from contemporary accounts of six Federal officers; the report of Major Chambliss of the Confederate army; "The Sack and Destruction of Columbia," a series of articles in the *Columbia Phoenix* written by William Gilmore Simms; and a letter written from Charlotte to the *Richmond Whig* by F. G. de F. The "true relation" concludes that many groups contributed to the destruction of the city.

IVD6a. Notes and Suggestions

- 1107 Sydnor, C. S., "Life Span of Mississippi Slaves," XXXV, April 1930, 566-574.
- 1108 Robinson, William M., Jr., "Prohibition in the Confederacy," XXXVII, October 1931, 50-58.

IVD6a. Documents

- 1109 "Letters on the Nullification Movement in South Carolina, 1830-1834," pt. I, VI, July 1901, 736-765; pt. II, VII, October 1901, 92-119.
- 1110 "Autobiography of Omar ibn Said, Slave in North Carolina, 1831," XXX, July 1925, 787-795.
- 1111 Hicks, Granville, "Dr. Channing and the Creole Case, 1841," XXXVII, April 1932, 516-525.
- 1112 Bonham, Milledge L., Jr., "A Carolina Democrat on Party Prospects in 1844," XLII, October 1936, 79-82.
- 1113 "Despatch from the British Consul at Charleston to Lord John Russell, 1860," XVIII, July 1913, 783-787.
- 1114 Hart, A. B., "Letters to Secretary Chase from the South, 1861," IV, January 1899, 331-347.
- 1115 Walmsley, J. E., "The Change of Secession Sentiment in Virginia in 1861," XXXI, October 1925, 82-101.
- 1116 Jameson, J. F., "The London Expenditures of the Confederate Secret Service," XXXV, July 1930, 811-824.

- 1117 "Georgia and the Confederacy, 1865," I, October 1895, 97-102.
Letters: General Howell Cobb to Secretary Seddon, General Howell Cobb to President Davis, Senator B. H. Hill to President Davis.

IVD6a. Cross References

- 77 Irvine, Dallas D., "The Fate of Confederate Archives."
907 Barker, Eugene C., "President Jackson and the Texas Revolution."
914 Stephenson, N. W., "A Theory of Jefferson Davis."
917 Caldwell, J. W., "John Bell of Tennessee, A Chapter of Political History."
919 Cole, A. C., "Lincoln's Election An Immediate Menace to Slavery in the States?"
920 Hamilton, J. G. de R., "Lincoln's Election An Immediate Menace to Slavery in the States?"
976 Dodd, William E., "Chief Justice Marshall and Virginia, 1813-1821."
984 Moore, Frederick W., "Representation in the National Congress from the Seceding States, 1861-1865" (2 parts).
990 McCaleb, Walter F., "The Organization of the Post-Office Department of the Confederacy."
997 Cox, Isaac Joslin, "The American Intervention in West Florida."
1010 Adams, C. F., "The Trent Affair."
1011 Sears, L. M., "A Confederate Diplomat at the Court of Napoleon III."
1042 Rhodes, James Ford, "Sherman's March to the Sea."
1068 Stone, Alfred H., "Some Problems of Southern Economic History."
1069 Stone, Alfred H., "The Cotton Factorage System of the Southern States."
1075 Siebert, Wilbur H., "Light on the Underground Railroad."
1079 Ramsdell, Charles W., "The Confederate Government and the Railroads."
1081 Roberts, A. S., "The Federal Government and Confederate Cotton."
1082 Sellers, James L., "An Interpretation of the Civil War Finance."

And items 875, 948, 965, 967, 1019, 1031, 1054, and 1085.

b. The East and Middle Atlantic

- 1118 **Bidwell, Percy W.**, "The Agricultural Revolution in New England," XXVI, July 1921, 683-702.

In his study of the agricultural revolution occurring in New England 1810-1860 Professor Bidwell shows how the development of New England manufactures and the rise of factory villages created a need for home markets and a change from self-sufficient farming to farming for a profit. He traces the effects of western competition upon this new commercial agriculture and the effects of both upon the social life of the New England farmer.

- 1119 **Darling, A. B.**, "Jacksonian Democracy in Massachusetts 1824-1848," XXIX, January 1924, 271-287.

Although Massachusetts was considered a conservative stronghold in our early history the Democrats began to make headway during the years 1824-1848. During this period Jacksonian Democracy was essentially a rural party, although the small merchants, bankers, Cape Cod fisherman and the Irish immigrants swelled their vote. Their policies were the opposite of the conservative Whigs. The Bank question, the Masonic trouble, the tariff issue, election reforms, social legislation, and opposition to railroad building were the issues that swelled the Democratic vote. Division over the slavery question split the party and later led to the formation of the Republican party.

- 1120 **Trimble, William**, "Diverging Tendencies in New York Democracy in the Period of the Locofocos," XXIV, April 1919, 396-421.

This study, collated from a more extensive one on the history of the Locofoco party, is an analysis of the conservative and radical expressions of democracy arising from the expanding industrialism of the 1830's as reflected in New York's political parties in 1837.

- 1121 **Mowry, Arthur M.**, "Tammany Hall and the Dorr Rebellion," III, January 1898, 292-301.

The Dorr Rebellion in May and June of 1842 was a significant incident in Rhode Island's struggle for a more popular government. Governor Dorr and the People's party, in spite of opposition from men supporting the charter government, and opposition also from the national government, maintained that a majority of the governed had the right at any time to change their government. Dorr's opposition manifested in the rebellion is explained as the result of his belief that "the Democracy of the United States was anxious for the opportunity to rush to the aid of 'the people' of Rhode Island." He seemed to believe that the United States government could have been frightened into withholding its armed support. Such ideas were due to the cordial welcome and the pledge of support he had received from Tammany Hall upon his arrival in New York, May, 1842, after he had failed to obtain President Tyler's sympathy in Washington.

- 1122 **Haynes, George W.**, "The Causes of Know-Nothing Success in Massachusetts," III, October 1897, 67-82.

Overwhelming success for the Know-Nothing party characterized the elections of 1854 in Massachusetts. Political unrest arising from unstable social conditions was its cause. To a conservative native community, the rapid increase of Irish Catholic immigration, and change in its industrial economy were perplexing problems. The native population feared the new Irish immigrant as a voter and was prejudiced against him as a wage earner. Such "race-antipathy and craft-jealousy" contributed in great measure to increase the ranks of Know-Nothingism whose members were pledged to defend American institutions from the dangers to which

they deemed them exposed in the hands of men of alien birth and of Roman Catholic belief.

IVD6b. Notes and Suggestions

- 1123 Darling, A. B., "The Workingmen's Party in Massachusetts, 1833-1934," XXIX, October 1923, 81-86.
- 1124 Adams, J. T., "Disfranchisement of Negroes in New England," XXX, April 1925, 543-547.

IVD6b. Documents

- 1125 Parker, David W., "Secret Reports of John Howe, 1808," pt. I, XVII, October 1911, 70-102; pt. II, XVII, January 1912, 332-354.

Reports on attitudes in the eastern United States toward war with Britain sent to Sir George Prevost, lieut.-gov. at Halifax.

IVD6b. Cross References

- 904 Stephenson, N. W., "Calhoun, 1812, and After."
- 972 Walton, Joseph S., "Nominating Conventions in Pennsylvania."

c. The West

- 1126 Pratt, Julius W., "Fur Trade Strategy and the American Left-Flank in the War of 1812," XL, January 1935, 246-273.

The American left flank throughout the War of 1812 extended from Ohio to St. Louis and in places to the Missouri River. To the British and Canadians the war was for the control of the vast fur trade of the Northwest. Had the terms of peace been determined by achievements in this area the entire Mississippi Valley north of the Rock River would have gone to the British, for their military success was pronounced.

- 1127 Turner, Frederick J., "The Colonization of the West 1820-1830," XI, January 1906, 303-327.

This is a study of the southern and northern frontiersman's migration to the West. Transportation, agricultural development and the acquisition of land were considered as influential factors in the development of a western society in which equality and individualism flourished.

- 1128 Bourne, Edward G., "The Legend of Marcus Whitman," VI, January 1901, 276-300.

Mr. Bourne, by critically analyzing the evidence describing Marcus Whitman's activity during 1842-1843, does not depreciate Whitman's place in Oregon's history, but places it in a new perspective. Whitman's journey to the East rested on a decision of the American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions to discontinue the southern branch of the mission. He sought to reverse that decision and to return to Oregon with a few Christian families. It was not his aim to save Oregon for the United States by petitioning in the capital for an American immigration to the territory.

- 1129 **Marshall, Thomas Maitland**, "The Miners' Laws of Colorado," XXV, April 1920, 426-439.

Using original sources which he located in county clerks' offices of several Colorado counties in 1918, Mr. Marshall attempts to refute erroneous impressions created by earlier writers such as Hollister. From the records of Gregory Diggings district in Gilpin County, he describes the evolutionary development of the government of a district. A comparison of the codes of several districts reveals little uniformity. He concludes that no one code can be cited as typical.

- 1130 **Fleming, Walter L.**, "The Buford Expedition to Kansas," VI, October 1900, 38-48.

To help prevent the Territory of Kansas from entering the Union as a free state Major Jefferson Buford in 1855 organized a group of settlers to colonize the territory. His scheme was representative of the efforts of pro-slavery emigrant aid societies which were forced to encourage settlement. The plan was a failure financially and politically.

- 1131 **Isely, W. H.**, "The Sharps Rifle Episode in Kansas History," XII, April 1907, 546-566.

A discussion of the sources and distribution of Sharps rifles and other arms furnished to Kansas emigrants during the free state struggle. Most prominent of those involved in supplying arms to free-state forces in Kansas during 1855-1856 was the New England Emigrant Aid Company. It had been established to check pro-slavery colonization which had been stimulated by the application of squatter-sovereignty right to Kansas-Nebraska country in 1854. The company had induced colonists to go to Kansas. Consequently it felt responsible for their defense and protection.

- 1132 **Dodd, William E.**, "The Fight for the Northwest, 1860," XVI, July 1911, 774-788.

Mr. Dodd's discussion depicts the struggle between North and South to influence the presidential election of 1860 in the Northwest. To win the election, Lincoln and the Republicans, under the pressure of property and religious influences, were forced to modify their idealistic principles of equality which they fostered in 1856-1858. They won the contest on a narrow margin of votes cast by immigrants who had settled in the contested regions of the Northwest.

- 1133 **Sanborn, John Bell**, "Some Political Aspects of Homestead Legislation," VI, October 1900, 19-37.

The movement for distribution of public lands beginning after 1820 culminated in the Homestead Law of 1862. National issues were involved in the struggle for its adoption. Free distribution of land met opposition from many sides. Public land was a source of national revenue. The advocates of state-sovereignty and strict construction feared it would increase federal power. The Know-Nothing visualized it as an inducement for foreigners to come to the United States imbued with a spirit of subservience to the Roman Catholic faith. To the slave-holder, it meant settlement of the land by the people of the North. Fluctuating interests contributed to the long course of experiment and development.

- 1134 **Gates, Paul Wallace**, "The Homestead Law in an Incongruous Land System," XLI, July 1936, 652-681.

The purpose of this study is to show that the Homestead Law of 1862 did not change the land system in the United States; its adoption rather superimposed upon the old system a principle which was out of harmony with it. Regarding the influence of the Homestead Law, Mr. Gates concludes it did not end the auction system or cash sales, that speculation and land monopolization continued after its adoption, and that actual homesteading was generally confined to the less desirable lands distant from railroad lands.

IVD6c. Notes and Suggestions

- 1135 Hunter, Milton R., "The Mormons and the Colorado River," XLIV, April 1939, 549-555.
- 1136 Larson, Laurence M., "The Norwegian Element in the Northwest," XL, October 1934, 69-81.

IVD6c. Documents

- 1137 Douglas, Walter B., "Captain Nathaniel Pryor," XXIV, January 1919, 253-265.
Records concerning Pryor's Indian trading activities subsequent to his participation in "The Lewis and Clark expedition."
- 1138 Shepherd, W. R., "A Letter of General James Wilkinson, 1806," IX, April 1904, 533-537.
- 1139 Bolton, H. E., "Papers of Zebulon M. Pike, 1806-1807" XIII, July 1908, 798-827.
Some of the papers confiscated while Pike was held captive in Chihuahua. The originals are preserved in Mexico City, in the archive of the Secretariat of Foreign Relations.
- 1140 Ford, W. C., "Two Letters from George Farragut to Andrew Jackson, 1815-1816," IX, July 1904, 766-767.
- 1141 Judson, K. B., "Salt Lake City in 1847," XX, July 1915, 833-835.
- 1142 "A Journey from New York to San Francisco in 1850," IX, October 1903, 104-115.
From diary of David Knapp Pangborn.
- 1143 Thwaites, R. G., "A Letter of Admiral Farragut, 1853," IX, April 1904, 537-541.

IVD6c. Cross References

- 88 Adams, C. F., "The Sifted Grain and the Grain-Sifters."
- 904 Stephenson, N. W., "Calhoun, 1812, and After."
- 905 Abernathy, Thomas P., "Andrew Jackson and the Rise of Southwestern Democracy."
- 916 Spring, L. W., "The Career of a Kansas Politician."
- 922 Carter, J. D., "Abraham Lincoln and the California Patronage."
- 983 Paxson, Frederic L., "The Territory of Colorado."
- 1004 Schafer, Joseph, "The British Attitude Toward the Oregon Question, 1815-1846."
- 1005 Merk, Frederick, "British Government Propaganda and the Oregon Treaty."
- 1006 Merk, Frederick, "The Oregon Pioneers and the Boundary."
- 1007 Adams, E. D., "English Interest in the Annexation of California."

- 1063 Hulbert, Archer B., "Western Ship Building."
- 1066 Goodwin, F. P., "The Rise of Manufacturers in the Miami Country."
- 1074 Harlow, Ralph V., "The Rise and Fall of the Kansas Aid Movement."
- 1077 Fish, Carl R., "Social Relief in the Northwest During the Civil War."
- 1097 Phillips, U. B., "Plantations with Slave Labor and Free."
And items 526, 527, 1111, and 1238.

7. Intellectual, Cultural, Religious History

- 1144 Schmidt, George P., "Intellectual Crosscurrents in American Colleges, 1825-1855," XLII, October 1936, 46-67.

Up to the Civil War the traditional college with a prescribed curriculum and a system of rules governing the student's behavior remained much as it had been at the beginning of the nineteenth century. But the prevailing cultural opinion which regarded a rigid classical and philosophical curriculum as the proper one did not go unchallenged. Experimentation in founding colleges and in the reorganization of their activities began anew after 1825. Dispute arose over the function of colleges in America. The demand for reform was not inspired by the frontier. There was no unified West forcing progress upon a reluctant and Europeanized East. The demands, grounded on the obvious needs of a changing society, came from individuals in the East, South and West. Programs for reform were not primarily the result of their author's American experience. They were derived from a familiarity with European conditions. In 1854, the conservative forces still remained in control; grades of achievement were noticeable but three decades of agitation for reform had apparently been of little avail.

IVD7. Notes and Suggestions

- 1145 Steiner, B. C., "Jackson and The Missionaries," XXIX, July 1924, 722-723.
- 1146 Pratt, J. W., "The Origin of 'Manifest Destiny,'" XXXII, July 1927, 795-798.
- 1147 Smith, Paul S., "First Use of the Term 'Copperhead,'" XXXII, July 1927, 799-800.
- 1148 Fish, C. R., "Lincoln and Catholicism," XXIX, July 1924, 723-724.

IVD7. Documents

- 1149 "Jefferson to William Short on Mr. and Mrs. Merry, 1804," XXXIII, July 1928, 832-835.
- 1150 Spiller, Robert E., "Fenimore Cooper's Defense of Slave-owning America," XXXV, April 1930, 575-582.

IVD7. Cross References

- 90 **Dodd, William E.**, "Profitable Fields of Investigation in American History 1815-1860."
- 572 **Earle, Edward M.**, "American Interest in the Greek Cause, 1821-1827."
- 1128 **Bourne, E. G.**, "The Legend of Marcus Whitman."
- 1225 **Ellsworth, Clayton**, "The American Churches and the Mexican War."

E. The United States Since 1865**1. General and Political History**

- 1151 **Nichols, Roy Franklin**, "United States vs. Jefferson Davis, 1865-1869," XXXI, January 1926, 266-284.

Investigation by the War Department had convinced Secretary Stanton and Joseph Holt that Lincoln's murder had been committed with the approval of Jefferson Davis. Reliable evidence to substantiate the charge was never found, yet the accusation was never withdrawn. President Johnson rather conceived the idea of punishing him for treason. The author in this study presents a history of the attempt made to try Davis for treason in order that the highest courts might officially declare secession to be treason.

- 1152 **Dunning, William A.**, "More Light on Andrew Johnson," XI, April 1906, 574-594.

Mr. Dunning's additional light on Andrew Johnson resulting from his examination of the Johnson Papers concerns the authorship of Johnson's messages and his relationship with Jeremiah S. Black. He establishes George Bancroft as the author of Johnson's first annual message and attributes other messages to Black.

- 1153 **Beale, Howard K.**, "The Tariff and Reconstruction," XXXV, January 1930, 276-294.

Tariff was among the economic questions which influenced Reconstruction. Before the Civil War Eastern manufactures existed under a revenue tariff in which a united South and West refused to grant "protection" to industry. Southern secession in 1861 made possible the passage of a protective measure. When the Civil War ended protectionists realized that the newly acquired protection would end unless the Southerners could be kept out of the Congress. The Northeast radicals also realized that a return of the South to Congress meant a union of South and West and that by such union the growing business interests would be deprived of the protection they needed. Mr. Beale analyzes this problem and shows how the Eastern radicals managed to insure the permanence of a protective system while they kept the South subjected to military rule.

- 1154 **Nichols, Jeannette Paddock**, "The Politics and Personalities of Silver Repeal in the United States Senate," XLI, October 1935, 26-53.

Personalities and political motives are emphasized in this account of the Congressional struggle in 1893 over the repeal of the "Sherman Silver Purchase Act of 1890."

- 1155 **Diamond, William**, "Urban and Rural Voting in 1896," XLVI, January 1941, 281-305.

By careful examination of voting results, the author finds that there was a difference in the proportions of votes cast for McKinley and Bryan in city and rural areas. Generally, Bryan did better among the rural population; in the more highly industrialized states, he received a greater proportion of votes from city dwellers than from rural inhabitants. On the other hand, in agricultural states, the farmers were more radical than the urbanites. The author reaches the conclusion that the radicalism of city and countryside corresponded roughly to the strength of the Populist party in each state.

- 1156 **Wish, Harvey**, "Altgeld and the Progressive Tradition," XLVI, July 1941, 813-831.

The author points to the liberal legislation which John Altgeld put through in an era of conservatism and a government of corrupt practices. His pro-labor, anti-monopolistic stand, his scientific penal ideas, gave rise to a new progressive tradition in the United States. As governor of Illinois, he was the most liberal administrator the state had ever had.

- 1157 **Ickes, Harold L.**, "Who Killed the Progressive Party?" XLVI, January 1941, 306-337.

The author, who was a member of the Progressive party national committee, accuses George W. Perkins, a former Morgan partner, of destroying the Progressive party by a policy of personal and autocratic rule. As chairman of the national committee he directed policy between 1913-16 for the purpose of uniting the Progressives with the Republicans in the campaign of 1916. Mr. Ickes believes that Perkins' personal contact with Roosevelt influenced the latter to reject the party's nomination even after Perkins' policy had been rejected by the national convention.

- 1157a **Link, Arthur S.**, "The Baltimore Convention of 1912," L, July 1945, 691-713.

An analysis of the balloting in the dramatic Democratic convention, explaining particularly how Bryan forced the early clear split between conservatives and liberals, and also how it was not Bryan who swung the ultimate decision to Wilson. After the fourteenth ballot Bryan played an "inconsequential" role. Ironically it was the politicians and bosses, Wilson's bitterest opponents, who eventually made possible his nomination.

IVE1. Documents

- 1158 **Sioussat, St. George L.**, "Notes of Colonel W. G. Moore, Private Secretary to President Johnson, 1866-1868," XIX, October 1913, 98-132.
- 1158a **Link, Arthur S.**, "A Letter from One of Wilson's Managers," L, July 1945, 768-775.

Thomas W. Gregory, in this letter to Col. E. M. House, describes some of the activities of the Wilson group in the Baltimore convention, particularly his own early achievement of agreements which (if adhered to) would have prevented Clark's nomination at any time by tying up more than one-third of the delegates unalterably against him.

IVE1. Cross References

- 100 **Beale, H. K.**, "On Rewriting Reconstruction History."
- 915 **Van Deusen, Glyndon G.**, "Thurlow Weed: A Character Study."

2. Political Institutions (Legal, Constitutional and Institutional History)

- 1159 **Becker, Carl**, "The Unit Rule in National Nominating Conventions," V, October 1899, 64-82.

That which distinguished the national convention of the Democratic and Republican parties was their attitude toward the unit rule which allowed the majority of a state delegation to cast the entire vote of the state. The national convention of the Democratic party allowed states to use the unit rule. The state instructed its delegation as it chose. The national convention of the Republican party never allowed states to use the unit rule. It overruled the authority of the state by not permitting the state to instruct its delegation except in conformity with its own rules.

- 1160 **McLaughlin, Andrew C.**, "The Court, the Corporation, and Conkling," XLVI, October 1940, 45-63.

Mr. McLaughlin criticizes Justice Black's interpretation of history in connection with the Fourteenth Amendment and the Slaughter House cases of 1873, but he supports Black's main contention that the word "person" in the due process clause was not intended to protect corporations. No contemporary evidence exists to prove such an intent, and not even Conkling claimed such a direct intent. The author examines the "conspiracy" theory of the Amendment, and emphasizes the later influence (on the corporation phrase) of Justice Stephen J. Field and Judge Thomas M. Cooley.

- 1161 **Paxson, Frederic L.**, "The American War Government, 1917-1918," XXVI, October 1920, 54-76.

In eighteen months after entering the war, the organization of the American war government was complete. The attempt at a complete transition from the doctrine of individualism and free competition to one of centralized national co-operation is here reviewed. The evolution and accomplishments of the various war agencies and evidences of the transition are noted.

IVE2. Notes and Suggestions

- 1162 **Smith, Bryant**, "Neglected Evidence on an Old Controversy—Bronson *v.* Rodes as a Forecast of Hepburn *v.* Griswold," XXXIV, April 1929, 532-535.

- 1163 **McClendon, R. Earl**, "Status of the Ex-Confederate States as Seen in the Readmission of United States Senators," XLI, July 1936, 703-709.

IVE2. Cross References

- 1169 **Blake, Nelson M.**, "The Olney-Pauncefote Treaty of 1897."
1210 **Barrows, David P.**, "The Governor General of the Philippines Under Spain and the United States."
1211 **Robertson, James A.**, "The Philippines Since the Inauguration of the Philippine Assembly."

3. Diplomatic History

- 1164 **Dennett, Tyler**, "Seward's Far Eastern Policy," XXVIII, October 1922, 45-62.

To further American interests in Eastern Asia and sustain the "open door" policy in the Far East, Seward advocated co-operative action with the European powers. In this matter of co-operation, Seward was bold, was willing to play politics on an international scale and was willing to pay the price for it. He valued the potential commercial opportunities in the East. Mr. Dennett's survey of Seward's eight years in the Department of State traces the consequences of such policy in China, Japan and Korea. A charge of un-American actions was the price Seward paid for such co-operations with powers having different ideals and purposes but he served to advance American interests in the East.

- 1165 **Biggerstaff, Knight**, "The Official Chinese Attitude Toward the Burlingame Mission," XLI, July 1936, 682-701.

The Burlingame Mission—the first Chinese diplomatic mission to Europe and the United States in 1867—is here depicted as the earliest voluntary move on the part of the Chinese government to deal with Western nations in accord with practices generally accepted in the West. It marked a distinct departure from the traditional attitude of the Chinese government toward other countries.

- 1166 **Golder, Frank A.**, "The Purchase of Alaska," XXV, April 1920, 411-25.

Russia sold Alaska to the United States as a valueless and burdensome territory. The background of the sale and its completion is discussed. The biggest obstacle in the negotiations was congressional dislike of Seward and his policies.

- 1167 **Morrow, Rising Lake**, "The Negotiation of the Anglo-American Treaty of 1870," XXXIX, July 1934, 663-681.

The treaty on naturalization of 1870 removed a great source of friction between the United States and England. It represented a complete surrender to the American position and removed the most dangerous weapon of the American Fenians, whose actions in America and in Ireland had brought the question to the foreground.

- 1168 **Blake, Nelson M.**, "Background of Cleveland's Venezuelan Policy," XLVII, January 1942, 259-277.

An understanding of the conditions surrounding Cleveland's Venezuelan policy in 1895 is essential to interpret his action. Cleveland challenged England on the Venezuelan boundary dispute only when he became personally convinced that it was his duty to enforce the commitment made in the Monroe Doctrine. Such action was greatly influenced by the prevailing spirit of the time—the agitation for a firm foreign policy. It was evidence of the rising tide of aggressive American nationalism.

- 1169 **Blake, Nelson M.**, "The Olney-Pauncefote Treaty of 1897," L, January 1945, 228-243.

Mr. Blake here writes a timely reminder on the subject of international arbitration, reviewing the history of the ill-fated Olney-Pauncefote Treaty and warning of the pitfalls to be avoided. He describes the efforts of men like Cremer, Lord Playfair, Carnegie and Gresham, who laid the foundations, and the attempts of organizations to push the treaty. He continues by showing the development of opposition in newspapers, public opinion and Senate through the influence of silver, Irish and anti-British elements, and the failure of the ratification by three votes. He reminds the reader of the parallel between 1897 and 1919 and the dangers of the two-thirds rule.

- 1170 **Bailey, Thomas A.**, "Dewey and the Germans at Manila Bay," XLV, October 1939, 59-81.

This re-examination of the German-American friction at Manila Bay in 1898 emphasizes the actual happenings after Commodore Dewey found it necessary to blockade the bay. The friction apparently grew out of a misunderstanding of German actions and motives. The unusual strength of the German fleet and Diedrichs insistence upon what he conceived to be his right during a blockade were factors which caused the Americans to question German motives.

- 1171 **Buchanan, Russell**, "Theodore Roosevelt and American Neutrality, 1914-1917," XLIII, July 1938, 775-790.

Basing his study chiefly on Roosevelt's letters to personal friends and upon his public speeches, the author traces the development of Theodore Roosevelt's opinions on World War I. "Roosevelt believed that America's course lay with the allies . . . he attempted to steer the American people into this course, . . . by a direct appeal based on a demand for justice to Belgium and retaliation for injury done to Americans on the high seas, and . . . by advice given allied leaders to render more effective their propaganda in this country."

IVE3. Notes and Suggestions

- 1172 **Howe, George F.**, "The Clayton-Bulwer Treaty," XLII, April 1937, 484-490.

An unofficial interpretation of article VIII in 1869.

- 1173 **Malone, C. B.**, "The First Remission of the Boxer Indemnity," XXXII, October 1936, 64-68.

- 1174 **Bailey, Thomas A.**, "World War Analogues of the Trent Affair," XXXVIII, January 1933, 286-290.

IVE3. Documents

- 1175 **Diamond, William**, "American Sectionalism and World Organization by Frederick Jackson Turner," XLVII, April 1942, 545-551.

Manuscript of November, 1918, which depicts what seemed to be Turner's earliest thought on subject.

IVE3. Cross References

- 613 **Shippee, Lester B.**, "Germany and the Spanish-American War,"
- 620 **Brand, Carl F.**, "The Reaction of British Labor to the Policies of President Wilson During the World War,"
- 621 **Brand, Carl F.**, "The Attitude of British Labor Toward President Wilson During the Peace Conference,"
- 1001 **Hart, A. B.**, "The Monroe Doctrine and the Doctrine of Permanent Interest,"
- And item 523.

4. Military and Naval History

- 1176 McLean, Ross H., "Troop Movements on the American Railroads During the Great War," XXVI, April 1921, 464-488.

This study discusses the five phases of the movements of troops: the movement of the regular army from the border to various camps, the movement of the National Guard to its training camps; the movement of the men of the national army from their homes to the cantonments; intercamp movements; and the movement of organizations from the camps to ports of embarkation. The study includes examples of the problems which George Hodges, manager of the Troop Movement Section of the United States Railroad Administration, encountered in his work.

- 1177 Paxson, Frederic L., "The Great Demobilization," XLIV, January 1939, 237-251.

In this presidential address delivered before the American Historical Association Mr. Paxson looks back to the canceled meeting of the A. H. A. of 1918. He reviews events from that time through 1939 using the war and the unorganized demobilization as the causation of events of the next two decades in America. He concludes that a war cannot bring a "peace" because of the far-reaching effects of demobilization.

IVE4. Notes and Suggestions

- 1178 Holbrook, Franklin F., "The Collection of State War Service Records," XXV, October 1919, 72-78.
- 1179 Taylor, J. R. M., "The History of the War of 1917," XXIV, July 1919, 637-640.

IVE4. Documents

- 1180 Colby, Elbridge, "Pearl Harbor, 1873," XXX, April 1925, 560-565.

IVE4. Cross References

- 1170 Bailey, Thomas A., "Dewey and the Germans at Manila Bay." And item 1047.

5. Social and Economic History

- 1181 Du Bois, W. E. Burghardt, "Reconstruction and Its Benefits," XV, July 1910, 781-799.

Democratic government, free public schools, and social legislation are described as the chief contributions which the Negro government gave to the South during the period of Reconstruction. To judge such government, social conditions must be taken into consideration. Former political corruption in the South, the presence of dishonest Northern politicians, the poverty of the Negro, were all factors working to undermine the Negro's attempt to establish a new society. Difficulties encountered during Reconstruction must not be attributed alone to the Negro and his enfranchisement.

- 1182 Rhodes, James F., "The Molly Maguires in the Anthracite Region of Pennsylvania," XV, April 1910, 547-561.

In this discussion of the Molly Maguires organization during the years 1865-1876, Mr. Rhodes describes the lawless practices which a labor group in the anthracite region adopted in order to gain their personal ends in the mines, and the operations against them under the leadership of Franklin B. Gowen. Gowen, through the aid of a Pinkerton detective, James McParlan, and the courts, exposed the Maguires and broke up the criminal organization.

- 1183 Shannon, Fred A., "The Homestead Act and the Labor Surplus," XLI, July 1936, 637-651.

Mr. Shannon's study offers evidence to refute the theory that free cheap public lands have been of measurable consequence as an alleviator of labor conditions. To demonstrate their inaccuracy he examines the following assumptions: that free land while available furnished relief from economic pressure in the industrial centers; that free land drained off the dissatisfied and restless elements from the Eastern cities; and that the disappearance of free land in 1890 wrought by the Homestead Act of 1862 has been the cause of labor troubles since 1890.

- 1184 Lindsey, Almont, "Paternalism and the Pullman Strike," XLIV, January 1939, 272-289.

An account of the paternalistic "Pullman Experiment" from the establishment of the town in 1880 to 1907 when it ceased to exist as a "model" town and as a separate community in Chicago.

- 1185 Destler, Chester McA., "Wealth Against Commonwealth, 1894 and 1944," L, October 1944, 49-72.

Essentially this article is an attack upon the damning treatment of Henry Demarest Lloyd in Allan Nevins' *John D. Rockefeller*. Lloyd, author of *Wealth Against Commonwealth* (1895), is portrayed by Destler as a keen analyst of vicious social trends, and a careful scholar. His object was to study the "pathological aspects of corporate capitalism," and "to secure a hearing for a new social philosophy that would supply the theoretical basis for effective democratic action in opposition to prevailing economic trends." Elaborate checking of sources and conclusions indicates Lloyd's general accuracy and good judgment. He served as a "catalytic and directive influence of first importance," and strongly affected Louis D. Brandeis, Florence Kelley, Jane Addams and many others. (In a communication to the editor, April, 1945, 676-689, Mr. Nevins vigorously defends himself and his view of Lloyd as an historian. Both the article and the reply make interesting reading.)

IVE5. Notes and Suggestions

- 1186 Nichols, Roy F., "Navassa: A Forgotten Acquisition," XXXVIII, April 1933, 505-510.

IVE5. Documents

- 1187 Young, G. S., "A Record Concerning Mennonite Immigration, 1873," XXIX, April 1924, 518-522.

- 1188 Howe, George Frederick, "President Hayes's Notes of Four Cabinet Meetings," XXXVII, January 1932, 286-289.

Regarding labor disturbances in 1877.

- 1189 Volwiler, A. T., "Tariff Strategy and Propaganda in the United States, 1887-1888," XXXVI, October 1930, 76-96.

IVE5. Cross References

- 583 Stephenson, George M., "The Background of the Beginnings of Swedish Immigration, 1850-1875."
- 1067 Babcock, K. C., "The Scandinavian Element in American Population."
- 1134 Gates, P. W., "The Homestead Law in an Incongruous Land System."
- 1153 Beale, Howard K., "The Tariff and Reconstruction."
- 1155 Diamond, William, "Urban and Rural Voting in 1896."
- 1194 Paxson, F. L., "The Cow Country."

6. Sectional History**a. The South**

- 1190 Connor, R. D. W., "The Rehabilitation of a Rural Commonwealth," XXXVI, October 1930, 44-62.

In this address at the North Carolina meeting of the American Historical Association in 1929 Mr. Connor states that life of the South since 1876 has been chiefly influenced by its heritages from the Civil War and its aftermath. It has suffered from the heritages of failure, poverty, provincialism and the race question. He traces North Carolina's struggle to escape from these heritages and summarizes what has been accomplished to that end in his day. He concludes by saying the South has shaken itself free from the heritages of war and Reconstruction. Its self-confidence has been restored, its political stability assured and its prosperity regained. Its social problems are on the way to being solved.

- 1191 Pearson, C. C., "The Readjuster Movement in Virginia," XXI, July 1916, 734-749.

The Readjuster party was the culmination of the democratic movement originating in conditions of economic distress (the panic of 1877 being paramount), social narrowness and disregard of minority classes, and political disregard of conditions. One of the most important reasons for the existence of the party, the state debt, was settled by shifting part of the losses of war to unwilling creditors and part to the "sovereign" state. The Negro was treated as an integral part of the people. The party's decisive endorsement of a wider and more efficient social activity on the part of the state, especially public education, and regulation and taxation of common carriers, was farsighted. Economic improvement and the adjustment of classes had already begun since the period of Reconstruction, but the Readjuster movement was a great contributing factor.

IVE6a. Notes and Suggestions

- 1192 Fish, C. R., "The German Indemnity and the South," XXVI, April 1921, 489-490.

IVE6a. Documents

- 1193 "Letter of William Henry Trescot on Reconstruction in South Carolina, 1867," XV, April 1910, 574-582.

IVE6a. Cross References

- 1151 Nichols, Roy F., "United States vs. Jefferson Davis, 1865-1869."
1153 Beale, Howard K., "The Tariff and Reconstruction."

b. The West

- 1194 Paxson, Frederic L., "The Cow Country," XXII, October 1916, 65-82.

In his account of the "cow country" or that region stretching from the Texas rivers to Manitoba, Mr. Paxson develops the history of the cattle business on the open range. Beginning with the experience of two drivers who in 1866 accidentally discovered the value of the grass covered plains for wintering cattle, Mr. Paxson describes range life, the process of enclosure, the meat-packing industry and the competition for profits between cattlemen, packers, and the railroads.

IVE6b. Cross References

- 1129 Marshall, Thomas M., "The Miners' Laws of Colorado."
1183 Shannon, Fred A., "The Homestead Act and the Labor Surplus."
And item 1176.

7. Intellectual, Cultural, Religious History**IVE7. Notes and Suggestions**

- 1195 Learned, H. B., "The Thompson Readership: A Forgotten Episode of Academic History," XXIII, April 1918, 603-608.
1196 Riegel, Robert E., "Standard Time in the United States," XXXIII, October 1927, 84-89.
1197 J. F. J., "The American Council of Learned Societies," XXV, April 1920, 440-446.

IVE7. Cross References

- 7 Becker, Carl, "The Education of Henry Adams."
9 Jameson, J. F., "The American Historical Review, 1895-1920."
13 Andrews, C. M., "These Forty Years."

8. Expansion Overseas**IVE8. Notes and Suggestions**

- 1197a Koht, Halvdan, "The Origin of Seward's Plan to Purchase the Danish West Indies," L, July 1945, 762-767.

- 1198 Spaulding, Thomas M., "Propaganda or Legend," XXXIX, April 1934, 485-488.

A study of a memorandum entitled "War Department, Office of the Assistant Secretary" which reflects McKinley's policy regarding Cuba.

- 1199 Bailey, Thomas A., "The United States and Hawaii during the Spanish-American War," XXXVI, April 1931, 552-560.

IVE8. Documents

- 1200 Miller, Hunter, "Russian Opinion on the Cession of Alaska," XLVIII, April 1943, 521-531.
- 1201 Dennett, Tyler, "American Choices in the Far East in 1882," XXX, October 1924, 84-108.
- 1202 Le Roy, J. A., "Apolinario Mabini on the Failure of the Filipino Revolution," XI, July 1906, 843-861.

IVE8. Cross References

- 1166 Golder, Frank A., "The Purchase of Alaska."
- 1210 Barrows, David P., "The Governor General of the Philippines Under Spain and the United States."
- 1211 Robertson, James A., "The Philippines Since the Inauguration of the Philippine Assembly."
- And items 635, 944, and 1186.

V. THE FAR EAST

- 1203 MacDonell, A. A., "The Early History of Caste," XIX, January 1914, 230-244.

This paper, read at the International Congress of Historical Studies in 1913 at London, traces the historical developments of the caste system back to its source from evidence furnished by the literature of India during three periods: 500 B.C. to 500 A.D. in which a caste system similar to the present one existed; the pre-Buddhistic period, 1000 to 500 B.C., in which the caste system had already existed and which included the literature of the later Vedas and the Brāhmanas; and the earliest period, that of the Rigveda, 1300 to 1000 B.C., when the caste system was unknown but the elements out of which it developed were evidently in existence.

- 1204 McDowell, Robert H., "The Indo-Parthian Frontier," XLIV, July 1939, 781-801.

A study in political geography. "The purpose of this article is to employ the literary and numismatic evidence to define . . . the successive boundaries of the political units which occupied the area east of Parthia and between the Hindu Kush Mountains and the Indus valley from the second century B.C. to the second century A.D.

- 1205 Asakawa, K., "The Origin of the Feudal Land Tenure in Japan," XX, October 1914, 1-23.

A study of the origin of the Japanese feudal land tenure solely from its institutional side. To depict the evolution of feudal tenure following

the failure of the Reform of 645-701 (an adaptation of state socialism to combat a tendency towards decentralization), an analysis was made of the origin and growth of private landed estates called *shō*, and the rise of the warrior classes which gradually gained control of the *shō*.

- 1206 **Rockhill, William W.**, "Diplomatic Missions to the Court of China," pt. I, II, April 1897, 427-442; pt. II, II, July 1897, 627-643.

Accounts of a series of diplomatic missions to China from Russia, Holland, Portugal, Great Britain, the United States, and other countries have been selected to describe chronologically the struggle to reconcile the differences between Western and Oriental diplomatic custom and courtesy. The most frequent cause of friction—the Chinese request for the courtesy of *kotow*—was questioned as early as the eighth century when an envoy from the Calif Walid, demanded exemption from bowing prostrate before the emperor. In spite of subsequent protests made by the representatives of European and other powers, the practice continued until 1873 when the emperor Tung-Chih assumed personal control of the empire and received the ministers of Great Britain, the United States, Russia, France, and the Netherlands without demanding the time-honored *kotow*.

- 1207 **Treat, Payson J.**, "The Mikado's Ratification of the European Treaties," XXIII, April 1918, 531-549.

Mr. Treat regards the Mikado's sanction of the treaties of 1858-1861 in November, 1865, as an event vital to the understanding of Japanese foreign relations from 1858 to 1865. With the sanction, foreign affairs were divorced from domestic politics; expulsion and extermination of foreigners was no longer a patriotic duty. Japanese were free to enjoy the advantages of Western culture. The treaty powers were freed from a dependence on the Shogunate; they were spared from being involved in a civil war between the supporters of the Mikado and those of the Shogun.

- 1208 **Williams, Frederick W.**, "The Chinese Immigrant in Further Asia," V, April 1900, 503-517.

The article treats of Spanish, French, Dutch, and English rule over the Chinese of the Philippines, Cochin, Java and Hong Kong, indicates the wisdom of the British policy and the stupidity of the other nations' administration, and offers suggestions for colonial administration of Chinese in Asia.

- 1209 **A British Officer**, "The Literature of the Russo-Japanese War," pt. I, XVI, April 1911, 508-528; pt. II, XVI, July 1911, 736-750.

An account of the activities of press correspondents, neutral professional eye-witnesses, and the records of the actual combatants with a view toward selection of records on a basis of historical importance and accuracy.

- 1210 **Barrows, David P.**, "The Governor-General of the Philippines under Spain and the United States," XXI, January 1916, 288-311.

Dr. Barrow's history of the office of Governor-General of the Philippines traces its development from the time of its creation by Philip II in 1567 through the establishment of the Philippine Commission in 1900.

- 1211 **Robertson, James A.**, "The Philippines Since the Inauguration of the Philippine Assembly," XXII, July 1917, 811-830.

"This paper is not intended to be an exhaustive treatise of events in the Philippine Islands since the convening of the first Philippine legislature in 1907, but aims to offer only a few comments and suggestions." After introducing a short review of the Filipinos as a people, Dr. Robertson's "comments and suggestions" are concerned with conditions in the

Philippine Islands from October, 1907, to October, 1916. He discusses governmental machinery after the establishment of the Philippine Assembly, government finance, the land question, the agricultural problem, and the development of education.

V. Notes and Suggestions

- 1212 Peake, Cyrus H., "Documents Available for Research on the Modern History of China," XXXVIII, October 1932, 61-70.

V. Documents

- 1213 Gaskill, Gussie Esther, "A Chinese Official's Experiences during the First Opium War," XXXIX, October 1933, 78-81.
1214 Tsiang, T. F., "China after the Victory of Taku, June 25, 1859," XXXV, October 1929, 79-84.

V. Cross References

- 11 Latourette, K. S., "Chinese Historical Studies During the Past Seven Years."
15 Hummel, A. W., "What Chinese Historians Are Doing in Their Own History."
17 Latourette, K. S., "Chinese Historical Studies During the Past Nine Years."
21 Borton, Hugh, "A Survey of Japanese Historiography."
74 Swingle, W. T., "Chinese Historical Sources."
622 Stephens, H. Morse, "The Administrative History of the British Dependencies in the Further East."
1164 Dennett, Tyler, "Seward's Far Eastern Policy."
1165 Biggerstaff, Knight, "The Official Chinese Attitude Toward The Burlingame Mission."

And items 525, 569, 1173, and 1201.

VI. HISPANIC AMERICA

- 1215 Bolton, Herbert E., "The Mission as a Frontier Institution in the Spanish American Colonies," XXIII, October 1917, 42-61.

The political and social function of the mission and its importance as a pioneering agency in the extension and development of the Spanish colonial empire are emphasized. Missions and missionaries served to promote and extend the frontier and helped to civilize it. To convert, civilize and finally exploit the Indian, the Spanish had established the *encomienda* system under which the land and people were distributed among secular holders as trustees or *encomendero* who held them in trust or in *encomienda*. To check the evils of exploitation and at the same time to realize the ideal of conversion, protection and civilization, the place of the *encomendero* was largely taken by the missionary and that of the

encomienda by the mission. These missionaries explored the frontiers, promoted their occupation and defended them. They taught the Indians Spanish, the rudiments of industrial crafts, of agriculture and of self-government. The mission was a force "which made for the preservation of the Indians, as opposed to their destruction, so characteristic of the Anglo-American frontier." Mr. Bolton's point of view embraces all of New Spain—all of the Spanish colonies—but particularly the northern provinces from Sinaloa to Texas, from Florida to California.

- 1216 Phillips, Ulrich B., "A Jamaica Slave Plantation," XIX, April 1914, 543-558.

This account, covering the years 1792-1796, of the organization and life of Worthy Park plantation, St. John's parish, Jamaica, is derived from the "great plantation book" produced under the supervision of Rose Price Esquire, the manager of the plantation. The account includes details of the size of a typical estate, of the organization and control of its slaves and methods of the production of sugar-cane and its by-products during that time.

- 1217 Barbour, Violet, "Privateers and Pirates of the West Indies," XVI, April 1911, 529-566.

Privateering aimed chiefly against the Spanish in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries is here described as a matter of practical politics and as a method for personal enrichment. Letters of marque or reprisal legally authorized the seizure of ships and goods. Jamaica after its conquest by the British under Cromwell became the base of operations for English privateers during these centuries.

- 1218 Cox, Isaac Joslin, "General Wilkinson and His Later Intrigues with the Spaniards," XIX, July 1914, 794-812.

Wilkinson's machinations between 1804 and 1809 are here reviewed and interpreted. His procuring twelve thousand dollars from the Spanish in exchange for "Reflections" regarding the future of Spanish America and the expansion of the United States is the prime example of his technique. Three interviews between Wilkinson and Don Vizente Folch, Governor of West Florida, constitute the bulk of this paper.

- 1219 Lea, Henry C., "Hidalgo and Morelos," IV, July 1899, 636-651.

The article discusses the personal careers of these priests who were branded heretics by the Mexican Inquisition and who were the leaders in the uprising of 1810. It is precisely because they were revolutionaries that the Inquisition, attempting to support the monarchical principle, condemned them.

- 1220 Smith, Justin H., "La República de Río Grande," XXV, July 1920, 660-675.

Beginning his discussion of the movement for independence in north-eastern Mexico with the proclamation of 1838 announcing the North Mexican Republic, renamed the "República de Río Grande" in 1839, Mr. Smith traces the Mexican effort to obtain American co-operation. He concludes that "La República de Río Grande" was an interesting idea but not a practical possibility. The movement had some promise of success; the Mexican central government had provided sufficient ground for rebellion; the sentiment of the people favored the idea; the probable sympathy of the United States afforded encouragement; the presence of American troops appeared to offer a large measure of assurance. Its failure was partially due to a lack of qualified leaders.

- 1221 Smith, Justin H., "The Mexican Recognition of Texas," XVI, October 1910, 36-55.

The revolt of Texas and the realization that that territory could not be held, brought to Mexico a fourfold dilemma: how to dispose of Texas? Turn it over to England, France, United States, or the Texans? The

problem was aggravated by feelings of national honor. The steps the United States took toward annexation caused England and France to exert pressure on Mexico to recognize Texas' autonomy. Such machinations failing, the Mexican Congress and people accepted the annexation proposal of the United States (1845).

- 1222 **Foster, John W.**, "The Contest for the Laws of Reform in Mexico," XV, April 1910, 526-546.

The contest for the Laws of Reform in Mexico was a long struggle for the separation of church and state. The author has traced that struggle from the first step by the Reform or Liberal movement in 1833, an effort to abolish compulsory payment of church tithes and generally to restrict the power of the clergy, up to the proclamation in 1859 of the Laws of Reform which provided for complete separation of church and state, the suggestion of the monasteries and religious communities, and the confiscation of church property. Their enforced abstention from political affairs, the author concludes, produced a more efficient clergy in ecclesiastic affairs in Mexico and influenced the action of other Latin American countries.

- 1223 **Spell, Lota M.**, "The Anglo-Saxon Press in Mexico, 1846-1848," XXXVIII, October 1932, 20-31.

The Anglo-Saxon press in Mexico during the Mexican War served several purposes. It was a means to satisfy the soldiers' and civilians' demand for news; it furnished them with the orders of the military commanders. Through editorials in English and Spanish, it influenced the public, especially Mexican, mind. Though many of the papers were transient, they established important journalistic traditions.

- 1224 **Bourne, Edward G.**, "The United States and Mexico, 1847-1848," V, April 1900, 491-502.

The diplomacy leading to the annexation of Mexican territory, including the Trist Mission, the controversies in the Polk cabinet, and the negotiation of the Guadalupe-Hidalgo Treaty is discussed. Acquisition of all Mexico was prevented by Whig superiority in the House, Polk's opposition, and realization that complete annexation would precipitate a slavery crisis.

- 1225 **Ellsworth, Clayton**, "The American Churches and the Mexican War," XLV, January 1940, 301-326.

American churches were divided in their sentiments towards the Mexican War. Roman Catholics, Methodists and Southern Baptists favored the war. Wholehearted opposition came from the Congregationalists, Unitarians and Quakers. Other denominations were divided or noncommittal in their attitudes. Recognized tradition, authoritarian organization, moderate size, concentration of membership and influence of a dominant personality were factors which tended to uniformity of action within a church group. Desire to gain public approval, evangelical emphasis, anti-Catholic feeling, a tradition permitting a "just" war, substantial stakes in territory adjoining Mexico were factors within a church denomination conducive to the support of the war. A belief in the injustice and inexpediency of the Mexican War, a belief in absolute pacifism, and concentration of a denomination's membership in areas distant from the war were factors making for opposition to it.

- 1226 **Smith, Justin H.**, "American Rule in Mexico," XXIII, January 1918, 287-302.

To depict American military rule in those portions of Mexico occupied in the course of the war of 1846-1848, the author discusses the direct relations of United States commanding officers to the Mexican people, their relations through Mexican officials, their relations through the behavior of their troops, and their relations to the Mexican civil adminis-

tration. He concludes that the history of American rule in Mexico was distinctly creditable to the United States.

- 1227 **Reeves, Jesse S.**, "The Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo," X, January 1905, 309-324.

The history of the negotiations necessary to formulate the Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo in 1848 have been traced in the light of correspondence preserved in the archives of the Department of State and the diary of James K. Polk.

- 1228 **Wilson, Howard L.**, "President Buchanan's Proposed Intervention in Mexico," V, July 1900, 687-701.

Revolution in Mexico endangered the property and life of American citizens. To protect such interests President Buchanan and the government were forced to decide whether the United States should intervene. Buchanan in 1858, after a controversy had arisen, between the Mexican government and the American minister John Forsyth, over a tax on capital whether owned by Mexicans or foreigners, resolved to adopt a more active policy towards the Mexican government. He advised Congress to take the necessary steps to assume a temporary protectorate over a portion of the country. That failing, he instructed the United States minister to negotiate a "transit and commerce treaty" with the constitutional government of Mexico under Benito Juárez. The treaty indirectly provided for intervention and, if ratified by the Senate would have given the United States a controlling influence over the political and commercial affairs of Mexico.

- 1229 **Burr, George Lincoln**, "The Search for the Venezuela-Guiana Boundary," IV, April 1899, 470-477.

The author tells the story of the tremendous research engaged in by the historians of the American Commission, during President Cleveland's administration, who, were responsible for determining the true boundary between British Guiana and Venezuela. Libraries of Spain, Holland, and the United States were thoroughly explored for any available evidence relating to the boundary dispute.

- 1230 **Burr, George Lincoln**, "The Guiana Boundary," VI, October 1900, 49-64.

Mr. Burr calls this article "A Postscript to the Work of the American Commission." Drawing upon the research done by President Cleveland's Guiana-Venezuela Boundary Commission, Mr. Burr relates newly found evidence on the doings and relations of Spaniards and Dutch in Guiana in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. This evidence was used in bringing the British-Venezuelan conflict to a close.

VI. Notes and Suggestions

- 1231 **Spell, Lota**, "The First Philanthropic Organization in America," XXXII, April 1927, 546-549.

- 1232 **Curti, M. E.**, "Pacifist Propaganda and the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo," XXXIII, April 1928, 596-598.

VI. Documents

- 1233 **Wright, Irene A.**, "The Commencement of the Cane Sugar Industry in America, 1519-1538 (1563)," XXI, July 1916, 755-780.

- 1234 **Aiton, Arthur S.**, "Coronado's Muster Roll," XLIV, April 1939, 556-570.

- 1235 "The River Plate Voyages, 1798-1800," XXIII, July 1918, 816-826.
- 1236 "Miranda and the British Admiralty, 1804-1806," VI, April 1901, 508-530.
- 1237 Sparks, E. E., "Diary and Letters of Henry Ingersoll, Prisoner at Carthage, 1806-1809," III, July 1898, 674-702.
- 1238 "An Interview of Governor Folch with General Wilkinson, 1807," X, July 1905, 832-840.
- 1239 West, Eliz. H., "Diary of José Bernardo Gutiérrez de Lara, 1811-1812," pt. I, XXXIV, October 1928, 55-77; pt. II, XXXIV, January 1929, 281-294.
- 1240 "Santiago, and the Freeing of Spanish America," IV, January 1899, 323-328.
- 1241 "Protocols of Conferences of Representatives of the Allied Powers respecting Spanish America, 1824-1825," XXII, April 1917, 595-616.
- 1242 "A Letter from Alexander von Humboldt, 1845," VII, July 1902, 704-706.
On Isthmian canal, etc.
- 1243 "Project of Latin-American Confederation, 1856," XII, October 1906, 94-103.

VI. Cross References

- 494 Aydelotte, Frank, "Elizabethan Seamen in Mexico."
- 589 Reinsch, Paul S., "French Experience with Representative Government in the West Indies."
- 592 Perkins, Dexter, "Russia and the Spanish Colonies, 1817-1818."
- 593 Goebel, Dorothy Burne, "British Trade to the Spanish Colonies, 1796-1823."
- 712 Bell, Herbert C., "The West India Trade Before the American Revolution."
- 999 Ford, Worthington C., "John Quincy Adams and the Monroe Doctrine" (2 parts).
- 1001 Hart, Albert B., "The Monroe Doctrine and the Doctrine of Permanent Interest."
- 1002 Perkins, Dexter, "Europe, Spanish America and the Monroe Doctrine."
- 1008 Rives, George L., "Mexican Diplomacy on the Eve of the War with the United States."
- 1009 Jones, Henry L., "The Black Warrior Affair."
- 1076 Scroggs, William O., "William Walker and the Steamship Corporation in Nicaragua."

- 1103 Garrison, George P., "The First Stage of the Movement for the Annexation of Texas."

- 1168 Blake, Nelson M., "Background of Cleveland's Venezuelan Policy."

And items 478, 507, 631, 637, 879, 894, 898, 1017, and 1138.

VII. MISCELLANEOUS

- 1244 Gras, N. S. B., "The Development of Metropolitan Economy in Europe and America," XXVII, July 1922, 695-708.

Mr. Gras discusses three questions—whether national economy had any real validity as a unit in production; whether metropolitan economy should replace it; and what evidence existed concerning metropolitan development in European and American history. He concludes "that metropolitan economy should be substituted for national economy as the latest stage in general economic development."

- 1245 Pirenne, Henri, "The Stages in the Social History of Capitalism," XIX, April 1914, 494-515.

To present his hypothesis that in each period of economic history there existed a distinct and separate class of capitalists—holders of capital—which did not originate from the class that preceded it, Mr. Pirenne briefly characterizes the nature of the capitalist from the beginning of the Middle Ages to the twentieth century. When unable to adapt themselves to new conditions, the capitalists of one period withdraw from the struggle and become an aristocracy. They are succeeded by a group of new intelligent, enterprising men. "The growth of capitalism is not a movement proceeding along a straight line, but has been marked, rather by a series of separate impulses not forming continuations one of another, but interrupted by crises."

- 1246 Reeves, Jesse S., "Two Conceptions of the Freedom of the Seas," XXII, April 1917, 535-543.

Grotius' "Mare Liberum," and Selden's "Mare Clausum" marked the beginning of arguments regarding the freedom of the seas. Mr. Reeves here brings that argument down to World War I. He finds that the British control of the seas had meant much for its freedom, while the German use of the submarine had been a curse to such freedom. Read in 1917, on the eve of America's entrance into the war, this paper is significantly pro-British.

- 1247 Corbett, Julian, "The Colonel and His Command," II, October 1896, 1-11.

The article discusses the etymology of the word "colonel," the military origin of the rank itself, and the transition of the colonel's military status from a leading staff-member to the commander of a regiment. Much attention is given to the origin of the body of troops that the colonel leads.

- 1248 Jusserand, J. J., "The School for Ambassadors," XXVII, April 1922, 426-464.

Mr. Jusserand's presidential address delivered before the American Historical Association in 1921 is a discussion of his profession from the fifteenth through the eighteenth centuries. Materials are derived from contemporary manuals written to teach the ambassador his duties.

VII. Notes and Suggestions

- 1249 Adams, James Truslow, "On the Term 'British Empire,'" XXVII, April 1922, 485-489.
- 1250 "The Arrest of Professors Fredericq and Pirenne," XXV, April 1920, 446-447.

VII. Documents

- 1251 Stock, Leo Francis, "Some Bryce-Jameson Correspondence," L, January 1945, 261-298.

VII. Cross References

- 52 Haskins, C. H., "European History and American Scholarship."
- 333 Magoun, Francis P., Jr., "Scottish Popular Football 1424-1815."
- And items 313 and 1192.

VIII. LEGAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE HISTORY

See sections IVB2, IVC2, IVD2, IVE2, and

- 55 Randall, J. G., "The Interrelation of Social and Constitutional History."
- 92 Cross, A. L., "Legal Materials As Sources for the Study of Modern English History."
- 191 Westermann, W. L., "The Ptolemies and the Welfare of Their Subjects."
- 193 Olmstead, A. T., "Land Tenure in the Ancient Orient."
- 198 Westermann, W. L., "Between Slavery and Freedom."
- 204 Ferguson, W. S., "Legalized Absolutism En Route From Greece to Rome."
- 217 Boak, A. E. R., "The Extraordinary Commands from 80 to 48 B.C.: A Study in the Origins of the Principate."
- 224 Adams, G. B., "Anglo-Saxon Feudalism."
- 226 Lapsley, G. T., "Cornage and Drengage."
- 229 Adams, G. B., "Henry I's Writ Regarding the Local Courts."
- 230 Neilson, N., "The Early Pattern of the Common Law."
- 231 Cannon, H. L., "The Character and Antecedents of the Charter of Liberties of Henry I."
- 232 Haskins, C. H., "The Government of Normandy Under Henry II" (2 parts).
- 233 Orpen, G. H., "The Effects of Norman Rule in Ireland."

- 234 **Thompson, Faith**, "Parliamentary Confirmations of the Great Charter."
- 235 **White, A. B.**, "Was There a 'Common Council' Before Parliament?"
- 236 **Baldwin, J. F.**, "Early Records of the King's Council."
- 237 **Adams, G. B.**, "The Descendants of the Curia Regis."
- 238 **Adams, G. B.**, "The Origin of the English Constitution" (2 parts).
- 239 **Adams, G. B.**, "The Critical Period of English Constitutional History."
- 240 **Strayer, J. R.**, "The Statute of York and the Community of the Realm."
- 244 **White, A. B.**, "The First Concentration of Juries: The Writ of July 21, 1213."
- 245 **White, A. B.**, "Some Early Instances of Concentration of Representation in England."
- 249 **Putnam, B. H.**, "Maximum Wage-Laws for Priests After the Black Death 1348-1381."
- 253 **Plucknett, F. T.**, "The Case of the Miscreant Cardinal."
- 269 **Haskins, C. H.**, "Normandy Under William the Conqueror."
- 270 **Haskins, C. H.**, "The Early Norman Jury."
- 271 **Dow, Earle W.**, "Some French Communes in the Light of Their Charters."
- 273 **Stephenson, Carl**, "The French Commune and the English Borough."
- 276 **Seeliger, G.**, "The State and Seigniorial Authority in Early German History."
- 280 **Schwill, Ferdinand**, "The Podesta of Siena."
- 281 **Wolfson, A. M.**, "The Ballot and Other Forms of Voting in the Italian Communes."
- 287 **Larson, L. M.**, "The Household of the Norwegian Kings in the Thirteenth Century."
- 304 **Stephenson, Carl**, "The Origin and Significance of Feudalism."
- 305 **Stephenson, Carl**, "Feudalism and Its Antecedents in England."
- 306 **Krey, A. C.**, "The International State of the Middle Ages: Some Reasons for Its Failure."
- 308 **Lapsley, G. T.**, "The Origin of Property in Land."
- 309 **Gross, C.**, "Mortmain in Medieval Boroughs."
- 312 **Carlyle, A. J.**, "The Sources of Medieval Political Theory and Its Connection with Medieval Politics."

- 314 Levy, Ernst, "Reflections on the First 'Reception' of Roman Law."
- 322 Rezneck, Samuel, "Constructive Treason by Words in the Fifteenth Century."
- 323 Baldwin, James F., "The Privy Council of the Time of Richard II."
- 324 Cheyney, Edward P., "The Court of Star Chamber."
- 325 Dunham, William Huse, Jr., "Wolsey's Rule of the King's Whole Council."
- 327 Colby, Charles W., "Chatham 1708-1908."
- 331 Turner, E. R., and Megaro, Gaudens, "The King's Closet in the Eighteenth Century."
- 334 Kirby, Chester, "The English Game Law System."
- 341 Baumer, Franklin L., "Christopher St. German."
- 344 Willson, David Harris, "The Earl of Salisbury and the 'Court' Party in Parliament 1604-1610."
- 345 Usher, Roland G., "Nicholas Fuller: A Forgotten Exponent of English Liberty."
- 346 Willson, David Harris, "Summoning and Dissolving Parliament 1603-1625."
- 347 Strateman, Catherine, "Expedicio Billarum Antiquitus."
- 348 Basye, Arthur Herbert, "The Secretary of State for the Colonies, 1768-1782."
- 352 Notestein, Wallace, "The Establishment of the Committee of Both Kingdoms."
- 359 Turner, Edward R., "Committees of Council and the Cabinet, 1660-1688."
- 362 Turner, Edward R., "The Development of the Cabinet, 1688-1760" (2 parts).
- 363 Cross, Arthur L., "The English Criminal Law and the Benefit of Clergy During the Eighteenth and Early Nineteenth Centuries."
- 366 Adams, George Burton, "Magna Carta and the Responsible Ministry."
- 367 McIlwain, C. H., "The English Common Law, Barrier Against Absolutism."
- 368 Clarke, Mary P., "The Board of Trade at Work."
- 369 Clark, Dora Mae, "The Office of Secretary to the Treasury in the Eighteenth Century."
- 411 Fay, Sidney B., "The Roman Law and the German Peasant."
- 416 Daenell, Ernst, "The Policy of the German Hanseatic League Respecting the Mercantile Marine."

- 427 Merriman, Roger B., "The Cortes of the Spanish Kingdoms in the Later Middle Ages."
 - 431 Haring, Charles H., "The Early Spanish Colonial Exchequer."
 - 474 Clark, Dora, "The American Board of Customs, 1767-1783."
 - 475 Lingelbach, Anna L., "The Inception of the British Board of Trade."
 - 495 Foster, Herbert D., "The Political Theories of Calvinists Before the Puritan Exodus to America."
 - 534 Bourne, Henry E., "Improvising a Government in Paris in July, 1789."
 - 540 Bourne, Henry E., "American Constitutional Precedents in the French National Assembly."
 - 547 Coffin, Victor, "A Preliminary Study of the Administrative Policy of Napoleon I."
 - 548 Coffin, Victor, "Censorship and Literature Under Napoleon I."
 - 562 Ford, Guy Stanton, "Boyen's Military Law."
 - 589 Reinsch, Paul S., "French Experience with Representative Government in the West Indies."
 - 622 Stephens, H. Morse, "The Administrative History of the British Dependencies in the Further East."
 - 887 Boyd, Carl E., "The County of Illinois."
 - 995 Farrand, Max, "The Commercial Privileges of the Treaty of 1803."
 - 1246 Reeves, Jesse S., "Two Conceptions of the Freedom of the Seas."
- And items 258, 262, 263, 265, 266, 380, 382, 384, 521, 524, 639, 655, 657, 776, 931, and 994.

IX. ECONOMIC HISTORY

See sections IVB5, IVC5, IVD5, IVE5, and

- 35 Lloyd, A. H., "History and Materialism."
- 45 Callender, G. S., "The Position of American Economic History."
- 93 Lingelbach, W. E., "Historical Investigation and the Commercial History of the Napoleonic Era."
- 129 Heaton, Herbert, "Recent Developments in Economic History."
- 192 Jasny, N., "Competition Among Grains in Classical Antiquity."
- 193 Olmstead, A. T., "Land Tenure in the Ancient Orient."

- 210 Rostovtzeff, M. I., "The Hellenistic World and Its Economic Development."
- 220 Frank, Tenney, "Mercantilism and Rome's Foreign Policy."
- 223 Westermann, W. L., "The Economic Bases of the Decline of Ancient Culture."
- 227 Neilson, N., "Boon-Services on the Estates of Ramsey Abbey."
- 247 Ferris, Eleanor, "The Financial Relations of the Knights Templars to the English Crown."
- 248 Perkins, Clarence, "The Wealth of the Knights Templars in England and the Disposition of It After Their Dissolution."
- 255 Richardson, H. G., "Business Training in Medieval Oxford."
- 285 Byrne, E. H., "Genoese Trade with Syria in the Twelfth Century."
- 308 Lapsley, G. T., "The Origin of Property in Land."
- 332 Bowden, W. H., "The English Manufacturers and the Commercial Treaty of 1786 with France."
- 353 McGovney, Dudley O., "The Navigation Acts as Applied to European Trade."
- 364 Turner, Edward R., "English Coal Industry in the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries."
- 365 Bowden, Witt, "The Influence of the Manufacturers on Some of the Early Policies of William Pitt."
- 368 Clarke, Mary P., "The Board of Trade at Work."
- 399 Thompson, James Westfall, "Some Economic Factors in the Revocation of the Edict of Nantes."
- 400 Nussbaum, Frederick L., "The Formation of the New East India Company of Calonne."
- 416 Daenell, Ernst, "The Policy of the German Hanseatic League Respecting the Mercantile Marine."
- 417 Lingelbach, William E., "The Merchant Adventurers at Hamburg."
- 436 Lane, Frederic Chapin, "Venetian Shipping During the Commercial Revolution."
- 466 Scott, W. R., "The Constitution and Finance of the Royal African Company of England from Its Foundation Till 1720."
- 468 Brown, Vera Lee, "The South Sea Company and Contraband Trade."
- 469 Andrews, Charles M., "Anglo-French Commercial Rivalry, 1700-1750: The Western Phase" (2 parts).
- 475 Lingelbach, Anna L., "The Inception of the British Board of Trade."

- 510 **Lingelbach, Anna L.**, "William Huskisson as President of the Board of Trade."
 - 512 **Morehouse, Frances**, "The Irish Migration of the 'Forties."
 - 515 **Brand, Carl F.**, "The Conversion of the British Trade-Unions to Political Action."
 - 533 **Hyslop, Beatrice**, "French Gild Opinion in 1789."
 - 564 **Usher, Abbott P.**, "Interpretations of Recent Economic Progress in Germany."
 - 570 **Greenfield, Kent Roberts**, "Economic Ideas and Facts in the Early Period of the Risorgimento (1815-1848)."
 - 593 **Goebel, Dorothy Burne**, "British Trade to the Spanish Colonies, 1796-1823."
 - 606 **Long, Dwight C.**, "The Austro-French Commercial Treaty of 1866."
 - 684 **Scisco, L. D.**, "The Plantation Type of Colony."
 - 686 **Root, Winfred T.**, "The Lords of Trade and Plantations, 1675-1696."
 - 791 **Harlow, Ralph V.**, "Aspects of Revolutionary Finance, 1775-1783."
 - 995 **Farrand, Max**, "The Commercial Privileges of the Treaty of 1803."
 - 1093 **Turner, Frederick J.**, "The South, 1820-1830."
 - 1094 **Craven, Avery D.**, "The Agricultural Reformers of the Antebellum South."
 - 1097 **Phillips, U. B.**, "Plantations with Slave Labor and Free."
 - 1126 **Pratt, Julius W.**, "Fur Trade Strategy and the American Left Flank in the War of 1812."
 - 1134 **Gates, P. W.**, "The Homestead Law in an Incongruous Land System."
 - 1244 **Gras, N. S. B.**, "The Development of Metropolitan Economy in Europe and America."
 - 1245 **Pirenne, Henri**, "The Stages in the Social History of Capitalism."
- And items 102, 103, 264, 374, 386, 397, 438, 501, 524, 527, 550, 552, 553, 554, 557, 624, 644, 645, 733, 742, 837, 838, 840, 868, 1083, and 1233.

X. RELIGIOUS AND CHURCH HISTORY

See sections IVA3, IVB7, IVC7, IVD7, IVE7, and

- 36 **Baldwin, Simeon E.**, "Religion Still the Key to History."
- 66 **Haskins, C. H.**, "The Vatican Archives."

- 199 Tambllyn, W. F., "British Druidism and the Roman War Policy."
- 222 Frank, Tenney, "Race Mixture in the Roman Empire."
- 243 Sweet, Alfred H., "The English Benedictines and Their Bishops in the Thirteenth Century."
- 246 Lunt, W. E., "The First Levy of Papal Annates."
- 249 Putnam, B. H., "Maximum Wage Laws for Priests After the Black Death 1348-1381."
- 250 Trenholme, N. M., "The Risings in the English Monastic Towns in 1327."
- 253 Plucknett, F. T., "The Case of the Miscreant Cardinal."
- 254 Cheyney, E. P., "The Recantations of the Early Lollards."
- 272 Haskins, C. H., "Robert le Bougre and the Beginnings of the Inquisition in Northern France" (2 parts).
- 278 Bark, William, "Theodoric vs. Boethius: Vindication and Apology."
- 282 Sullivan, James, "Marsiglio of Padua and William of Ockam" (2 parts).
- 283 Schevill, Ferdinand, "San Galgano: A Cistercian Abbey of the Middle Ages."
- 291 Duncalf, Frederic, "The Peasants' Crusade."
- 292 Munro, D. C., "The Children's Crusade."
- 298 Bittermann, H., "The Influence of Irish Monks on Merovingian Diocesan Organization."
- 306 Krey, A. C., "The International State of the Middle Ages: Some Reasons for Its Failure."
- 307 Emerton, E., "Altopascio—a Forgotten Order."
- 309 Gross, C., "Mortmain in Medieval Boroughs."
- 310 Pijper, F., "The Christian Church and Slavery in the Middle Ages."
- 316 Munro, D. C., "The Speech of Urban II at Clermont, 1095."
- 326 Hart, Albert B., "John Knox as a Man of the World."
- 337 Van Dyke, Paul, "Reginald Pole and Thomas Cromwell: An Examination of the *Apologia ad Carolum Quintum*."
- 340 Merriman, Roger B., "Some Notes on the Treatment of the English Catholics in the Reign of Elizabeth."
- 343 Kittredge, George L., "A Case of Witchcraft."
- 350 Kirby, Ethyn W., "Sermons Before the Commons 1640-42."
- 351 Hexter, J. H., "The Problem of the Presbyterian Independents."

- 358 **Abbott, Wilbur C.**, "English Conspiracy and Dissent, 1660-1674."
 - 361 **Dudley, Albert Cassell**, "Nonconformity Under the Clarendon Code."
 - 398 **Baird, Henry M.**, "Hotman and the 'Franco-Gallia.'"
 - 399 **Thompson, James Westfall**, "Some Economic Factors in the Revocation of the Edict of Nantes."
 - 401 **Hauser, Henri**, "The French Reformation and the French People in the Sixteenth Century."
 - 402 **Palmer, Robert R.**, "The French Jesuits in the Age of Enlightenment."
 - 413 **Meyer, Arnold Oskar**, "Charles I and Rome."
 - 415 **Burr, George L.**, "A New Fragment on Luther's Death with Other Gleanings From the Age of the Reformation."
 - 425 **Foster, Herbert D.**, "Geneva Before Calvin (1387-1536), the Antecedents of the Puritan States."
 - 426 **Ford, Guy Stanton**, "Wöllner and the Prussian Religious Edict of 1788" (2 parts).
 - 428 **Lea, Henry C.**, "Ferrand Martinez and the Massacres of 1391."
 - 429 **Lea, Henry C.**, "The First Castilian Inquisitor."
 - 430 **Lea, Henry C.**, "Lucero, the Inquisitor."
 - 434 **Lea, Henry C.**, "Molinos and the Italian Mystics."
 - 447 **Beazley, C. R.**, "Prince Henry of Portugal and the African Crusade of the Fifteenth Century."
 - 493 **Loomis, Louise R.**, "Nationality at the Council of Constance."
 - 495 **Foster, Herbert D.**, "The Political Theories of Calvinists Before the Puritan Exodus to America."
 - 496 **Foster, Herbert D.**, "International Calvinism Through Locke and the Revolution of 1688."
 - 497 **Philips, Edith**, "Pensylvanie: L'Age d'Or."
 - 508 **Costigan, Giovanni**, "The Tragedy of Charles O'Connor: An Episode in Anglo-Irish Relations."
 - 1215 **Bolton, Herbert E.**, "The Mission as a Frontier Institution in the Spanish American Colonies."
- And items 200, 259, 260, 297, 376, 377, 378 and 407.

XI. PRESS AND PUBLIC OPINION

- 607 **Carroll, E. M.**, "French Public Opinion on War with Prussia in 1870."
- 666 **Levermore, Charles H.**, "The Rise of Metropolitan Journalism, 1800-1840."

- 667 **Curtis, Eugene N.**, "American Opinion of the French Nineteenth Century Revolutions."
- 765 **Wead, Eunice**, "British Public Opinion of the Peace with America in 1782."
- 769 **Anderson, Frank M.**, "Contemporary Opinion of the Virginia and Kentucky Revolutions" (2 parts).
- 833 **James, James A.**, "French Opinion As a Factor in Preventing War Between France and the United States, 1795-1800."
- 915 **Van Deusen, Glyndon**, "Thurlow Weed: A Character Study."
- 1034 **Randall, James G.**, "The Newspaper Problem in Its Bearing Upon Military Secrecy During the Civil War."
- 1072 **Stearns, Bertha M.**, "Reform Periodicals and Female Reformers, 1830-1860."
- 1074 **Harlow, Ralph V.**, "The Rise and Fall of the Kansas Aid Movement."
- 1169 **Blake, Nelson M.**, "The Olney-Pauncefote Treaty of 1897."
- 1223 **Spell, Lota M.**, "The Anglo-Saxon Press in Mexico, 1846-1848."
And items 383, 521, 776, 948, 953, 1023, 1055, 1090, 1135, 1146, 1147, 1198, 1231 and 1232.

XII. MILITARY HISTORY

See sections IVB4, IVC4, IVD4, IVE4, and

- 14 **Munro, D. C.**, "War and History."
- 78 **Posner, Ernst**, "Public Records Under Military Occupation."
- 199 **Tamblyn, W. F.**, "British Druidism and the Roman War Policy."
- 202 **Hudson, H. Gary**, "The Shield Signal at Marathon."
- 217 **Boak, A. E.**, "The Extraordinary Commands from 80 to 48 B.C.: A Study in the Origins of the Principate."
- 225 **Painter, Sidney**, "Castle-Guard."
- 419 **Fay, Sidney B.**, "The Beginnings of the Standing Army in Prussia."
- 420 **Tuttle, Herbert**, "The Prussian Campaign of 1758."
- 477 **Schuyler, Robert L.**, "The Recall of the Legions: A Phase of the Decentralization of the British Empire."
- 499 **Wright, John W.**, "Sieges and Customs of War at the Opening of the Eighteenth Century."
- 517 **A British Officer**, "The Literature of the South African War, 1899-1902."
- 561 **Ford, Guy Stanton**, "The Prussian Peasantry Before 1807."

- 562 **Ford, Guy Stanton**, "Boyen's Military Law."
619 **Bailey, Thomas A.**, "The Sinking of the Lusitania."
653 **Gabriel, Ralph H.**, "American Experience with Military Government."
691 **Carter, Clarence E.**, "The Significance of the Military Office in America, 1763-1775."
1064 **Galpin, W. Freeman**, "The American Grain Trade to the Spanish Peninsula, 1810-1814."
1105 **Stephenson, N. W.**, "The Question of Arming the Slaves."
1126 **Pratt, Julius W.**, "Fur Trade Strategy and the American Left Flank in the War of 1812."
1131 **Isely, W. H.**, "The Sharps Rifle Episode in Kansas History."
1209 **A British Officer**, "The Literature of the Russo-Japanese War."
1226 **Smith, Justin H.**, "American Rule in Mexico."
1246 **Reeves, Jesse S.**, "Two Conceptions of the Freedom of the Seas."
1247 **Corbett, Julian**, "The Colonel and His Command."
And items 79, 80, 111, 114, and 636.

XIII. AFRICA

- 447 **Beazley, C. R.**, "Prince Henry of Portugal and the African Crusade of the Fifteenth Century."
466 **Scott, W. R.**, "The Constitution and Finance of the Royal African Company of England From Its Foundation Till 1720."
517 **A British Officer**, "The Literature of the South African War, 1899-1902."
575 **Hitti, Philip K.**, "The Possibility of Union Among the Arab States."
587 **Coolidge, Archibald C.**, "The European Reconquest of North Africa."
609 **Langer, William L.**, "The European Powers and the French Occupation of Tunisia, 1878-1881" (2 parts).

INDEX TO THE GUIDE

[References are to item numbers, not pages.]

A

Abbott, Wilbur C., 358, 360.
 Abel, Annie H., 924.
 Abernethy, Thomas P., 838, 905.
 Adams, Charles Francis, 88, 121, 844, 848, 1010, 1033.
 Adams, Ephraim D., 598, 633, 1007.
 Adams, George B., 39, 106, 224, 229, 237, 238, 239, 263, 265, 366.
 Adams, Henry, 30.
 Adams, James Truslow, 94, 1124, 1249.
 Adams, Randolph G., 750, 851.
 Aiton, Arthur S., 463, 478, 1234.
 Albion, Robert G., 524, 644.
 Albrecht-Carrié, René, 580.
 Alden, George A., 767.
 Alden, John R., 743, 852.
 Allison, W. H., 503.
 Alvord, C. W., 741, 859.
 Ambler, Charles H., 1102.
 Ames, Herman V., 821.
 Anderson, D. R., 808.
 Anderson, Frank M., 769.
 Andrews, Charles M., 13, 69, 469, 473, 704, 718.
 Andrews, George Gordon, 543.
 Angell, James B., 456.
 Armstrong, Sinclair W., 642.
 Asakawa, K., 1205.
 Aubrey, Edwin E., 127.
 Aydelotte, Frank, 494.

B

Babcock, Kendric C., 1067.
 Bacot, D. Huger, 874.
 Baer, Harold M., 482.
 Bailey, Thomas A., 619, 1170, 1174, 1199.
 Bain, James, Jr., 702, 861.
 Baird, Henry Martin, 398.
 Baker-Crothers, Hayes, 724.
 Baldwin, James F., 236, 262, 321, 323.
 Baldwin, Simeon E., 36, 715.
 Barbour, Violet, 357, 1217.
 Bark, William, 278.
 Barker, Charles A., 713.
 Barker, Eugene C., 907.
 Barker, Howard F., 731.
 Barnes, H. E., 630.
 Baron, Hans, 277.
 Barrows, David P., 1210.

Barton, George A., 194.
 Bassett, J. S., 950.
 Basye, Arthur Herbert, 348, 386.
 Baumer, Franklin LeVan, 341, 457.
 Baxter, James P., 3rd, 603, 639.
 Beale, Howard K., 100, 936, 1153.
 Beard, Charles A., 27, 59, 61, 1061.
 Beazley, C. Raymond, 288, 297, 447, 448.
 Becker, Carl, 7, 10, 57, 64, 329, 536, 539, 652, 678, 692, 758, 938, 1159.
 Bedwell, C. E. A., 696.
 Beer, William, 860.
 Belknap, George E., 1028.
 Bell, Herbert C., 712.
 Beller, E. A., 80.
 Bemis, Samuel Flagg, 104, 472, 828, 830, 830a, 834.
 Biddulph, Violet, 778.
 Bidwell, Percy W., 1089, 1118.
 Bigelow, Melville M., 251.
 Biggar, H. P., 459.
 Biggerstaff, Knight, 1165.
 Bingham, Hiram, 488.
 Bitterman, Helen R., 298.
 Black, C. E., 573.
 Blake, Nelson M., 1168, 1169.
 Blake, Robert P., 293.
 Blinn, Harold E., 1016.
 Boak, Arthur E. R., 217, 289.
 Bogart, Ernest L., 977.
 Bolton, Herbert E., 58, 71, 1139, 1215.
 Bond, Beverley W., Jr., 689.
 Bonham, Milledge L., Jr., 1112.
 Bonner, James C., 1100.
 Borton, Hugh, 21.
 Botsford, G. W., 211, 219.
 Bourne, Edward G., 649, 739, 799, 800, 1128, 1224.
 Bourne, Henry E., 103, 163-169, 531, 534, 540, 550, 554, 819.
 Bowden, Witt, 332, 365.
 Boyd, Carl Evans, 781, 887.
 Bradford, Gamaliel, 1039.
 Brand, Carl F., 515, 518, 521, 620, 621.
 Brandt, Walther, 315.
 Breasted, James Henry, 190.
 Bretz, Julian P., 912.
 Brinton, Crane, 537, 538.
 British Officer, A, 517, 1209.
 Brook, Elizabeth, 993.
 Brown, Everett S., 939.

Brown, Vera Lee, 468.
Brown, William G., 760, 761.
Bryce, James Viscount, 516.
Buchanan, Russell, 1171.
Buck, Paul H., 1095.
Buffinton, Arthur H., 470.
Bugge, Alexander, 286.
Burgess, John W., 124.
Burnett, E. C., 397, 654, 774, 835, 879, 895, 900.
Burr, George Lincoln, 48, 68, 299, 311, 317, 318, 415, 1229, 1230.
Butler, James Davie, 707.
Byrne, Eugene H., 285.

C

Calder, Isabel M., 732.
Caldwell, Joshua W., 917.
Callender, Guy S., 45.
Campbell, Edward G., 87.
Campbell, Henry C., 737.
Cannon, Henry L., 231.
Cannon, M. Hamlin, 951.
Cappon, Lester J., 85.
Carlyle, Alexander, 312.
Caron, Pierre, 72.
Carpenter, A. H., 687, 693.
Carroll, E. Malcolm, 607.
Carter, Clarence E., 490, 691, 742, 810.
Carter, Henry, 629.
Carter, John Denton, 922.
Catterall, Helen T., 981.
Catterall, Ralph C. H., 354, 355, 393, 406.
Caughey, John Walton, 24.
Chang, Y. Z., 525.
Channing, Edward, 1, 658, 775.
Chapman, Charles E., 181.
Cheyney, Edward P., 53, 89, 254, 324, 685, 703.
Christy, Miller, 486.
Clark, Chester W., 585.
Clark, Dora Mae, 369, 474.
Clark, Jane, 849, 856.
Clark, Victor S., 1065.
Clarke, Mary P., 368.
Clarkson, Jesse Dunsmore, 174.
Coffin, Victor, 547, 548.
Colby, Charles W., 67, 327, 596.
Colby, Elbridge, 1180.
Cole, Arthur C., 919.
Connor, R. D. W., 1190.
Coolidge, Archibald C., 581, 587.
Corbett, Julian, 1247.
Corwin, Edward S., 796, 824, 982.
Costigan, Giovanni, 508.
Cotterill, R. S., 1078.
Cox, Isaac Joslin, 997, 1218.
Craig, Gordon A., 606a.
Cramer, Alice Carver, 256.
Crane, Verner W., 504, 723.
Craven, Avery O., 1094.
Craven, Wesley Frank, 675.
Crenshaw, Ollinger, 1101.

Cross, Arthur Lyon, 92, 363, 377, 380, 502, 627.
Crowl, Philip A., 813.
Cunningham, W. P., 726.
Curti, Merle, 567, 909, 1232.
Curtis, Eugene N., 667.

D

Daenell, Ernst, 416.
Daniels, G. W., 1062.
Darling, A. B., 1119, 1123.
Dauer, Manning J., 786.
Davenport, Frances G., 483.
Davidson, Philip G., 762, 809.
Davis, Andrew McFarland, 694.
Dawson, E., 116, 122.
Dennett, Tyler, 1164, 1201.
Destler, Chester McA., 1185.
Deutsch, Albert, 710.
Diamond, William, 1155, 1175.
Dodd, Walter F., 822.
Dodd, William E., 90, 665, 976, 1091, 1132.
Donnan, Elizabeth, 708.
Douglas, Walter B., 1137.
Dow, Earle W., 2, 271.
Doyle, John A., 637.
Driault, Edouard, 591.
Du Bois, W. E. Burghardt, 1181.
Dudley, Albert Cassell, 361.
Duncalf, Frederic, 291.
Dunham, A. L., 552.
Dunham, William Huse, Jr., 325.
Duniway, Clyde A., 827.
Dunning, William A., 46, 913, 1047, 1152.

E

Earle, Edward M., 572.
Eaton, Clement, 1104.
Editors, The, 170, 172, 173.
Efroymson, Clarence W., 1087.
Eggleston, Edward, 744.
Einstein, Lewis, 1051.
Ellsworth, Clayton, 1225.
Emerton, Ephraim, 307.

F

Farrand, Max, 65, 714, 738, 790, 801, 802, 805, 806, 971, 995.
Faust, Albert B., 442, 711.
Faÿ, Bernard, 498.
Fay, Sidney B., 411, 419, 423, 546, 614, 618.
Ferguson, Wallace K., 387, 433.
Ferguson, William S., 204, 205, 207, 209.
Ferris, Eleanor, 247.
Fieldhouse, H. N., 480.
Firth, C. H., 394, 679.
Fish, Carl Russell, 901, 985, 991, 1044, 1046, 1077, 1080, 1148, 1192.
Fisher, D. H., 438.
Fitzpatrick, John C., 773.
Fleming, Walter L., 1130.

Fling, Fred Morrow, 32, 187, 403, 404, 535.
 Foran, William A., 19.
 Ford, Amelia C., 735.
 Ford, Guy Stanton, 62, 176, 177, 178, 426, 561, 562.
 Ford, Paul L., 800.
 Ford, Worthington C., 49, 699, 787, 818, 840, 999, 1000, 1140.
 Foreman, Grant, 1088.
 Foster, Herbert D., 425, 495, 496, 910.
 Foster, John W., 1222.
 Fox, Dixon Ryan, 56, 663.
 Frank, Tenney, 216, 220, 222.
 Friedenwald, Herbert, 811.
 Fuller, Joseph V., 608.
 Furber, Holden, 29, 557.

G

Gabriel, Ralph H., 653.
 Galpin, W. Freeman, 647, 1064.
 Garrett, Mitchell B., 408.
 Garrison, George P., 881, 1103.
 Gaskill, Gussie Esther, 1213.
 Gates, Paul Wallace, 1134.
 Gay, H. Nelson, 571, 908.
 George, Robert H., 385.
 Gershoy, Leo, 542.
 Gerson, Armand J., 376.
 Gilbert, Felix, 440.
 Gilbert, George A., 883.
 Gipson, Lawrence H., 676.
 Goebel, Dorothy Burne, 593.
 Golder, Frank A., 446, 600, 604, 1035, 1166.
 Goodwin, Frank P., 1066.
 Gottschalk, Louis R., 553.
 Goriainov, Serge, 610.
 Grant, William L., 462.
 Gras, N. S. B., 1244.
 Greene, Evarts B., 662, 748, 807.
 Greenfield, Kent Roberts, 570, 576.
 Grose, Clyde L., 356, 381.
 Gross, Charles, 268, 309, 342.
 Guiland, Antoine, 8.
 Guttridge, George H., 349, 491.

H

Hall, Hubert, 471.
 Hamilton, J. G. de Roulhac, 878, 920.
 Hamilton, Raphael N., 736.
 Hansen, Marcus L., 96.
 Harbison, E. Harris, 458.
 Haring, Charles H., 431.
 Harlow, Ralph Volney, 791, 918, 1074.
 Harrington, Fred Harvey, 1032.
 Harris, Henry J., 656.
 HARRISSE, Henry, 454, 455.
 Hart, Albert Bushnell, 40, 120, 326, 1001, 1114.
 Haskins, Charles H., 52, 66, 105, 179, 232, 267, 269, 270, 272, 301, 302, 303.
 Hastings, G. E., 866.

Hauser, Henri, 401.
 Haworth, Paul L., 421.
 Hay, Thomas Robson, 946.
 Hayden, Ralston, 979.
 Hayes, Carlton J. H., 563, 641.
 Haynes, G. H., 931.
 Haynes, George W., 1122.
 Heaton, Herbert, 129.
 Hedges, James B., 943.
 Henderson, Archibald, 729, 740.
 Henderson, Ernest F., 414, 418.
 Henderson, Gavin B., 601.
 Hesselstine, William B., 109.
 Higham, C. S. S., 392.
 Hexter, J. H., 351.
 Hicks, Granville, 1111.
 Hill, David J., 38, 541.
 Hitti, Philip K., 575.
 Hofstadter, Richard, 1084.
 Holbrook, Franklin F., 1178.
 Honeywell, Roy J., 925.
 Howe, George Frederick, 1172, 1188.
 Howland, Henry R., 847.
 Hubbell, Jay B., 933.
 Hudnut, Ruth Allison, 724.
 Hudson, Harris Gary, 202.
 Hulbert, Archer B., 1063.
 Hummel, Arthur W., 15.
 Humphreys, R. A., 697.
 Hunt, Gaillard, 770, 771, 903, 942, 964, 967.
 Hunter, Milton R., 1135.
 Huntington, Ellsworth, 125.
 Hyslop, Beatrice F., 101, 533.

I

Ickes, Harold L., 1157.
 Irvine, Dallas D., 77.
 Isely, W. H., 1131.

J

James, James A., 833.
 Jameson, J. Franklin, 9, 37, 70, 110, 112, 113, 147-150, 153-161, 180, 182, 186, 640, 651, 816, 865, 963, 1116, 1197.
 Janes, Henry L., 1009.
 Jasny, N., 192.
 Jenks, Edward, 259.
 Jernegan, Marcus W., 108, 709, 746.
 Johnson, Richard A., 118.
 Johnston, R. M., 405.
 Jones, E. Alfred, 682.
 Jones, Howard Mumford, 669.
 Joranson, Einar, 290.
 Judson, Harry P., 957.
 Judson, K. B., 1141.
 Julian, George W., 980.
 Jusserand, J. J., 1248.

K

Kaplan, Louis, 109.
 Karpinsky, L. C., 81.
 Karraker, Cyrus H., 695.

Keller, Charles Ray, 803.
Kellogg, Louise P., 841, 888.
Kent, Sherman, 551.
Kimball, Fiske, 661.
Kingsbury, Susan M., 719.
Kinnaird, Lawrence, 890.
Kirby, Chester, 334.
Kirby, Ethyn William, 350.
Kittredge, George L., 343, 378.
Klingberg, Frank J., 522.
Knaplund, Paul, 582, 1027.
Knipfing, John R., 208.
Knowlton, Daniel C., 435.
Koht, Halvdan, 319, 1199a.
Kranel, Richard, 798.
Krey, August C., 306.
Kriehn, George, 252.

L

Lane, Frederic Chapin, 436, 437.
Langer, William L., 293, 609.
Langsam, Walter Consuelo, 565, 566.
Laprade, William Thomas, 328, 372.
Lapsley, Gaillard T., 226, 308, 338.
Larson, Laurence M., 228, 287, 584, 1136.
Latourette, Kenneth Scott, 11, 17.
Lathrop, Barnes F., 947.
Lea, Henry C., 33, 429, 430, 434, 484, 1219.
Learned, Henry B., 657, 797, 927, 929, 978, 1195.
Lee, Dwight E., 577.
Leland, Waldo G., 73, 183, 184, 185, 188, 189.
Le Roy, J. A., 1202.
Levermore, Charles H., 666, 677.
Levy, Ernst, 314.
Libby, Orin G., 3.
Lincoln, C. H., 532.
Lindsey, Almont, 1184.
Lingelbach, Anna Lane, 475, 510.
Lingelbach, William E., 93, 417, 597, 1003.
Link, Arthur S., 1157a, 1158a.
Lloyd, Alfred H., 35.
Lockey, Joseph B., 1018.
Loewenberg, Bert James, 668.
Loewenberg, Richard D., 422.
Lokke, Carl Ludwig, 624, 626, 1012.
Long, Dwight C., 606.
Loomis, Louise Ropes, 432, 493.
Lord, Robert H., 605.
Lowery, Woodbury, 465.
Lubimenko, Inna, 444.
Lunt, W. E., 246.
Luthin, Reinhard H., 923.
Lyon, E. Wilson, 634, 832.

M

McCaleb, Walter F., 990.
McClendon, R. Earl, 1163.
McCutcheon, Roger P., 383.
Macdonald, D. B., 26.
MacDonell, A. A., 1203.

McDowell, Robert H., 1204.
McGovney, Dudley, 353.
McGrane, Reginald C., 1073.
McGuire, C. E., 876.
McGuire, Peter S., 872.
McIlwain, C. H., 60, 367.
Mackall, L. L., 481.
Mackay, Dorothy Louise, 320. *See also*
 Quynn, Dorothy Mackay.
McKinley, Albert E., 674, 745.
McLaughlin, Andrew C., 47, 795, 941, 1160.
McLean, Ross H., 1176.
McMaster, John B., 664.
Magoffin, Ralph van D., 111.
Magoun, Francis P., Jr., 313, 333.
Mahan, A. T., 996.
Malone, C. B., 1173.
Malone, Dumas, 776.
Malone, Miles S., 716.
Marsden, R. G., 734, 754.
Mantoux, Paul, 373.
Marsh, Frank Burr, 221.
Marshall, L. S., 511.
Marshall, Thomas Maitland, 961, 966, 1129.
Martell, J. S., 1022.
Martin, Asa E., 867.
Masson, Marjorie, 640.
Mendenhall, Thomas C., 117, 177.
Meneely, A. H., 968.
Meng, John J., 836.
Merk, Frederick, 514, 1005, 1006.
Merriman, Roger B., 340, 427, 439.
Meyer, Arnold Oskar, 413.
Miller, Hunter, 1015, 1200.
Miller, William, 295, 296, 424.
Milne, A. Taylor, 1030.
Moore, Frederick W., 984.
Morehouse, Frances, 512.
Morgan, William T., 461.
Morison, Samuel E., 974.
Morris, William A., 258.
Morris, Richard B., 84, 688.
Morrow, Rising Lake, 1167.
Morse, Anson D., 772.
Mosely, Philip E., 578.
Mott, William G., 1056.
Mowry, Arthur M., 1121.
Munro, Dana Carleton, 14, 292, 294, 316.
Munro, W. B., 460.
Murdock, John S., 973.

N

Nabuco, Joaquim, 659.
Neilson, Nellie, 98, 227, 230.
Newsome, A. R., 83.
Newton, A. P., 487.
Niccolini, Marchesa, 284.
Nichols, Jeannette Paddock, 1154.
Nichols, Roy F., 123, 932, 1151, 1186.
Notestein, Wallace, 352, 519.
Nowell, Charles E., 450.

Nunn, George E., 449.
Nussbaum, Frederick L., 400.
Nute, Grace L., 97, 721.

O

Ogden, H. V. S., 371.
Olmstead, Albert T., 193, 196, 200.
Orpen, Goddard H., 233.
Osgood, Herbert L., 683, 756.
Ostrogorski, M., 975.
Owen, Thomas M., 1049.

P

Packard, Laurence B., 612.
Packard, Sidney R., 274.
Painter, Sidney, 225.
Pais, Ettore, 214.
Palmer, Robert R., 402.
Pargellis, Stanley, 700.
Parker, David W., 1125.
Paullin, Charles Oscar, 655, 928, 930, 1041.
Paxson, Frederic L., 983, 1161, 1177, 1194.
Peake, Cyrus H., 1212.
Pearson, C. C., 1191.
Pease, Theodore C., 79, 505.
Perkins, Clarence, 248.
Perkins, Dexter, 82, 592, 1002.
Perkins, James B., 445.
Perrin, Bernadotte, 203.
Phillips, Edith, 497.
Phillips, Ulrich B., 766, 873, 875, 880, 1092, 1097, 1216.
Pierce, Edward L., 1090.
Pierson, George Wilson, 803.
Pierson, William Whatley, Jr., 989.
Pijper, Frederik, 310.
Pirenne, Henri, 443, 1245.
Platner, Samuel B., 215.
Plucknett, Theodore, 253.
Posner, Ernest, 78.
Potter, John M., 407.
Pratt, Julius W., 1126, 1146.
Presniakov, A., 12.
Preston, Richard A., 673.
Putnam, Bertha H., 249.

Q

Quynn, Dorothy Mackay, 479, 502, 545.
See also Mackay, Dorothy Louise.

R

Ramsdell, Charles W., 1040, 1079.
Randall, James G., 55, 99, 987, 988, 1034.
Ratchford, B. U., 837.
Read, Conyers, 335, 339, 379, 485.
Reeves, J. S., 956, 1227, 1246.
Reinsch, Paul S., 589.
Renick, Edward I., 783, 937.
Rezneck, Samuel, 322, 1070, 1071.

Rhodes, James Ford, 1036, 1037, 1042, 1106, 1182.
Richards, Gerda C., 520.
Richardson, H. G., 255.
Riegel, Robert E., 672, 1196.
Riker, Thad W., 370, 602.
Rives, George L., 831, 1008.
Roberts, A. Sellew, 1081.
Robertson, James A., 1211.
Robertson, William Spence, 998.
Robinson, C. A., Jr., 212.
Robinson, James Harvey, 4, 5, 16.
Robinson, Ralph, 1043.
Robinson, William A., 671.
Robinson, William M., Jr., 994, 1108.
Rockhill, William W., 1206.
Rodkey, Frederick Stanley, 628, 638.
Roosevelt, Theodore, 126.
Root, Winfred T., 686.
Rose, J. Holland, 476, 509.
Rosenberg, Hans, 410.
Rostenberg, Leona, 648.
Rostovtzeff, Michael I., 195, 210.
Round, J. H., 266.
Rupp, George Hoover, 616.
Russell, Josiah Cox, 241.

S

Sachse, William L., 175.
Sageser, A. Bower, 1017.
Salley, A. S., Jr., 787, 788.
Sanborn, John Bell, 1133.
Schafer, Joseph, 526, 921, 1004.
Schapiro, J. Salwyn, 643a.
Schevill, Ferdinand, 283. *See also*
Schwill, Ferdinand.
Schindler, Margaret Castle, 28.
Schlesinger, Arthur M., 660, 670.
Schmidt, George P., 1144.
Schmitt, Bernadotte E., 119, 599, 617.
Schneider, H. W., 752.
Schouler, James, 650.
Schuyler, Robert Livingston, 477.
Schwill, Ferdinand, 280. *See also*
Schevill, Ferdinand.
Scisco, L. D., 684.
Scofield, C. L., 390.
Scott, Austin, 794.
Scott, Jonathan F., 264.
Scott, W. R., 466.
Scramuzza, Vincent M., 213.
Scroggs, William O., 1076.
Sears, Louise Martin, 911, 1011.
Sée, Henri, 868.
Seeliger, Gerhard, 276.
Sellers, James L., 1082.
Shannon, Fred A., 1183.
Sharp, Morrison, 701.
Shepherd, William R., 826, 894, 1138.
Shippee, Lester B., 613.
Shipton, Clifford K., 753.
Shotwell, J. T., 44.
Shotwell, J. T., 107.

Shryock, Richard H., 128.
 Siebert, Wilbur H., 1075.
 Sims, Catherine Strateman, 391. *See also*
 Strateman, Catherine.
 Sioussat, St. George Leakin, 906, 1158.
 Sloane, William M., 31, 43, 464, 549.
 Smith, Abbot Emerson, 706, 733.
 Smith, Bryant, 1162.
 Smith, Goldwin, 34, 201, 330, 500.
 Smith, Justin H., 1048, 1220, 1221, 1226.
 Smith, Paul S., 1147.
 Smith, Theodore Clarke, 18.
 Smith, William, 690.
 Sontag, Raymond J., 615.
 Sparks, E. E., 1237.
 Spaulding, Oliver L., Jr., 845.
 Spaulding, Thomas M., 1198.
 Spell, Lota M., 1223, 1231.
 Spiller, Robert E., 1150.
 Spring, Leverett W., 916.
 Squires, J. Duane, 1038.
 Stacey, C. P., 1052.
 Stanton, Theodore, 560.
 Stavrianos, L. S., 574.
 Stearns, Bertha-Monica, 1072.
 Stearns, Raymond P., 178.
 Steel, Anthony B., 75.
 Steiner, Bernard C., 747, 751, 804, 1020,
 1145.
 Stephens, H. Morse, 6, 544, 622.
 Stephenson, Carl, 242, 273, 304, 305.
 Stephenson, George M., 583.
 Stephenson, Nathaniel W., 717, 904, 914,
 1099, 1105.
 Stephenson, Orlando W., 846.
 Stock, Leo Francis, 1251.
 Stone, Alfred Holt, 1068, 1069.
 Strateman, Catherine, 347. *See also* Sims,
 Catherine Strateman.
 Strayer, Joseph R., 240.
 Strong, Frank, 467.
 Sullivan, James, 282.
 Sumner, W. G., 705.
 Sweet, Alfred H., 243.
 Sweet, Paul, 1014.
 Swingle, Walter T., 74.
 Sydnor, Charles S., 1096, 1107.

T

Talman, James J., 636.
 Tamblyn, W. F., 199.
 Tatlock, J. S. P., 257.
 Taylor, Henry Osborn, 54, 63.
 Taylor, J. R. M., 1179.
 Teggart, Frederick J., 41.
 Temperley, H. W. V., 594, 595.
 Thacher, G. H., 1045.
 Thayer, William R., 50, 51.
 Thompson, Faith, 234.
 Thompson, James Westfall, 23, 76, 91,
 275, 399.
 Thorndike, Lynn, 300, 492.
 Thorpe, F. N., 785.
 Thwaites, R. G., 780, 1143.

Tilley, Nannie M., 529.
 Tilton, W. F., 388, 389.
 Treat, Payson J., 1207.
 Trenholme, Norman M., 250.
 Trent, William P., 793.
 Trimble, William, 1120.
 Tsiang, T. F., 1214.
 Tucker, Gilbert, 513.
 Tuckerman, Frederick, 681, 884.
 Turner, Edward R., 331, 359, 362, 364,
 374, 375, 384.
 Turner, Frederick J., 42, 588, 631, 829,
 858, 864, 886, 891, 898, 992, 1093, 1127.
 Turner, Raymond, 382, 645.
 Tuttle, Herbert, 420.
 Tyler, Lyon G., 958.
 Tyler, Moses C., 759, 763.

U

Usher, Abbott P., 564.
 Usher, Roland G., 345, 611.

V

Vagts, Alfred, 61, 569.
 Van Alstyne, Richard W., 523, 1029.
 Vander Linden, H., 453.
 Van Deusen, Glyndon G., 915.
 Van Dyke, Paul, 337, 412.
 Van Houtte, H., 839.
 Van Tyne, Claude H., 698, 789, 825, 899.
 Vasiliev, A. A., 25.
 Vignaud, Henry, 451, 452.
 Vincent, John Martin, 261.
 Volwiler, A. T., 1189.
 von Fritz, Kurt, 22.

W

Walmsley, J. E., 1115.
 Walton, Joseph S., 972.
 Warren, Joseph Parker, 768, 782.
 Wead, Eunice, 765.
 Weaver, Emily P., 764.
 Webster, Charles K., 95.
 West, Allen Brown, 206.
 West, Elizabeth H., 1239.
 Westermann, William Linn, 102, 191, 197,
 198, 218, 223, 1083.
 Whitaker, Arthur P., 590, 625, 1013.
 White, Albert Beebe, 235, 244, 245, 260.
 White, Laura A., 1098.
 White, Lynn, Jr., 279.
 Whitelaw, W. Menzies, 528.
 Willcox, William B., 643.
 Williams, David, 757.
 Williams, Frederick W., 1208.
 Williams, J. R., 730.
 Willson, David Harris, 344, 346.
 Wilson, Charles R., 934, 935.
 Wilson, Howard L., 1228.
 Wiltse, Charles M., 926.

Winsor, Justin, 725.
Wish, Harvey, 1156.
Wolfson, Arthur M., 281.
Woodburn, James A., 986.
Woolley, Mary E., 749.
Wright, Irene A., 441, 1233.

Wright, John W., 499, 850, 853.
Wrong, George M., 623.

Y

Yewdale, R. B., 556.
Young, G. S., 1187.

